



PEOPLE AND PLACES

- · describe people and places
- · introduce yourself
- · explain where you are from
- · talk about jobs and where you work

IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

GR

- · ask and answer common questions
- say more about your town / city

page 6



FREE TIME

- · talk about free-time activities
- · discuss what you like and don't like
- · arrange to meet
- · describe your daily life
- · talk about how often and when you do things
- · use more English in class

page 14

VIDEO 1: A famous city page 22 REVIEW 1 page 23 WRITING 1: Forms page 150



HOME

- · talk about the area you live in
- · name things you often buy and do
- · explain where things are
- · explain what you need to do
- · describe your house / flat
- · ask people to do things

page 24





HOLIDAYS

- talk about what you did in the past
- · comment on what people tell you
- · talk about dates and months
- · ask and answer questions about holidays

page 32

VIDEO 2: Alex the parrot page 40 REVIEW 2: page 41 WRITING 2: Pen friends page 152



SHOPS

- · describe what you want
- talk to a shop assistant
- understand prices
- · talk about department stores
- · talk about things happening now
- give excuses
- page 42 · follow directions in a store



**EDUCATION** 

- · describe classmates and teachers
- · name school and university subjects
- · talk about courses you're doing
- · talk about languages and education
- give opinions about what's better

page 50

VIDEO 3: Photo camp page 58

REVIEW 3: page 59

WRITING 3: Cards page 154



PEOPLE I KNOW

- · talk about your family
- · express surprise
- · give opinions about family life
- talk about things that are necessary or not necessary
- talk about people you know

page 60



**PLANS** 

· talk about people's plans

· make simple suggestions

- · talk about things you'd like to do
- · discuss government plans
- · give basic opinions and reasons

page 68

VIDEO 4: Two Kenyan guys in Texas page 76

REVIEW 4: page 77

WRITING 4: Making arrangements page 156

	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	READING	LISTENING	DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS
	. be . present simple . there is / there are	Countries     Jobs and workplaces     Describing places	My home town	Language school interview     What do you do?	Which part? Saying where you're from
gs	Verb patterns     Adverbs of frequency     Countable and     uncountable nouns	Free-time activities     Daily life     In an English class	Do you have any free time?	Do you like?     In an English class	Arrangements
	Prepositions of place Pronouns, possessive adjectives and 's can / can't	Local facilities     In the house     Understanding     vocabulary:     Collocations	Me and my family	Asking about shops and other places     Problems at home	Asking for information
	Past simple Past simple negatives Past simple questions  Past simple questions	<ul> <li>Holiday and weekend activities</li> <li>Months, seasons and dates</li> <li>Going on holiday</li> </ul>	A holiday in Ireland	Talking about the weekend Talking about a public holiday	• That sounds
	this / these / that / Inase     Present continuous	Describing what you want     Department stores	A big sale     John Lewis	At the market     In a department store	Questions in shops
	Modifiers     Comparatives	School and university     Courses     Languages	The world in a school	What are you studying? Talking about different courses	How's the course going?
	Auxillary verbs     have to // don't     have to	<ul> <li>Relationships</li> <li>Jobs and activities in the home</li> <li>Describing people</li> </ul>	Debate of the week: Working parents A little help from your friends	My family     Talking about     different kinds of     friends	Adding information
	* Spring to * Would like to + verb	<ul> <li>Common activities</li> <li>Life events and plans</li> <li>For and against</li> </ul>	Your opinion matters!	Making plans     I'd really like to	Making suggestions



## **EXPERIENCES**

IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

GRA

- talk about places you've been to
  recommend places
- · explain and ask about problems
- · talk about experiences

page 78



TRAVEL

- · talk about train travel
- · buy tickets
- talk about the time
- · talk about transport where you live
- · recommend places

page 86

VIDEO 5: Barcelona's street life page 94

REVIEW 5: page 95

WRITING 5: Visiting friends page 158



FOOD

- · order and pay in restaurants
- understand menus
- · describe different kinds of food
- · agree and disagree with statements
- · talk about what you eat

page 96



**FEELINGS** 

- · talk about health problems
- give advice
- · say no to offers and advice
- · talk about how you feel and why
- understand some news stories

page 104

VIDEO 6: Wearing a glove of venomous ants page 112

REVIEW 6: page 113 WRITING 6: Describing food page 160

talk about the weather

- · talk about possibilities in the future
- · ask for more details
- · talk about the countryside and the city
- · talk about animals
- · talk about duration

page 114



**OPINIONS** 

- · give your opinion about films, plays and musicals
- · ask for descriptions and opinions
- discuss news and newspapers
- · make predictions about the future
- talk about society and social issues

page 122

VIDEO 7: National symbols page 130

REVIEW 7: page 131

WRITING 7: Describing photos page 162



TECHNOLOGY

- · talk about useful machines
- · find out how much people know
- · talk about computers and the internet
- · spell and give addresses
- explain what's good about apps and websites

page 132



LOVE

- · describe different events in relationships
- · give news about relationships
- · explain when and where you met people
- make promises

page 140

VIDEO 8: Snow magic! page 148 REVIEW 8: page 149 WRITING 8: Messages page 164

GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	READING	LISTENING	DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS
. present perfect , past participles	Problems     Describing     experiences	Unforgettable!	On holiday in Turkey What have you done?	Recommending
too much, too many and not enough Superlatives	Trains and stations     Transport	• Taxi!	Buying a train ticket     Asking for recommendations	Telling the time     Where's the best place?
<ul> <li>me too, me neither and auxiliaries</li> <li>Explaining quantity</li> </ul>	Restaurants Food Understanding vocabulary: Forming negatives by adding	My eating habits	In a restaurant Talking about food	Ordering food and drink
• should I shouldn't • because, so and after	Health problems     Feelings     In the news	Happiness around the world     In the news today	• Are you OK? • A mixed day	Saying no
might and be going to     Present perfect to	Weather     The countryside and the city	Six reasons not to	<ul><li>What's the forecast?</li><li>Talking about animals</li></ul>	Short questions
* will I won't for predictions  * Adjective + verb	Describing films, plays and musicals     Life and society	Comments on the news     A new life	Talking about films and musicals A news report	• What's it like?
		Technology – love it	Talking about	• Do you know much about?
be thinking of + -ing     Adverbs	<ul> <li>Machines and technology</li> <li>Computers and the internet</li> <li>What technology does</li> </ul>	or hate it? Technology can save us	technology  • A questionnaire about computers and technology.	
Past continuous     will I won't for     promises	Love and marriage	Poems about promises	News about relationships     Love at first sight	• Did I tell you?























## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · describe people and places
- · introduce yourself
- · explain where you are from
- · talk about jobs and where you work
- ask and answer common questions
- · say more about your town / city

### SPEAKING

1 Talk to other students. Tell each other your names.

## **WORDS FOR UNIT 1**

Work in pairs. Match the words to the photos.

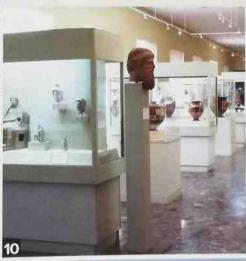
factory	police officer	
countryside	office	waiter
church	nurse	university
businesswoman	museum	traffic
beach 1	mosque	shop assistant
airport	government	river

- 3 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- 4 Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

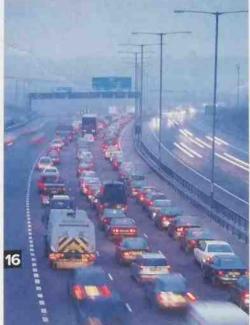
Student A: point to a photo.

Student B: say the word.

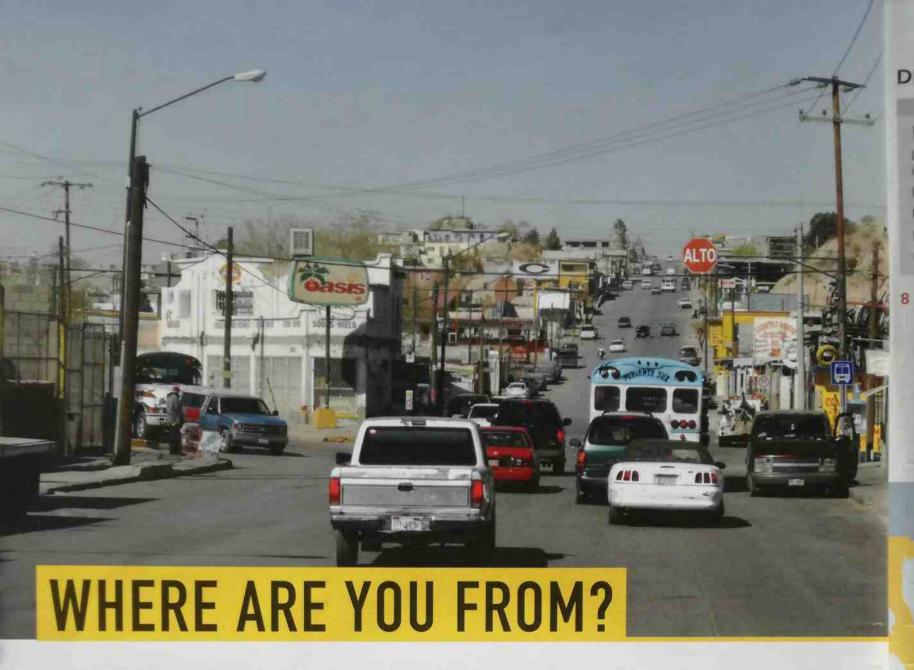
Do you know the English words for anything else in the photos?











#### **SPEAKING**

1 Work in pairs. Try to say the names of everyone in your class.

That's Yuki.

That's Carla.

What's his name?

Marco.

What's her name?

I don't know.

#### LISTENING

- 2 Listen to a teacher and a student at an English-language school. Tick (✓) the sentences that are true.
  - 1 The student's surname is Miguel.
  - 2 He's from Spain.
  - 3 He works in a city called Chihuahua.
  - 4 The city is in the east.
  - 5 It's hot in the city now.
  - 6 He's a businessman.
- 3 Listen again. Correct the sentences in Exercise 2 that aren't true.
- 4 Work in pairs. Look at the audio script on page 197. Practise reading out the conversation.

#### **VOCABULARY** Countries

5 Work in pairs. Match the countries in A to the parts of the world in B.

Costa Rica Africa
Brazil North America
Italy Central America
Canada South America
China the Middle East

Saudi Arabia Europe Kenya Asia

6 Write one more country in each part of the world. Use a dictionary if you need to. Then work in pairs.

Student A: say the country.

Student B: say the part of the world.

7 Look at the photos on pages 6 and 7. Say what country or part of the world you think they are in.

For example:

I think the beach in the photo is in Europe.
This photo is in Turkey. It's Istanbul.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

## Which part?

Look at the questions we ask to find out where someone is from.

- Where are you from?
- M: I'm from Mexico.
- t: Oh, OK. Which part?
- M. Chihuahua. It's in the north.
- Look at the map below. Complete these sentences with places on the map.
  - 1 I'm from \_\_\_\_\_ the capital.
  - 2 I'm from \_\_\_\_\_ in the north.
  - 3 They're from \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ – in the south.
  - 4 I'm from \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the east.
  - 5 My mum's from \_\_\_\_\_ in the west.
  - 6 My dad's from \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle.



- 9 Use countries from Exercises 5 and 6 or use cities / areas in your country - to have conversations like this:
  - A: Where are you from?
  - B: Brazil.
  - A: Which part?
  - B: Recife.
  - C: Where are you from?
  - D: I'm from Rome.
  - C: Which part?
  - D: Morena in the south.

#### **GRAMMAR**

Be has three forms in the present tense: 'm (am), 's (is), 're (are).

We add not for negatives.

10 Complete the tables with the correct form of be.

Statement			
He She	(not)	30. late. a teacher. OK.	
You We They		a good student. at the airport. from Moscow.	

Question		
	1.	
	you they	OK?
	they	OK.
	it	

- Check your ideas on page 166 and do Exercise 1.
- Complete the sentences with the words in brackets and the correct form of be.
  - 1 How \_\_\_\_\_? (you)
  - 2 Where \_\_\_\_\_ from? (your granddad)
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_ from Spain. (my parents)
  - \_\_\_\_ a receptionist in a hotel. (I) 4
  - 5 It \_\_\_\_\_\_ a good job. (not)
  - 6 \_\_\_\_\_ a very big city. (Tokyo)
  - 7 How old \_\_\_\_\_\_? (Miguel)
  - 8 \_\_\_\_\_ late? (we)
  - 9 \_\_\_\_\_ cold? (you)
  - 10 \_\_\_\_\_ a boring place. (it)
- 12 Listen and check your answers. Repeat the sentences.
- Work in groups. Ask students where their parents / grandparents are from.
- For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 166.

#### **CONVERSATION PRACTICE**

- 14 Look at the questions. Write one more question to ask. Then use all the questions and have conversations with other students.
  - · Hi. How are you?
- And where are you from?
- What's your name?
- · Oh, OK. Which part?



1 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.



#### VOCABULARY Jobs and workplaces

- 1 How many jobs can you write in English in one minute?
- 2 Find out what jobs people in your class do. Ask: What do you do?
- 3 Match the jobs (1-8) to the places people work (a-h).

1 a receptionist

5 a police officer

2 a teacher

6 a waiter

3 a shop assistant

7 a designer

4 a nurse

8 a civil servant

- a in a clothes shop / in Harrods
- b in a clinic / in a hospital
- c in a tax office / in a local government office
- d at home / in a studio
- e in a big hotel / in a small company
- f in a school / in a university
- g at a local police station / in the traffic department
- h in a café / in a restaurant

We use a / an with jobs.

I'm **a** teacher. My sister's **a** designer. My dad's **an** artist.

- Work in pairs. Use the ideas in Exercise 3. Have three different conversations. Use this model:
  - A: What do you do?
  - B: I'm a waiter.
  - A: Oh, yes? Where do you work?
  - B: In a café in town. What do you do?
  - A: I'm a designer.
  - B: Where do you work?
  - A: In a studio in Berlin.

#### LISTENING

- 5 Listen to four conversations. Circle the words you hear.
  - Jan is a doctor / a nurse in a clinic / a hospital in Warsaw.
  - 2 Lara is a designer / a teacher in a school / an office in Bristol. She enjoys / doesn't enjoy it.
  - 3 Marta is a civil servant / a receptionist. She works in an office / a company in the north of Brazil. Her job is great / OK.
  - 4 Filippo is a waiter / a shop assistant in a department store / a café in the centre of town. He doesn't like it He wants to become a police officer / a nurse.
- 6 Work in pairs. Look at the audio script on page 197. Choose one of the conversations and practise reading it out.

7 Read these sentences. Do the people like their job? Write \( \) or \( X \).  8 I want a different job.  9 It's great.  10 Ask different students these questions.  11 What do you do?  12 What do you do?  13 What do you do?  14 What do you do?  15 What do you do?  16 What do you do?  17 What do you do?  18 What do you do?  19 What do you do?  10 What do you do?  10 What do you do?  11 What do you do?  12 What do you do?  13 What do you do?  14 What do you do?  15 What do you do?  16 What do you do?  17 What do you do?  18 What do you do?  19 What do you do?  19 What do you work?  20 Where do you work?  21 What do you do?  22 Where live \( f \) do \( f \) you \( f \) if ree time \( f \) do \( f \) you \( f \)?  23 Who with \( f \) you \( f \) do \( f \) you \( f \)?  24 What times examples of the present simple.  18 What times examples of the present simple.  19 Complete the table with -s, do, does, don't and doesn't.  19 Complete the table with -s, do, does, don't and doesn't.  10 What do you work?  20 Complete the table with -s, do, does, don't and doesn't.  10 What do you work?  21 What times examples of the present simple.  11 What do \( f \) you \( f \)				
2 It's great. 3 The people are really nice. 4 The people are years and years and years are possible precisions. 4 The money's bad. 5 Note that do you do? 5 Note that do you do? 6 Note that do you do? 7 Note that do you do? 8 Ask different students these questions. 9 Note that do you do? 10 Note these examples of the present simple. 10 Note that these examples of the present simple. 10 Note that the doesn't like it. 11 Note that do you work? 11 Note in Rio Branco. 12 Put the words in the correct order to complete the questions. 13 Note that do you do in your free time? 14 How go / do / there / you /? 14 How go / do / there / you /? 15 What time you / do / get / you? 16 When to be d/ you/ go / do ? 17 How many languages / you / speak / do /? 18 Do you religy it? 18 Match the answers (a-h) to questions 1-8 in Exercise 12. 19 Note in Pairs and Spanish. 19 Note in Pairs and Spanish. 19 Sure. Where do you want to go? 11 Alt half past seven. 11 You / We / They live there. 11 He likes his job because the people are nice. / He doesn't like it	7	Read these sentences. Do the people like their job? Write \( \sqrt{ or } \times. \)	11	
## It's boring.  ## It'		1 I want a different job. 5 It's interesting.		For example:
4 The money's bad. 9 Ask different students these questions. What do you do? Where do you work? Do you enjoy it?  GRAMMAR  Present simple Look at these examples of the present simple. If we in Rio Branco. Where do you work? Do you enjoy it?  9 Complete the table with -s, do, does, don't and doesn't.  If you / We / They live there. He / She / It live' he / she / it t + infinitive?  Questions  4		3 The people are 7 It's boring.		He likes his job because the people are nice. /
**Mat do you do?** . Where do you work? . Do you enjoy it?  **GRAMMAR*  **Present Simple** Look at these examples of the present simple. !// What do you do in your free time?  **S Who with / you / do / gut / up /?  **S What time you / do / gut / up /?  **S What time you / do / get / up /?  **S What time?  **S W		4 The money's bad. good.	12	
What do you do in your free time?  What time you / do / get / up /?  What time you / go / do / get / up /?  What time in least time / if we want / if you / you / speak / do /?  What time in least time /	8			
## Present simple Look at these examples of the present simple. Look				
GRAMMAR  Present simple Look at these examples of the present simple. If we in Rio Branco. If we in Rio Branco. If we many languages / you / speak / do /? Thow many languages / you / speak / do /? T				
Present simple Look at these examples of the present simple, If ive in Rio Branco. She works in an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She work in An an office, If we in Rio Branco. She wo		. Do you enjoy it?		
Present simple Look at these examples of the present simple.  If we in Rio Branco. She works in an office. If we in Rio Branco. She works in an office. If we in Rio Branco. She works in an office. If we in Rio Branco. She works in an office. If we in Rio Branco. She works in an office. If we in Rio Branco. She works in an office. If we in Rio Branco. She works in an office. If we in Rio Branco. She works in an office. If we in Rio Branco. She works in an office. If we in Rio Branco. She works in an office. If we do you work? Do you enjoy it?  9 Complete the table with -s, do, does, don't and doesn't.  If you / We / They live there. He / She / It live' there. Negatives  If you / We / They live there. He / She / It ive' there.  Negatives  If you / We / They live there. He / She / It ive' there.  Negatives  If you / We / They live there. He / She / It ive' there.  PRONUNCIATION  14 Is Listen to 'do you' - first fast, then slow. Then listen to five questions from Exercise 12 - first fast and then slow. Repeat them.  15 Work in pairs.  Student A: ask the questions in Exercise 12. Student B: say the answers in Exercise 13.  Work in pairs.  Student B: say the answers in Exercise 13.  SPEAKING  16 Choose five questions from these pages. Write one more question. Then work in pairs. Ask and answer		- AMMAD		The state of the s
Present simple Look at these examples of the present simple. If we in Rio Branco.  She works in an office. If where do you work? Do you enjoy it?  9 Complete the table with -s, do, does, don't and doesn't.  If you / We / They live there. He / She / It live' there. Negatives I / you / we / they + 2 tinfinitive he / she / it + 3 + infinitive?  Questions  4 + 1 / you / we / they + infinitive?  G Check your ideas on page 166 and do Exercise 1.  O Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.  My wife's a journalist. She ' (work) for a local newspaper. I 2 (not see) her a lot because she (have) free time, we (not see) her a lot because she (not work) in pairs.  Speak / do /?  7 How many languages / you / speak / do /?  8 Do you / to go / out / want /?  Match the answers (a - h) to questions 1-8 in Exercise 12.  a live on my own.  b At about twelve o'clock most nights.  c I go swimming, I play football, I read. d In Belváros, near the river. e I take the bus. f Two - French and Spanish. g Sure. Where do you want to go? h At half past seven.  PRONUNCIATION  14 + 1 / you / we / they + infinitive?  PRONUNCIATION  15 Sudent A: ask the questions in Exercise 12. Student B: say the answers in Exercise 13.  G For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 167.  SPEAKING  16 Choose five questions from these pages. Write one more question. Then work in pairs. Ask and answer	G	RAMMAR		
Present simple Look at these examples of the present simple.	rii.	THE RESERVE THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN 2 I		ST. STAN
Look at these examples of the present simple.	1	Present simple		
Match the answers (a—h) to questions 1—8 in Exercise 12.   Where do you work?   He doesn't like it.				
Match the answers (a-h) to questions 1-8 in Exercise 12.  a I live on my own. b At about twelve o'clock most nights. c I go swimming. I play football, I read. d In Belváros, near the river. e I take the bus. f Two - French and Spanish. g Sure. Where do you want to go? h At half past seven.  PRONUNCIATION  14  Check your ideas on page 166 and do Exercise 1.  Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.  My wife's a journalist. She ' (not see) her a lot because she only wants to sleep! But she 7 (not want) a different job because her job 5 (be) very  Match the answers (a-h) to questions 1-8 in Exercise 12. a I live on my own. b At about twelve o'clock most nights. c I go swimming. I play football, I read. d In Belváros, near the river. e I take the bus. f Two - French and Spanish. g Sure. Where do you want to go? h At half past seven.  PRONUNCIATION  14  PRONUNCIATION  15  Student A: ask the questions from Exercise 12. Student B: say the answers in Exercise 13.  SPEAKING  16  Choose five questions from these pages. Write one more question. Then work in pairs. Ask and answer				8 Do you / to go / out / want / ?
Do you enjoy it?  9 Complete the table with -s, do, does, don't and doesn't.		don't speak French. He doesn't like it.	13	
Complete the table with -s, do, does, don't and doesn't.				a I live on my own.
d In Belváros, near the river.    I / You / We / They live there.	L	Do you enjoy it?		b At about twelve o'clock most nights.
d In Belvaros, near the river.  e I take the bus.  f Two – French and Spanish.  g Sure. Where do you want to go?  h At half past seven.  PRONUNCIATION  Questions  4		Control to the table with a deal of the deal		c I go swimming, I play football, I read.
e I take the bus.  I / You / We / They live there.  He / She / It live¹ there.  Negatives  I / you / we / they + ² + infinitive he / she / it + ³ + infinitive  Questions  4	9			d In Belváros, near the river.
He / She / It live   there.		QUESTI L.		e I take the bus.
Negatives    I / you / we / they + 2				f Two – French and Spanish.
Negatives    1 / you / we / they + 2		He / She / It live <sup>1</sup> there.		
PRONUNCIATION		Negatives		
Guestions  4				
Then listen to five questions from Exercise 12 – first fast and then slow. Repeat them.  15 Work in pairs.  16 Check your ideas on page 166 and do Exercise 1.  17 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.  18 Student A: ask the questions in Exercise 12.  19 Student B: say the answers in Exercise 13.  19 For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 167.  10 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.  10 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.  10 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.  11 Student A: ask the questions in Exercise 12.  12 Student B: say the answers in Exercise 13.  13 SPEAKING  14 Choose five questions from these pages.  16 Choose five questions from these pages.  17 For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 167.  18 SPEAKING  19 Check your ideas on page 166 and do Exercise 1.  19 Student A: ask the questions in Exercise 12.  10 Student B: say the answers in Exercise 12.  11 Student B: say the answers in Exercise 12.  12 For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 167.  18 SPEAKING  19 Choose five questions from these pages.  19 For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 167.  19 Choose five questions in Exercise 12.  19 Student B: say the answers in Exercise 12.  10 For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 167.  10 Choose five questions from these pages.  10 Choose five questions from these pages.  11 For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 167.  10 Choose five questions from these pages.  10 Choose five questions from Exercise 12.  11 Student B: say the answers in Exercise 12.  12 Student B: say the answers in Exercise 12.  13 Student B: say the answers in Exercise 12.  13 Student B: say the answers in Exercise 12.  15 Student B: say the answers in Exercise 12.  16 Choose five questions from these pages.  16 Choose five questions from these pages.  17 For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 167.		Questions		PRONUNCIATION
Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.  Student A: ask the questions in Exercise 12.  Student B: say the answers in Exercise 13.  Wy wife's a journalist. She 1 (work) for a local newspaper. I 2 (not see) her a lot because she 3 (do) very long hours. She 4 (get up) early and she sometimes works all night. When she 5 (have) free time, we 6 (not go out), because she only wants to sleep! But she 7 (not want) a different job because her job 8 (be) very  Student A: ask the questions in Exercise 12.  Student B: say the answers in Exercise 13.  SPEAKING  16 Choose five questions from these pages.  Write one more question.  Then work in pairs.  Ask and answer			14	Then listen to five questions from Exercise
Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.  Student A: ask the questions in Exercise 12.  Student B: say the answers in Exercise 13.  Wy wife's a journalist. She 1 (work) for a local newspaper. I 2 (not see) her a lot because she 3 (do) very long hours. She 4 (get up) early and she sometimes works all night. When she 5 (have) free time, we 6 (not go out), because she only wants to sleep! But she 7 (not want) a different job because her job 8 (be) very  Student A: ask the questions in Exercise 12.  Student B: say the answers in Exercise 13.  SPEAKING  16 Choose five questions from these pages.  Write one more question.  Then work in pairs.  Ask and answer	6	Check your ideas on page 166 and do Exercise 1.	15	Work in pairs.
werbs in brackets.  My wife's a journalist. She 1 (work) for a local newspaper. I 2 (not see) her a lot because she 3 (do) very long hours. She 4 (get up) early and she sometimes works all night. When she 5 (have) free time, we 6 (not go out), because she only wants to sleep! But she 7 (not want) a different job because her job 8 (be) very  SPEAKING  SPEAKING  16 Choose five questions from these pages. Write one more question. Then work in pairs. Ask and answer				Student A: ask the questions in Exercise 12.
My wife's a journalist. She 1 (work) for a local newspaper. I 2 (not see) her a lot because she 3 (do) very long hours. She 4 (get up) early and she sometimes works all night. When she 5 (have) free time, we 6 (not go out), because she only wants to sleep! But she 7 (not want) a different job because her job 8 (be) very  SPEAKING  16 Choose five questions from these pages. Write one more question. Then work in pairs. Ask and answer	0			Student B: say the answers in Exercise 13.
newspaper. I 2 (not see) her a lot because she  3 (do) very long hours. She 4 (get  up) early and she sometimes works all night. When she  5 (have) free time, we 6 (not go out),  because she only wants to sleep! But she 7 (not  want) a different job because her job 8 (be) very  SPEAKING  16 Choose five questions from these pages.  Write one more question.  Then work in pairs.  Ask and answer			(	For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 167.
up) early and she sometimes works all night. When she (have) free time, we 6 (not go out), because she only wants to sleep! But she 7 (not want) a different job because her job 8 (be) very	r	newspaper. I 2 (not see) her a lot because she	S	PEAKING
(have) free time, we because she only wants to sleep! But she because her job	3	(do) very long hours. She 4 (get	3	
because she only wants to sleep! But she 7 (not want) a different job because her job 8 (be) very  Then work in pairs.  Ask and answer	U	(not go out)	16	
want) a different job because her job <sup>8</sup> (be) very  Ask and answer	F	(not go out),		
interesting and she 9 (like) it a lot. your questions.	V	vant) a different job because her job 8 (be) very		Section and the section of the secti
	İ	nteresting and she 9 (like) it a lot.		your questions.
				A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR

People and places

Unit

## A NICE PLACE TO LIVE

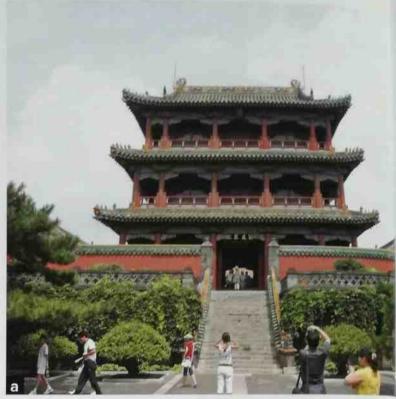
## **VOCABULARY** Describing places

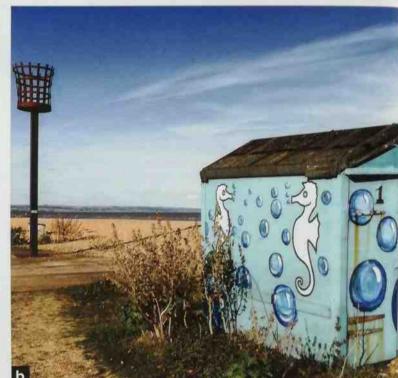
- 1 Work in pairs. The first page of this unit has ten words for places. How many do you remember?
- 2 Look at page 7 and check. Say the plural of the words. Which word has an irregular plural? Which two words have no plural?
- 3 Choose the correct words.
  - 1 It's a small / big city. Ten million people live there.
  - 2 I don't go swimming there because the beaches are very quiet / dirty.
  - 3 It's very hot / cold in the summer: 35 or 40.
  - 4 It's a very expensive / famous town. Everyone knows it.
  - 5 It doesn't have any shops. It's busy / boring!
  - 6 It's very cheap / safe. My house is only 400 euros a month.
  - 7 A lot of people visit in the summer. It's very busy / quiet.
  - 8 I really like it. It's a great / boring place to live.
  - 9 The countryside is very nice. It's a dirty / beautiful area.
  - 10 It's very famous / safe. I walk everywhere day and night.
- Work in pairs. Say places you know using the ideas below. Do you agree?
  - \_\_\_\_\_ is a very big city.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ is very quiet.
  - . \_\_\_\_\_ is very cold in the winter.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ is very expensive.
  - is a beautiful area.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ is a very famous town.

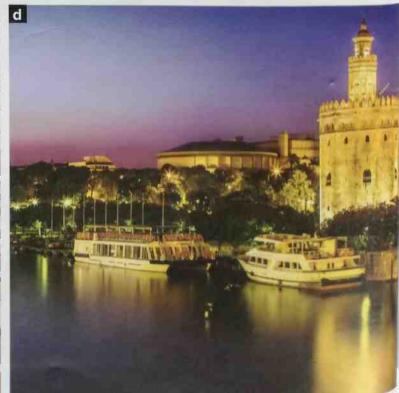
#### READING

5 Work in pairs. Describe the places in the photos. Use words from Exercise 3.









6

- Read the four texts. Match the texts to the photos on page 12. Then decide which person is:
  - 1 a designer.

3 a businessman.

2 a nurse.

4 a teacher.

- Work in pairs. Answer these questions.
  - 1 Is each place nice? Why? / Why not?
  - 2 Which place is best / worst for you? Why?
  - 3 Which job is best / worst for you? Why?

## MY HOME TOWN

IFF I'm from New Romney, in the south of England. It's near the sea, so there's a nice beach, and the countryside near here is lovely, but there isn't a lot to do. There aren't any cinemas or art galleries or museums. It's a small town. One good thing is it's cheap! I work at home and I do jobs for different companies and magazines. I don't get a lot of money because I don't have a lot of work, but I enjoy it. It's interesting.

NANCY I'm from Pinedale, in the middle of California. I work in a school and I walk to work every day. That's nice. I love my job and I love my students, but I don't like the area. It's not very nice. Crime is a problem here. It's not very safe - and there aren't a lot of jobs now, but houses are cheap.

**ROLANDO** I'm from Seville, in the south-west of Spain. It's a great place to live. There are a lot of nice cafés and restaurants and there's a great cathedral as well. I work in a hospital near there. My job isn't easy, but I enjoy it. There are some beautiful parks in the city and there's a river as well. I sometimes walk there after work to relax.

YU ISAN Fin from Shenyang. It's in the north-east of China. It's not a bad place to live. There are a lot of places to go shopping, so that's nice - and there are some great old buildings as well. There's a palace called Mukden Palace. It's very famous. One bad thing is the traffic. There are a lot of factories too. I have three - and one hundred and fifty people work for me.

## GRAMMAR

### there is / there are

Look at these examples from the texts.

There's a nice beach.

There aren't a lot of jobs now.

Complete the table with the missing words.

With s	ingular noun	s	The state of the s
1	's	a / an	cinema. great museum. old church near here.
	isn't		park near here.
2	there	a / an	café near here? airport?

With plu	ıral nouns		
There	are	two some a lot of	cinemas. parks near here. shops in town.
	3	any a lot of	places for kids. shops.
Are	4	any	shops near here?

- Check your ideas on page 167 and do Exercise 1.
- Complete the sentences with words from the table in Exercise 8.

1	There are	а	lot of	nice	shops	near	my	house.
---	-----------	---	--------	------	-------	------	----	--------

2	a university	in your	town?
---	--------------	---------	-------

- \_ a beautiful old mosque in the town centre.
- \_ any hospitals in the area.
- an expensive restaurant near here. It's famous!
- some beautiful houses in the old part of the city.
- \_\_\_\_ some nice little places to eat on the beach.
- \_ an airport outside town.
- \_ any cinemas in your town?
- any schools in the village. We go to the next town.

#### **PRONUNCIATION**

- Listen to the sentences from Exercise 9 10 said slowly and then faster. Listen again. Practise saying them.
- Work in groups. Discuss these questions. Try to 11 use there's / there are.
  - Which sentences in Exercise 9 describe the place you are from?
  - What's the best thing about the place you are from?
  - Which places in your country are very good / bad to live in? Why?
  - For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 167.

## SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- Listen and repeat the sounds with /l/, /r/, /w/ and /j/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using these words. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

languages	receptionist	river	wants
like	restaurant	university	work

G For further revision, see Exercises 1–3 on page 167.











#### IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

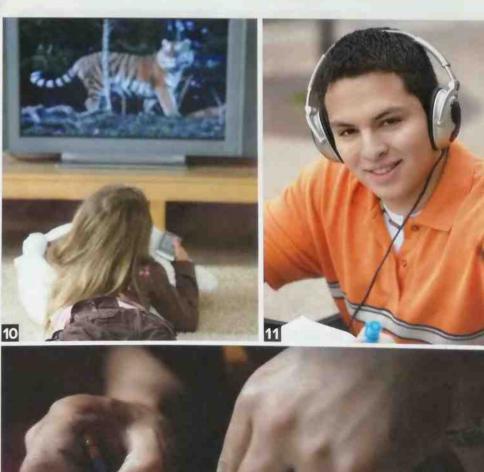
- · talk about free-time activities
- discuss what you like and don't like
- · arrange to meet
- · describe your daily life
- · talk about how often and when you do things
- · use more English in class

#### **WORDS FOR UNIT 2**

1 Work in pairs. Match the activities to the photos.

meeting new people cooking playing computer games dancing doing sport playing the guitar drawing reading going out for dinner singing going to a concert swimming going to the cinema walking listening to music watching TV

- 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.Student A: point to a photo.Student B: say the activity.
- 4 Do you know the English words for anything else in the photos?



Unit 2 Free time 15

# DO YOU WANT TO COME?

#### **SPEAKING**

1 Complete the sentences with activities from page 15.

 1
 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is boring.
 4
 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is great.

 2
 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is interesting.
 5
 I'm bad at \_\_\_\_\_\_

 3
 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is expensive.
 6
 I'm good at \_\_\_\_\_\_

2 Work in pairs. Tell your partner your ideas. Does your partner agree?

#### LISTENING

3 Look at the people in the pictures. What activities do you think they like / don't like?





4 Listen to the two people talking. Complete the table with doesn't like, thinks it's OK and loves.

	Woman	Man
doing sport		
walking		doesn't like
playing computer games		
going to the cinema	loves	

Work in pairs. Look at the audio script on page 198. Practise reading out the conversation.

#### **SPEAKING**

6 Work in groups. Ask Do you like ...? questions. Reply with I love it, It's OK or No, not really.

A: Do you like cooking?

B: Yes, I do. I love it. What about you?

A: It's OK, but I'm not very good at it.

#### GRAMMAR

#### Verb patterns

a After some verbs, we often use -ing.

I love playing tennis.

b After some verbs, we often use to + infinitive.

Do you want to see Love Train?

- 7 Which sentences are the same as pattern a above, and which are the same as pattern b?
  - 1 He really likes swimming.
  - 2 I need to go now.
  - 3 I enjoy working on my own.
  - 4 I want to learn to drive.
  - 5 Try to use the words you learn.
  - 6 I hate living in the city.
- G Check your ideas on page 168 and do Exercise 1.
- 8 Write full sentences from the notes.
  - 1 My daughter / want / get / a new phone.
  - 2 My sister / love / play / tennis.
  - 3 you/like/dance?
  - 4 I / try / study English / every day.
  - 5 I/not/enjoy/shop.
  - 6 We / need / buy / some things later.
  - 7 1 / really hate / cook.
  - 8 I / really want / learn / draw.

#### **PRONUNCIATION**

- 9 Listen and repeat six sentences with to + infinitive. Notice how we often say to as /tə/.
- 10 Complete the sentences so they are true for you

1 I love \_\_\_\_\_.

2 I don't really like \_\_\_\_\_.

3 This week I need \_\_\_\_\_.

4 I want to learn \_\_\_\_\_

5 I don't really enjoy \_\_\_\_\_

- 11 Work in pairs. Tell your partner your ideas.
- For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 168.

16

12

DI



#### DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Arrangements

We can make future arrangements using the present simple.

- A: Do you want to go shopping on Saturday?
- B: OK. Where do you want to meet?
- A: Outside Harrods the big department store.
- B: OK. What time?
- A: Is ten OK?
- B: Yeah. Fine.
- 12 Match the questions in the box to the pairs of possible answers in 1-5.

Do you like going to the cinema?

Do you want to see Monsters 6 on Sunday?

What time do you want to meet?

Where?

What time does the film end?

1 A:

B: Is four good? / Is seven OK? The film starts at eight.

B; I'm not sure. About seven, I think. / About 11.30. It's a long film.

3 A:

B: OK. That sounds nice. / Sorry. I'm busy then.

B: Yes, it's OK. / No, not really.

B: Outside the train station. / Outside the cinema.

Listen to two conversations where people make arrangements. Choose the correct words in the notes.



Work in pairs. Which day in the conversations do you think sounds best - Saturday or Sunday? Why?

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

- Decide two things you want to do at the weekend (on Friday night, Saturday or Sunday). Decide where you want to meet and what time.
- Work in pairs. Have conversations like the ones in the box in Developing Conversations.
  - 2 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.



### **VOCABULARY** Daily life

When do people usually do the activities below? Put them in the three groups in the table.

do homework have a coffee finish school have a shower get home from work have lunch leave work go to bed watch the news go to the theatre write emails

in the afternoon	in the evening
	in the afternoon

- Work in pairs and compare your answers. Do you always agree? If not, why not?
- 3 Look at the words in Exercise 1 for two minutes. Close your books. Work in pairs. See how many words you remember.

#### **GRAMMAR**

## Adverbs of frequency

We use some adverbs to show how often we do something. Notice their position in the sentence.

I always have a shower in the morning.

I usually go to bed at midnight.

4 Complete the table below with the adverbs in the box. Then translate all the adverbs into your language.

always never often sometimes

usually

2

3

occasionally
hardly ever

0%

4

- G Check your ideas on page 168 and do Exercise 1.
- 5 Tick (/) the sentences that are true for you. Change the adverbs in the other sentences to make them true for you.
  - 1 I always watch the news in the evening.
  - 2 I usually have a coffee after my lunch.
  - 3 I never drink beer or wine.
  - 4 I hardly ever read novels.
  - 5 I often listen to music when I go to sleep.
  - 6 I occasionally go to rock concerts.
  - 7 I always do my homework for my English class.
  - 8 I sometimes go swimming at the weekend.
- 6 Work in groups. Take turns saying your sentences. Who is most similar to you?

Write four true sentences using the phrases in the box and an adverb. Then say them to a partner.

cook dinner for friends sleep in the afternoon

use English outside class work at the weekend



For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 168.

## READING

- Read an article about how three people spend their free time. Answer these questions.
  - 1 Who is most similar to you? Why?
  - 2 Who do you think is the happiest person? Why?
- Read the article again. Decide which person:
  - 1 does sport or exercise.
  - 2 spends a lot of money.
  - 3 is tired at the weekend.
  - 4 likes TV.
  - 5 seems quiet.
  - 6 has a busy social life.
  - 7 goes to bed quite early.
  - 8 works long hours.

- Complete the sentences with the prepositions in bold in the article.
  - 1 I'm always very busy \_ Mondays.
  - 2 I always go running \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday mornings.
  - Fridays. It's great. I get 3 I don't usually work \_\_\_ nine or ten.
  - \_four. 4 Our school day finishes \_\_\_\_
  - 5 The film starts \_\_\_\_\_\_ eight and ends \_\_\_ 10.30.
  - 6 We don't usually do very much \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend - just relax.
  - 7 I sometimes have a short sleep \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon.
  - 8 I'm usually very tired \_\_\_\_\_ the morning. I need to have a coffee!

#### **SPEAKING**

- 11 Work in groups. Ask each other these questions.
  - What do you normally do on Friday nights?
  - · What do you normally do on Saturdays?
  - · What do you normally do on Sundays?
  - Do you go out in the evening during the week? When? What do you do?

Which person in the group has the best social life?

## DO YOU HAVE ANY FREE TIME?



### **BIRGIT FROM GERMANY**

I do something most nights. On Mondays and Wednesdays, I go to my English class, and on Tuesdays, I usually go to the cinema with friends, because the tickets are cheap then. On Thursdays, I always go to the gym. I usually go out dancing on Saturday nights. I often get home at four or five in the morning, so on Sundays, I sleep! I sometimes get up at three in the afternoon.

## FRANKIE FROM THE UK

Free time? I don't have any free time because I have my own business. I occasionally go to a rock concert - about once or twice a year - and I sometimes go shopping at the weekend. I like buying expensive things with the money I earn. I have a very nice car and a very big TV. I like watching sport.



## SVETLANA FROM RUSSIA

I don't go out much during the week. I usually study for two hours in the evening. I never watch TV, really. I usually play the piano every day. It helps me to relax. Then I go to bed at nine or ten and read. At the weekend, I go out with my family to a park or the countryside, and we go for a walk. I sometimes go to a shopping centre with friends, but I hardly ever buy anything!



# A LOT OF HOMEWORK!

#### SPEAKING

- Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - Do you like doing courses in your free time?
  - · Is this your first English course?
  - Do you like learning English?
  - · Do you like ...

10 watch

- ... doing homework?
- ... watching films or TV shows in English?
- ... listening to songs in English?
- ... reading in English?
- ... finding new words in a dictionary?
- ... practising your pronunciation?

## VOCABULARY In an English class

- Match 1-5 with a-e and 6-10 with f-j.
  - a a break / notes 1 listen b the text / the questions 2 take c in pencil / the words in your notebook 3 turn off d to the conversation / and write what 4 write you hear e your mobile phones / the light 5 read f the words / what you think 6 do g a film / the video and take notes on 7 check what you see h Exercise 1 / a lot of homework 8 close your book / the window 9 say

dictionary

the answers / the meaning in your

Work in pairs.

Student A: close your book.

Student B: say a verb.

write the answers Student A: say a phrase.

write

Do you need these things for your English class? Explain why / why not.

a dictionary	paper	scissors	
a mobile phone	a pen	tissues	
money	a rubber	water	

For example:

I always need a pen because I need to take notes. I don't need scissors because I don't cut things in class

#### LISTENING

- Listen to three conversations in an English class. Decide which conversation (1-3) happens
  - a at the beginning of the class.
  - b in the middle of the class.
  - c at the end of the class.
- Listen again. Decide if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).
  - 1 Camilla has money for two coffees.
  - 2 The break is 25 minutes long.
  - They need to do two exercises for homework and learn some words.
  - 4 Simon wants a lot of homework.
  - 5 Simon sits next to Camilla.
  - 6 Camilla gives him her dictionary.



one

6

GRA

Co We

of w

Nou calle

a l

Son The We

Listen again. Complete the sentences with one word. Contractions (it's, isn't, etc.) are one word.

1 It's a break. He says \_\_\_\_ \_\_ a café next door.

2 OK, thanks. How \_\_\_\_\_\_ is the break?

3 B: This is a lot of homework.

A: Do you \_\_\_\_\_so?

\_ to do it. Do some every day. Five 4 Simon - \_\_\_\_ or ten minutes.

\_\_\_\_ I'm late.

6 Teacher! What does 'turn off' \_\_

#### Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- . Are Camilla and Simon good or bad students?
- . Do you like the way Matty teaches? Why? / Why not?
- . How often are you late / do you forget things / do you do homework?

#### GRAMMAR

#### Countable and uncountable nouns

We usually use a / an with singular nouns and some / a lot of with plural nouns.

Nouns with both singular and plural forms like this are called countable nouns.







Some nouns have no plural form.

These nouns are called uncountable nouns.

We use some or a lot of with them.





Here are some nouns that are often uncountable:

countryside food help paper time traffic water

9 Complete the sentences with a / an, some or a lot of.

1 I want to be \_\_\_\_\_ English teacher.

2 Do you have \_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ rubber?

3 Do you want \_\_\_ \_ water?

4 I need \_ \_\_ paper to take \_ \_ notes.

5 Sorry I'm late. There's \_\_\_\_\_\_ traffic today.

6 There's \_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ nice countryside near here.

Look at each pair of sentences in the box 10 and circle the differences. In pairs, discuss what things are different when you use an uncountable noun instead of a countable noun.

	Countable	Uncountable
1	I don't need a dictionary.	I don't need any help.
2	There aren't any cars.	There isn't any traffic.
3	There aren't many cars.	There isn't much traffic.
4	Do you have a rubber?	Do you have any paper?
5	Do you have any tissues?	Do we have any homework?
6	Do you want some chips?	Do you want some water?

## Check your ideas on page 169 and do Exercise 1.

- Work in groups. Look at the words in Exercise 4. Find out:
  - who has the most things.
  - how many of the things you have between you.

For example:

A: Do you have a pen?

B: Yes, here. Do you have any paper?

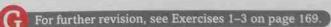
A: No. I don't.

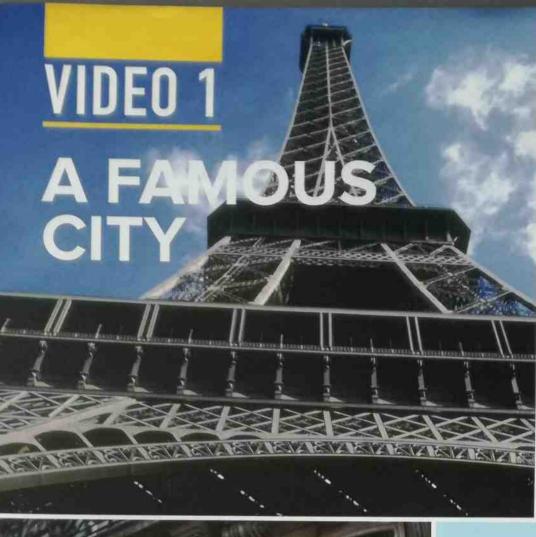
- Use these ideas to write sentences that are true for you.
  - 1 I / have / free time
  - 2 There / be / thing(s) to do here
  - 3 1/do/homework
  - 4 I / want to have / kid(s)
  - 5 1 / drink / coffee
  - 6 1 / like / rock music
- Work in pairs. Say your sentences to each other. How similar are you?
- For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 169.

#### SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- 14 Listen and repeat the sounds with /k/, /g/, /s/ and /z/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- 15 Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using the words in the box. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

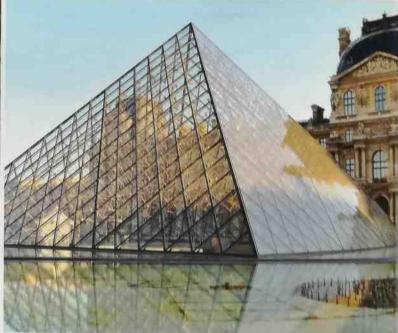
break countryside aet relax closes games homework seems











- 1 Work in pairs. Look at the photos. Discuss these questions.
  - 1 Which city do you think this is?
  - 2 Do you know the places in the photos?
  - 3 Do you think this is a good city to live? Why? / Why not?
- Watch the first part of the video (0.00–0.58). Answer these questions.
  - 1 What city is in the video?
  - 2 What does the speaker like about the city?
  - 3 In the video, the woman talks about the open spaces – parks, gardens and squares. As a class, say ten things people do in parks.
- Watch the rest of the video (0.58–2.18). Does the speaker say the same ten things as you?

- 4 In pairs, say:
  - the six different parks the woman talks about.
  - ten things the woman says people do in parks.
- Work in groups. Do you have any photos of you town / city? Show the other students in your group. Say something about each photo.

## UNDERSTANDING FAST SPEECH

6 Read and listen to this extract from the video said fast, then slow. Stressed sounds are CAPITALS.

For TOUrists, PAris is the Elffel TOwer, the musEums the CHURches. But for ME, PAris is the Open SPACES the PARKS, GARdens and SQUARES.

You try! Practise saying the extract with the same stressed sounds. RE

GR/

Ch

2 /

4 4

B

5 A B 6 A B

7 A

Wri

B

A: 1\_ B: I'r

B: At A: 3\_

B: Ye

1.1n 2.1p

> 3 Sc dc 4 Dc

> 5 Th 6 Sh

no

one etc.)

2 .

3 \_

# REVIEW 1

## GRAMMAR

- Choose the correct option.
  - 1 A: Where are / is he from?
    - B: France.
  - 2 A: Do you want to go / going to the cinema later?
    - B: OK. What time?
  - 3 A: Do you have a / any tissues?
    - B: Yes. There are one / some in my bag.
  - 4 A: Are / Is you OK?
    - B: Yes, I'm I am OK, thanks.
  - 5 A: Do you like play I playing tennis?
    - B: Yes, it's / he's great.
  - 6 A: Does / Is your town big?
    - B: Not really. There is / are only about 10,000 people.
  - 7 A: What you do / do you do at the weekend?
    - B: I usually stay at home. I don't / I'm not earn much money.
  - 8 A: Do / Does your son like football?
    - B: He love / loves watching, but he doesn't play very often / sometimes.
- Write full questions to complete the dialogue. Use the words in brackets.

? (do)

B: I'm a doctor.

? (work)

B: At a hospital in the north of Rome.

\_? (enjoy)

B: Yes. It's a great job.

- 3 Put the word(s) in bold in the correct place in the sentence.
  - 1 I need do some shopping. to
  - 2 I play computer games, hardly ever
  - 3 Sorry, Lunderstand. What does 'journalist' mean? don't
  - 4 Do you have pencil and paper? a
  - 5 There's a palace near the river. It's great. beautiful
  - 6 She speaks English very well, but she's from the UK.
- 4 Listen and complete the sentences with one word in each space. Contractions (I'm, don't, etc.) are one word.

1		_ you		money?	
2	-		need	help,	
3		time		want	

4	There		
	places to visit		
5	Ineed _		4
	homework		
6		gets up	six and
	work	seven.	

■ 16 Work in pairs. Compare your ideas. Listen again and check.

#### **VOCABULARY**

Match the verbs in the box to the groups of words they go with in 1-8.

check	help	play	turn off	
close	live	say	watch	

- 1 ~ the news / ~ a football game / ~ a film
- 2 ~ in the countryside / ~ in the capital / ~ on my own
- 3 ~ in the park / ~ the piano / ~ a game
- 4 ~ what you think / ~ no / ~ a lot
- 5 ~ the TV / ~ your phone / ~ the light
- 6 ~ my grandparents / ~ me / ~ to do my homework
- 7 ~ the answers / ~ the word in a dictionary / ~ it's OK
- 8 ~ your book / the shop ~s at nine / ~ the window
- Put the words into three groups places, jobs or free time.

assistant	countryside dancing	factory	officer
church		guitar	receptionist
clinic	department	the Middle East	swimming
concert	draw	nurse	waiter

- Match each adjective in italics in 1-8 with its opposite in a-h.
  - 1 It's a boring job.
- a cheap
- 2 I have a busy social life.
- b best
- 3 He has a big car.
- c quiet
- 4 It's an expensive restaurant.
- d interesting
- 5 It's the worst place to live in the UK. e west 6 It's in east Paris
  - f old

7 It's a long film.

finish

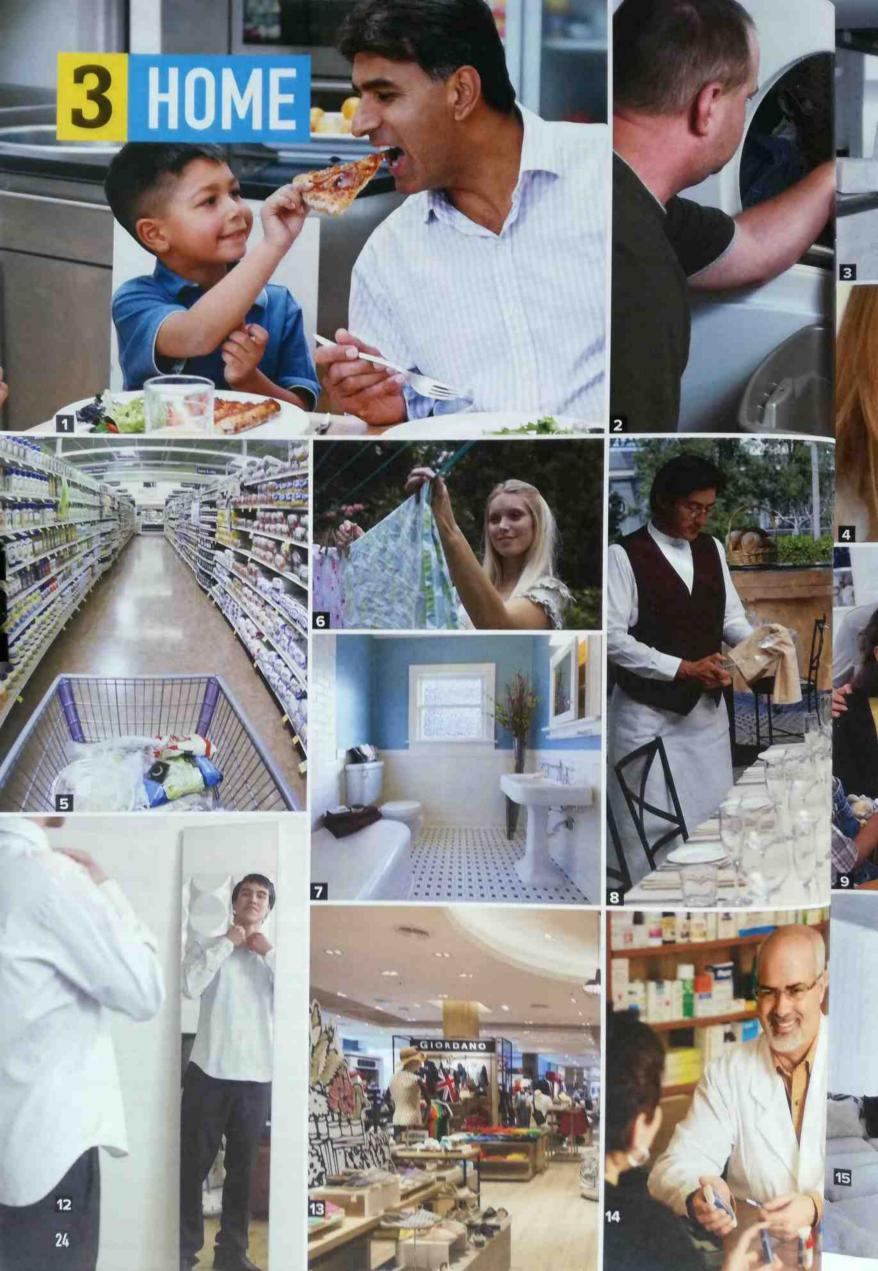
- g small
- 8 I have a new mobile phone.

an

- h short
- Complete the text with the verbs in the box.

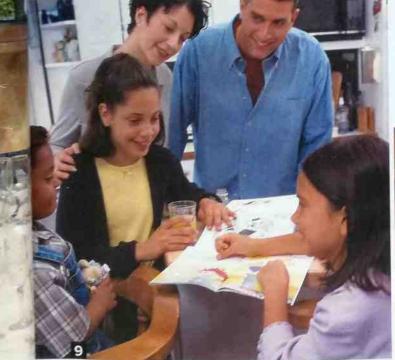
get	have	listen	work
11	in a departme	nt store in	town. I usually
start at ei	ght o'clock and 2_		at four. I leave the
house at	seven and 3	home	e at five or six. I
4			to the gym
after wor	k. I usually <sup>6</sup>	about	an hour there.
Then, in t	he evening I just	1	dinner with my
wife and	watch TV. We son	netimes sit	and 8
to music	A STATE OF THE STA		

like











## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · talk about the area you live in
- name things you often buy and do
- · explain where things are
- · explain what you need to do
- · describe your house / flat
- ask people to do things

#### **WORDS FOR UNIT 3**

1 Work in pairs. Match the words and phrases to the photos.

the bathroom clean the house a department store dry my hair get dressed go to a chemist hang up the washing the living room a post office put on make-up set the table share food sit in the kitchen a sports centre a supermarket wash some clothes

- 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- 3 Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

Student A: point to a photo.

Student B: say the words.

4 Which photos do you like / not like?





## IS THERE ONE NEAR HERE?

#### SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Say the shops, restaurants and other facilities that are near your home – and the place you work or study. Decide which area is best.

For example:

- A: There's a really good supermarket near my home, and there are lots of different restaurants and there's a sports centre.
- B: Near my house there's a small café, a bank and two shops. There's a small park.
- A: I think my area is best, then.
- B: Maybe.

#### **VOCABULARY** Local facilities

2 Match the things people do (1-8) to the places in the box.

a bank	a chemist's	a shoe shop
a bookshop	a clothes shop	a sports centre
a café	a post office	

- 1 buy some toothpaste / buy some aspirins
- 2 buy a novel / buy a phrasebook
- 3 have something to eat / have something to drink
- 4 buy a shirt / buy a jacket
- 5 buy some boots / buy some shoes
- 6 play tennis / go swimming
- 7 buy some stamps / send a package
- 8 change some money / get some money
- 3 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - · Which of the places in Exercise 2 do you go to most?
  - What do you usually buy or do in each one?

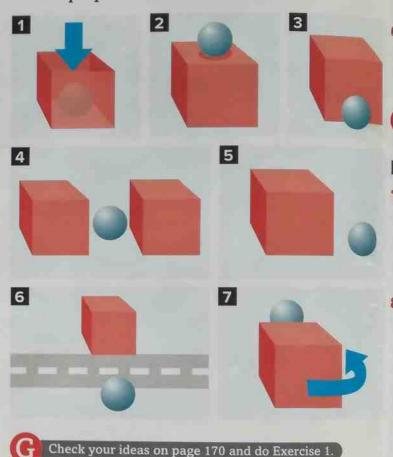
#### GRAMMAR

## Prepositions of place

We use these prepositions, and phrases with prepositions, to describe where things are:

in on between behind opposite next to in front of

Work in pairs. Label the balls in the picture with the prepositions in the box above.



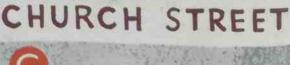
FACTORY

JACKSON LANE

JONES STREET









CHURCH



BOC

## 5 Read the sentences and label A-H on the map.

- 1 There's a bank on this road next to the supermarket.
- 2 There's a hotel on the next street on the left.
- 3 There's a great museum on this road on the right.
- 4 There's a post office on the next road opposite the church.
- 5 There's a café on Jones Street next to the station.
- 6 There's a cinema at the end of this road.
- 7 There's a big department store on the corner of Church Street and Jackson Lane.
- 8 There's a clothes shop between the internet café and the department store.
- 6 Work in pairs. Cover Exercise 5. Look at the map. Ask and answer questions like this:
  - A: Is there a post office near here?
  - B: Yes, there's one opposite the church.



#### LISTENING

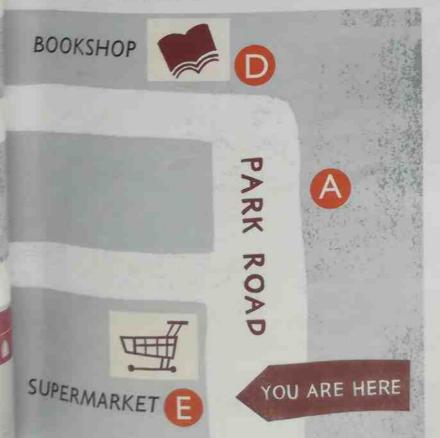
- 7 Listen to three conversations where people ask about local places. Answer the questions for each conversation.
  - a What places do they want to find?
  - b What do they want to buy / do?
- 8 ► Listen again. Tick (✓) the sentences that are true.

#### Conversation 1

- 1 The clothes shop is on New Street.
- 2 It's on the left.
- 3 It's next to a bookshop.

#### Conversation 2

- 4 There are lots of good places to eat in the area.
- 5 The supermarket is on Dixon Road.
- 6 It's next to a small park.



#### Conversation 3

- 7 The department store is on the corner of Chester Street and Hale Road
- 8 It's on the right.
- 9 It's opposite a clothes shop.

#### **DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

#### Asking for information

When we ask friends for information about places, we often explain why we want to go there. Our friends can then give suggestions. For example:

- A: I need to buy some shoes for my son. Are there any shoe shops near here?
- B: Try Kids Stuff it's a clothes shop for kids. They sell nice shoes.
- C: Are there any restaurants near here? We want to get something to eat.
- D: There aren't really any places in this area. Try the supermarket on Dixon Road. They have sandwiches and salads.
- 9 Look at the questions below. Think of two reasons to go to each place.

I need to I want to	Is there	a clothes shop a sports centre an internet café a chemist's a post office a bank	near here?
---------------------	----------	--	------------

Work in pairs. Ask each other questions and give your reasons from Exercise 9. Answer with suggestions of places you know.

For example:

- A: I want to buy a jacket, Is there a clothes shop near here?
- B: Yeah, try Topshop on Oxford Street.

or

No, but try the big supermarket – they sell some clothes.

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

- 11 Choose one of these tasks.
  - a Work in pairs. Student A: look at File 1 on page 192. Student B: look at File 3 on page 193. Take turns to ask *Is there a ... near here?* to find the places you want. Explain why you need to go to each place. Your partner should answer with information from their map.
  - b Work in groups. Think of five things you want to buy or do. Then ask other students *Is there a ... near here?* The other students give true answers about the place you are now.
- 5 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.

## FAMILY HOME

#### VOCABULARY In the house

Complete the descriptions of two places with the words in the box.

We have a house. It's really nice. We have four

apartment balcony bathrooms	bed bedrooms cupboards	kitchen sink	sofa table	

#### Description 1

9	and two 2	We have	a lovely
living room	m and a big 3	We also ly because I work	have a small
Description	on 2		
small bath toilet. I ha	nroom with only ve a small kitch	has one bedroon a shower, <sup>5</sup> en with a <sup>6</sup> where I han	and where
washing. space for	The place is OK friends to stay. e many 8	for me, but I don I only have two c to keep thing	't have any hairs and I is in. I usually

to sit on!

Work in pairs. Describe where you live. Use some of the language in Exercise 1.

You need to spend time learning words. Here are three ways to help you remember them:

- learn short phrases or pairs of words
- connect words to rooms in your house
- connect words to people

living room or a 10\_

On a big piece of paper, draw a plan of your house. Write these phrases in different rooms. Then work in pairs and compare your ideas.

brush his teeth cut vegetables get dressed get a towel lie down look in the mirror make dinner	put things in the fridge send an email set the alarm clock take an aspirin talk on the phone wash the dishes watch a film
put on make-up	work on the computer

Work in pairs. Make a list of the people in your class. Write sentences like the examples below. Use an -ing form for the activity.

Kenji's in the kitchen making dinner. Sara's on the balcony talking on the phone.

Now close your books. How many words and phrases can you remember?

#### READING

- Quickly read the blog on page 29, by a young Greek woman, Maria. What places do the photos show?
- Read again. Answer these questions.
  - 1 What is good / bad about each place?
  - 2 Who does she live with?
  - 3 What problems does she have with each person?
- Match the verbs with the words they go with in sometime the blog. Then look at the blog and check your house in answers.

1	live	а	an hour to drive there
2	study	b	a room with my sister
3	take	С	hours putting on her make-up
4	share	d	with my sister and brother
5	annoy	е	me
6	spend	f	Business Management

Work in pairs. Say what you remember about Maria and her family, using the language in Exercise 8.

For example:

Maria lives with her sister, Dimitra, and her brother,

#### GRAMMAR

#### Pronouns, possessive adjectives and 's

Look at these sentences from the blog.

She spends hours putting on her make-up.

Sometimes my sister and brother annoy me

My sister's bedroom has its own bathroom.

We use pronouns like she and me to replace nouns and 11

We use person + 's or possessive adjectives like her, my and its before a noun.

#### Complete the table. 10

Subject	Object	Adjective	
	11	my	
you	you	2	
he	him	3	
she	4	her	
it	it	its	
we	us	5	
they	6	their	

Check your ideas on page 170 and do Exercise 1.

www.ma

My name city. There Dimitra, a and I stud

there. The there. It's quiet and

We usual

In our far because listen to r lovely vie own bath the best.

Our flat in with Dim and I kee mess! The floor and We take t

kitchen. I my sister sometim my sister make-up one bath

> Con pror brac

M

5 M

6 M

7 W 8 11 (h

9 19 (1)

28

# ME AND MY FAMILY

SEARCH BLOG

My name's Maria and I live in Thessaloniki. It's a great city. There are lots of things to do. I live with my sister, Dimitra, and my brother, Costa. They both work here, and I study - English and Business Management. We usually stay in the city during the week and then sometimes at the weekend we go back to our family house in the mountains near Askós. My parents live there. They're retired. It takes about an hour to drive there. It's a beautiful place, but the village is very quiet and small and there's not much to do.

In our family home, I think I have the best room because I have a balcony. Sometimes I sit there and listen to music or read or just relax and look at the lovely view. My sister's bedroom is big and has its own bathroom, which is why she thinks her room is the best. But I don't need my own bathroom.

Our flat in Thessaloniki is very small. I share a room with Dimitra, but Costa has his own room. Dimitra and I keep our room nice and tidy, but Costa's is a mess! There are clothes, books and paper on the floor and table. Men!

We take turns to cook, wash the dishes and clean the kitchen. I love living with my family, but sometimes my sister and brother annoy me. My brother sometimes 'forgets' to do his jobs in the house and my sister sometimes spends hours putting on her make-up and washing her hair - and we only have one bathroom there!





11 Complete the sentences. Use the correct object pronoun or possessive based on the words in brackets. The first one is done for you.

room is very untidy. (I / sister) My sister's room is very untidy.

2 I live on \_\_\_\_\_ own. (I)

3 My room has \_\_\_\_\_ own bathroom. (it)

4 My mum sometimes annoys \_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_(1).

5 My friends keep a cat in \_\_\_\_\_ apartment. (they)

6 My dad usually makes dinner for \_\_\_\_\_. (we)

7 We pay someone to clean \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_ home. (we)

8 I have a friend who works for \_\_\_\_\_ company. (he / father)

9 1 go to \_ house most weeks. (I / grandparents).

Work in pairs. Discuss if the sentences in Exercise 11 are true for you or not.



For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 171.

#### SPEAKING

- Think about your answers to these questions. Use a dictionary if you need help.
  - · What's good / bad about living with your parents when you're an adult?
  - . What's good / bad about sharing a room?
  - What's good / bad about living on your own?
  - Do you ever have any problems with the person / people you live with? What?
- Work in groups. Discuss your answers.

## CAN YOU HELP ME?

















GR

CC

To

1 cc

He

infi

Cal

Cal

#### LISTENING

- 1 Match the sentences (a-h) with the pictures (1-8).
  - a I can't concentrate.
- e I'm cold.
- b I can't get it.
- f I'm hot.
- c I can't hear it.
- g It's a mess.
- d I can't find my keys.
- h It's very dirty.
- 2 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - Which of the problems in Exercise 1 do you sometimes have in your home?
  - Imagine you are the people with problems in Exercise 1. What's a good thing to say or ask in each situation?
- 3 Listen to three conversations (1–3). Match each one to a situation in Exercise 1.
- 4 Listen again. Complete the sentences with one word in each space.

#### Conversation 1

- I \_\_\_\_ walk across it without breaking something!
- 2 Can you \_\_\_\_\_\_ it, please?

#### Conversation 2

- 3 What temperature is the air-conditioning \_
- 4 Can you \_\_\_\_\_ it up? I'm cold.
- 5 It's \_\_\_\_\_ cold.

#### Conversation 3

- 6 What did he \_\_\_\_ ?
- 7 Can you turn it \_\_\_\_ ?
- 8 Is that \_\_\_\_\_ for you?

## UNDERSTANDING VOCABULARY

## Collocations

We call words that often go together collocations.

The most important kinds of collocations are: verb + noun: watch TV, dry my hair, clean the house adjective + noun: a busy week, a famous town, an expensive area

preposition + noun: on the corner, at the weekend, in the morning

When you learn a noun, try to learn verbs and adjectives that go with it.

For new verbs, learn some nouns that go with them. Learn new preposition + noun collocations when you meet them. Match the verbs in the box to the groups of nouns (1-6) that they go with.

turn up brush put on share wash cut

- 1 ~ my jacket / ~ your shoes / ~ some make-up
- 2 ~ myself / ~ some vegetables / ~ my hair
- 3 ~ the TV / ~ the air-conditioning / ~ the music
- 4 ~ my hair / ~ my teeth / ~ the dog
- 5 ~ your hands / ~ some dirty clothes / ~ the plates
- 6 ~ a flat / ~ a room with my sister / ~ a pizza
- Match the nouns in the box to the groups of verbs and adjectives (1-6) that they go with.

cupboard air-conditioning sink towel alarm clock

- 1 I need a ~ to dry myself / have a clean ~ / the ~'s wet
- 2 turn the ~ on / turn up the ~ / turn down the ~ / turn off the ~
- 3 set the ~ for dinner / clear the ~ / it's on the ~
- 4 wash your hands in the ~ / leave the dirty plates in the ~ / fill the kitchen ~
- 5 set the ~ for seven / hear the ~ / the ~ goes off
- 6 hang it up in the ~ / put it back in the ~ / the ~ under the sink
- Say things about you and people you live with using the collocations below and always, usually, hardly ever or never.

For example:

My mum always washes my clothes.

My brother hardly ever washes his hands before dinner.

- · wash my clothes
- · wash ... hands before dinner
- · put milk back in the fridge
- · leave dirty plates in the sink
- · set the table for dinner
- · hang up towels after using them
- · set the alarm clock
- turn on the air-conditioning

### GRAMMAR

#### can / can't

To say something is impossible, use can't + infinitive.

can't get it.

He can't hear it.

To ask (someone) to do something, use Can I / you, etc. +

Can you turn the TV down, please? I can't concentrate.

Can I use this towel? I want to have a shower

What different ways can you answer the questions in the box above?

Check your ideas on page 171 and do Exercise 1

- Put the words in the correct order.
  - 1 sleep/I/can't/.
  - 2 you/can/me/help/?
  - 3 use / I / can / bathroom / your /?
  - 4 up/you/turn/can/music/the/?
  - 5 book/find/I/can't/my/-
  - 6 can / clothes / wash / some / 1 / ?
  - 7 week/can't/we/next/come/.
  - 8 moment / can't / he / drive / at / the / .
- 20 Listen to the sentences in Exercise 9. Notice how we usually say can as /kən/ and can't as /ka:nt/. Practise saying the sentences.
- Use the words in 1-7 to write a question with can and an explanation with can't. The question sometimes comes before and sometimes after the explanation. The first one is done for you.

you / speak louder 1 I/hear you I can't hear you. Can you speak louder?

I / see the board 2 you/move vou / help me 3 1/do this exercise I / hear the CD

you / tell me the homework 5 1/come to the class

6 1/ read the board 1 / sit nearer 1 / wait 7 I/go to the toilet

Work in pairs. Have short conversations using your sentences from Exercise 11.

For example:

4 you / turn it up

A: I can't hear you. Can you speak louder?

B: Yes, of course. Sorry.

For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 171.

#### SPEAKING

- Work in pairs. Write four short conversations based on the pictures in Exercise 1.
- Remember your conversations. Act the conversations for another pair.

#### SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- Listen and repeat the sounds with /f/, /v/, /p/ and /b/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- 16 22 Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using these words. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

sofas living room plates bank vegetables package post office bathroom

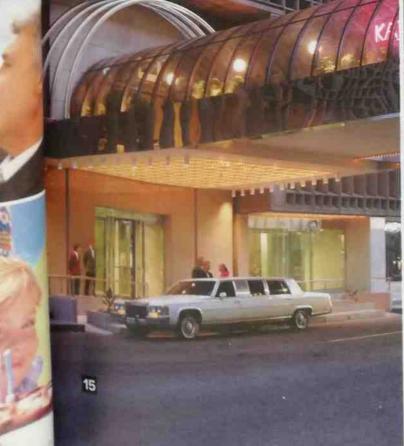
For further revision, see Exercises 1-3 on page 171.











#### IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · talk about what you did in the past
- · comment on what people tell you
- talk about dates and months
- ask and answer questions about holidays

#### **WORDS FOR UNIT 4**

1 Work in pairs. Match the words and phrases to the photos.

> be annoyed celebrate your birthday do some shopping enjoy the nightlife get back home get some flowers go sightseeing have a cold

have a picnic laugh rent a boat see a film snow stay in a hotel walk in the mountains watch a football match

- 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- 3 Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

Student A: point to a photo.

Student B: say the words.

4 Which photos do you like / not like?







#### LISTENING

- 1 Read what four people say about last weekend. Do you think each person had a very good time, an OK time or a bad time?
  - a I was ill. I had a bad cold.
  - b We went to a rock festival.
  - c Some friends came to visit, so I showed them round the city.
  - d Nothing much, really. I did some shopping on Saturday.
- 24 Listen to four conversations. Match the conversations (1-4) to sentences a-d in Exercise 1. Does each person say the weekend was good, OK or bad?'
- 3 Listen again. Match a-f below to conversations 1-4.

Conversation 1

Conversation 2

Conversation 3

Conversation 4

- a We had a picnic in the park.
- b I saw The Loons on Saturday night. They were good.
- c I stayed in bed all weekend.
- d I cooked lunch for everyone.
- e I played tennis, watched TV the usual things.
- f It was fantastic.

- 4 Work in pairs. Discuss whether you like:
  - · busy weekends or quiet weekends.
  - · going to music festivals.
  - · going to markets.
  - cooking for lots of people.
  - showing people round your town / area.

### GRAMMAR

## Past simple

The past simple form is usually infinitive + -ed.

If the infinitive form of the verb ends in -e, just add -d.

I played tennis and watched TV.

I wanted to go out yesterday.

She smiled to herself.

A lot of common verbs are irregular.

You just need to learn the past simple forms of irregular verbs when you meet them.

see – saw take – took spend – spent get – got read – read buy – bought 5 Look a from t

1 show

2 cool 3 stay

4 play

5 wate

G Check

6 Work

Stude

Stude

Then

Comp last w verbs

> be come

1 1\_

3 We

4 1\_

5 The

7 lw

8 1

Write great borin



#### DEVEL

That We use

people : A: Som

B: That

Write

bad

1 We

2 1 4

3 1 h

4 Iw

5 Isa

6 We

5	Look at the past simple forms of some verbs
	from the listening. Write the infinitive form.

15	showed - show	6	went
2	cooked	7	did
3	stayed	8	had
4	played	9	was / were
	austritied -	10	came -

Work in pairs. Test each other.

Student A: say the infinitive forms in Exercise 5.

Student B: cover the exercise. Say the past simple forms.

Then change roles and repeat.

Complete the sentences about things people did last weekend with the past simple forms of the verbs in the box.

be come	get go	have spend	stay watch		
1.1	_lunch with	my grandpar	ents.		
2 I to the beach with some friends.					
3 We	3 We at home and relaxed.				
4 I a football match on Saturday.					
5 There a free concert in town.					
6 Some friends to our house for dinner.					
7 I went sho	opping and I_	50	me new shoes.		
8 I all weekend studying for an exam.					

Write three things you did in the past that were great, and three things you did that were bad or boring. Work in groups. Share your ideas.



#### **DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

## That sounds ...

We use that sounds + adjective to comment on what people say.

- A: Some friends came to visit, so I showed them round the city.
- B. That sounds nice.
- Write a comment about each sentence using that sounds + an adjective in the box.

bad	interesting	great	nice	

- 1 We rented a boat and went on the lake
- 2 I went for a walk in the countryside
- 3 I had a headache, so I stayed at home.
- 4 I went shopping with my mum.
- 5 I saw a documentary about crime
- 6 We had a party at home.

#### Practise the conversations. 10

For example:

- A: What did you do?
- B: We rented a boat and went on the lake.
- A: That sounds great.

#### **PRONUNCIATION**

- Listen. Circle the form of the verbs you hear in the sentences.
  - 1 visit / visited
  - 2 visit / visited
  - 3 play / played
  - 4 try / tried; play / played
  - 5 want / wanted; rain / rained
  - 6 chat / chatted
  - 7 walk / walked; chat / chatted
  - 8 walk / walked

We usually say past -ed endings as /d/ or /t/.

rained played walked /reind/ /pleid/ /wo:kt/

When the infinitive ends in /t/ or /d/, the pronunciation of past -ed endings is /id/.

wanted chatted visited decided /'wontid/ /'tfætid/ /'vizitid/ /dr'saidid/

Work in pairs. Look at the audio script for Track 24 on page 200 and practise reading out the conversations.

#### CONVERSATION PRACTICE

- Think about last weekend. Did you have a nice weekend? Choose an answer from the list below. Write down two or three things you did.
  - a Yeah, it was great.
  - b It was OK.
  - c Not really.
- Have conversations with different people in your class. Use these two questions.
  - Did you have a nice weekend?
  - What did you do?

Comment on people's answers about their activities with that sounds ...

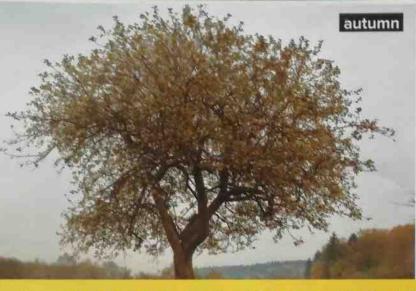
Work in pairs. Decide which person in the class had the best weekend - and why.

o watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.





winter



A PUBLIC HOLIDAY

#### **VOCABULARY**

Months, seasons and dates

1 Put the months in the correct order.

August	June	January	December
February	May	October	September
April	July	March	November

- 2 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - Look at the four photos above. Do you have the four seasons in your country?
  - · What months are they?
  - · Did you go on holiday this / last year?
  - · What season was it? What month?

We use ordinal numbers for dates.

March the fourth, May the sixth

To make most ordinal numbers, add -th to the number. Some are irregular.

30th are irregular.  $1^{st} - first$   $2^{nd} - second$   $3^{rd} - third$   $5^{th} - fifth$   $9^{th} - ninth$   $12^{th} - twelfth$   $20^{th} - twentieth$   $21^{st} - twenty-first$   $30^{th} - thirtieth$   $31^{st} - thirty-first$ We use on with dates; on October the twelfth.

3 Listen and write the dates you hear in 1–6 to complete the information about public holidays.

1 New Year's Day, UK

- 2 Mother Teresa Day, Albania
- 3 Women's Day, Russia
- 4 Day of the Dead, Mexico
- 5 Sant Joan's Day, Catalonia
- 6 Martin Luther King Day, USA
- Work in pairs. Follow the instructions in your f

Student A: use File 2 on page 192.

Student B: use File 4 on page 193.

- 5 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - Which of the public holidays in Exercises 3 and 4 you celebrate in your country? How?
  - Do you know anything about the other public holidays?
  - Do you have any public holidays to celebrate fail people? When? Who is the person?
  - · Who has a birthday next in your class?

ar in 9 Wo bublic wh Ex Jan 1st For

8

LISTI

fro

wh

on Sp

GRA

The

Pas To ma the ve

) Co wa

2 1



## LISTENING

- 6 did on public holidays. Which public holiday from Exercise 3 does each speaker talk about?
- Work in pairs. Check you understand the words below from the three stories. Then decide which speaker used each group of words. Listen again to check your ideas.
  - a missed work nice presents flowers say room
  - b three drove clear cloud views traffic two
  - c fire beach night songs swam warm slept
  - Listen again. Complete the sentences with one word in each space.

#### Speaker 1

- 1 We \_\_\_\_\_ a fire on the beach.
- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ songs and laughed,
- 3 Some of my friends swam in the

#### Speaker 2

- 4 I was in London for work, so I missed the
- 5 On Women's Day, men usually \_\_\_\_\_ us very well.
- 6 Ididn't go out for dinner. I didn't get \_\_\_\_\_\_

#### Speaker 3

- 7 We \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturday the 16th at three in the morning.
- 8 We drove to the
- 9 It was very clear and sunny. There wasn't a cloud in the
- 9 Work in pairs. Say as much as you can about what each speaker did, using the words in Exercise 7.

For example:

They made a fire on the beach with some friends.

#### GRAMMAR

#### Past simple negatives

To make past simple negatives, we use wasn't / weren't for the very be-

For all other verbs, we use didn't + infinitive.

- Complete the sentences from the listening using wasn't, weren't or didn't.
  - It was good, because there \_\_\_\_\_ many cars on the road,
  - 2 1 go out for dinner.
  - 3 The sea \_\_\_\_\_\_ very warm.
  - G Clieck your ideas on page 172 and do Exercise 1.

- Write the negative form of the past simple verbs in brackets.
  - 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ much on Sunday, (dld)
  - 2 1 \_\_\_\_\_ until eleven. (got up)
  - I wanted to have breakfast, but there \_\_\_\_\_ any coffee or bread in the house (was)
  - 4 I went to the shop, but I \_\_\_\_\_ my keys. (took)
  - 5 The shops \_\_\_\_\_\_ open, It was a holiday! (were)

  - 7 I went to a cafe and I had a coffee, but then I saw that I any money! (had)
  - 8 I went back to my flat, I broke a window to get in. I again after that, (went out)

In negative sentences, we often use any + noun after the verb. We can also use anyone, anything, anywhere.

I didn't get any flowers.

I didn't have anyone to say nice things to me.

- 12 Complete the sentences by adding any, anyone, anything and anywhere.
  - 1 I wanted to buy it, but I didn't have \_\_\_\_\_ money.
  - 2 The film was in English. I didn't understand
  - The beach was very quiet. We didn't see \_\_\_\_\_
    there for maybe three days,
  - 4 We went shopping in the morning, but I didn't buy
  - 5 I had a very quiet weekend. I didn't go \_\_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 We stayed in a very small town. There weren't \_\_\_\_\_ shops or banks!
  - 7 I didn't enjoy the party. There wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ I knew there.
  - 8 There wasn't \_\_\_\_\_\_ to park the car, so I drove home.
  - For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 173.

#### SPEAKING

- 13 Write answers to these questions. Then work in groups and say what you've written.
  - What's your favourite public holiday? What do you normally do?
  - · When was the last public holiday? What did you do?

# DID YOU GO ANYWHERE NICE?

# **VOCABULARY** Going on holiday

go on holiday

If you go on holiday, you stop working and go away to a different place to relax, usually for a few days or more.

#### Match the verbs (1-6) to the groups of words they go with (a-f).

1 fly a a day in Rome / the week relaxing / lots of money

2 stay b to Helsinki / with British Airways / first-class

3 take c the train / the bus / a taxi

4 spend d with friends / in a hotel / in a bed and breakfast

5 rent e sightseeing / out for dinner / swimming

6 go f a car / a boat / a flat

#### Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

· How often do you / does your family go on holiday?

· Do you usually go to the same place or do you go to different places?

What do you usually do when you are on holiday?

#### READING

Read an email from a Danish man to his Italian friend. Put the photos in the order they are talked about in the text.



mauro 1990@shotmail.it

Re: Ireland Subject

#### Hi Mauro,

How are you? I hope you and your family are well. How was your trip to Korea? I'm sure it was great

Helena and I spent three fantastic weeks in Ireland and had a really great time. We flew to Dublin, the capital, and spent a week there. It's a beautiful city We went sightseeing every day and saw all the old buildings. Then in the evenings, we went out and enjoyed the nightlife. It's a fun city! You'd love it.

After that, we rented a car and spent two weeks driving round the country. It's really beautiful! I was worried about the weather, but it didn't rain once. We stayed in little bed and breakfasts and met some really lovely people.

My favourite place was the west of the country. We went walking in the mountains in County Mayo for a few days. It was lovely and quiet. On the first day we didn't see anyone else - we only saw sheep!

Anyway, now we're back in Copenhagen and back at work! How was your summer? Did you go on holiday anywhere? Did you have a good time?

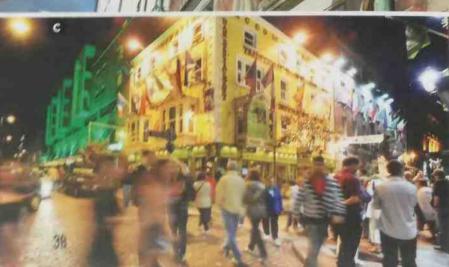
Please write and tell me everything! Or why not come and visit us? There are some cheap flights in September and the weather is still OK.

Your friend.

Nicklas









Read ques

> 1 W 2 Di

3 H 4 W.

5 W 6 D

Com spac

1 W

2 W

3 It's 4 I v

5 M

6 W 7 Oi

8 H

9 Di 10 Th

# SPEAK

Worl your · to

to

to to

for for

#### GRAM

Past: For the How wo How Ion For othe

Use t you c

Where o Did you

1 you any

2 wh

5 hov

- Read the email again and answer these questions.
  - 1 Where did Nicklas go?
  - 2 Did he go on his own?
  - 3 How long was he there for?
  - 4 Was the weather good?
  - 5 What did he do there?
  - a Do you think it was a good holiday? Why? / Why not?
- complete the sentences with one word in each space. Look at the email if you need help.
  - 1 We to Dublin
  - 2 We a week there.
  - 3 It's a city
  - about the weather, but it didn't rain # I was
  - 5 My place was the west of the country.
  - in the mountains.
  - 7 On the first day we didn't see
  - 8 How your summer?
  - 9 Did you go on holiday
  - 10 There are some cheap \_\_\_\_\_ in September.

#### SPEAKING

- 6 Work in pairs. Tell each other the best place in your area / country:
  - · to go sightseeing.
  - · to go walking
  - · to go swimming.
  - · to spend a week relaxing
  - · for nightlife.
  - · for driving around.

#### GRAMMAR

#### Past simple questions

For the verb be, make questions with was I were

How was your summer?

How long were you there for?

For other yerbs, use did.

Where did you go?

Did you have a good time?

Use the notes below. Write past simple questions you could use to ask a friend about their holiday.

6 where / stay?

7 it very expensive?

8 the weather good?

9 the food good?

- 1 you / go on hollday anywhere?
- 2 where / go?
- 3 who / go with?
- 4 have a good time?
- 5 how long / there for?

#### PRONUNCIATION

- Listen to did you first fast, then slow. Then listen to the did you questions from Exercise 7 - first fast and then slow. Repeat them.
  - 1 Did you go on holiday anywhere?
  - 2 Where did you go?
  - 3 Who did you go with?
  - 4 Did you have a good time?
  - 5 Where did you stay?
- Match the answers a-i to the questions (1-9) in Exercise 7
  - a Yes, I did. It's a great country.
  - b Yes, great. They eat lots of fruit, lots of rice. It's lovely.
  - c I staved with friends in Rio and then in a hotel.
  - d Yes, I did. I went to Brazil.
  - e Two weeks.
  - I went on my own
  - g. No, not really. Most things are quite cheap there
  - h Rio de Janeiro and Salvador in the east.
  - I It was great, yes. Really hot and sunny.
- For further practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 173.

#### SPEAKING

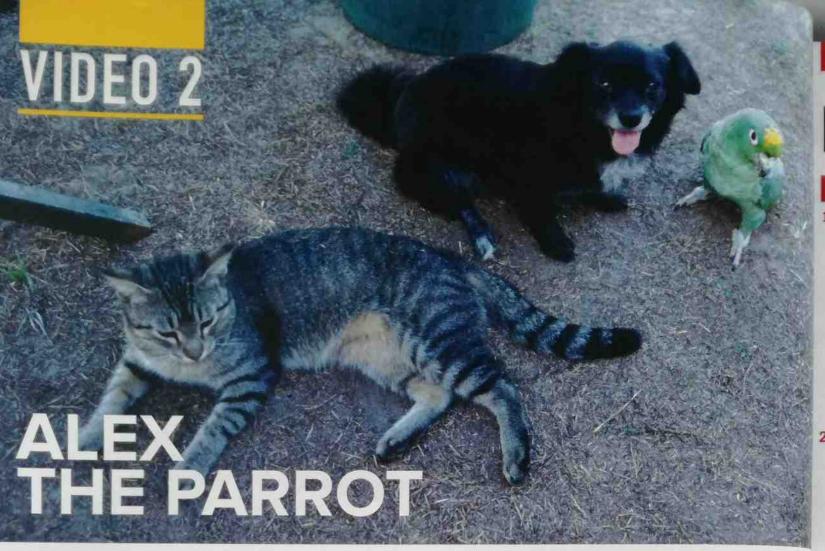
- 10 Choose one of these things to talk about.
  - · last weekend
  - · the last public holiday
  - · the last time you went on holiday
  - · your last birthday
  - · a special day in your life
- Write five past simple questions for your partner to ask you about your day / weekend / holiday.
- Work in pairs. Swap questions and interview each other.

#### SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- Listen and repeat the sounds with /d/, /t/. /m/ and /n/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using the words below. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

rented time drove missed mountains spent warm June

For further revision, see Exercises 1-3 on page 173.



- Look at the photo. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - · Which is the dog, the cat and the parrot?
  - For each animal, give a mark 0-5 in each row of the table below.
  - Which do you think is the best pet / animal?

	Dog	Cat	Parrot
intelligent			
clean			
friendly			
boring			
beautiful			
easy to keep			

- Watch the video about cognitive biologist Irene Pepperberg and the project and tests she does with a parrot called Alex. Which one of the sentences below best explains what the project shows?
  - 1 Parrots are the best pets for children.
  - 2 Parrots are more intelligent than cats.
  - 3 Parrots can repeat sounds but they don't understand the meaning of words.
  - 4 Parrots can show they understand size and colour.
  - 5 Parrots can do the same maths as a five-year-old human.

Complete the summary of the video wit 3 these words. Then watch the video and check

love

died

abilities

African	different	many	words
Irene Peppe	erberg worked	with an 1	grey
parrot calle	d Alex. Alex am	azed scienti	sts because h
understood	words. He cou	ld answer qu	uestions like H
	? What colour?		
3	? What colour's	bigger? Who	at colour's
	? This showed		
	ve-year-old hu		
	lult parrots can		
	in 2007. He lea		
	nd his last ones		
Work in g	roups. Tell th	e people in	your group

4 about someone you know who has / had a pel The others ask these questions to find out mor

Do you like it?	Did you like it?
What's its name?	What was its name?
How big is it?	How big was it?
Where does (s)he keep it?	Where did they keep it?
How old is it?	How old was it when it die!

# UNDERSTANDING FAST SPEECH

Read and listen to this extract from the video said fast, then slow. Stressed sounds are CAPITALS.

ALex was ABle to idENtify an OBject MANy WAYS COlour, SIZE, and SO on.

You try! Practise saying the extract with the same stressed sounds.

_	_	•	•		
ATTACK TO	_	n		<i>n</i> .	
	ю.		·		w

- Choose t
  - 1 There's
- 2 Our hor
- 3 Simon's
- 4 Can you
- 5 I'm sorr 6 Did you
- 7 They w
- 8 My hou
- betwee Complete

the verbs We 1\_

days there After that, we 5

Rewrite t questions

- 1 I can co
- 2 There's
- 3 The hot
- 4 He had
- 5 Lunders
- 6 I can he

Write full Use the w

B: Yes, it w

B: I went to A: That's n

B: Leeds. V

B: Othello.

A: 5 B: I liked it,

31 List word in ea etc.) are o

own.

3

# REVIEW 2

## GRAMMAR

- Choose the correct option.
  - 1 There's a café on / in the corner of this road.
  - 2 Our house is in front / next to a school.
  - 3 Simon's / Simon parents live on this road.
  - 4 Can you give he / him the keys?
  - 5 I'm sorry, I can't / can see the board.
  - 6 Did you went / go out last night?
  - 7 They were / was both ill at the weekend.
  - 8 My house is at / in the end of this road, opposite / between the church.
- Complete the text with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

We 1	(have	(have) a great holiday in Greece. We			
2	(fly) to Ath	nens and 3	(spend) three		
days there	and 4	(see) all t	he famous sights.		
After that,	we 5	(take) a bo	at to Mykonos and		
we 6	(stay)	in a small hotel	near the beach.		

- Rewrite the sentences as negatives (-) or questions (?).
  - 1 I can come to the next class. (-)
  - 2 There's a supermarket near here. (?)
  - 3 The hotel was very good. (-)
  - 4 He had a nice time. (?)
  - 5 Lunderstood everything. (-)
  - 6 I can help you later. (?)
- Write full questions to complete the dialogue. Use the words in brackets.

14 4	Sec. 10.	70		CONTRACTOR TO SAIL
Act	2 (1	NOGE	WICKEN	kend)

- B: Yes, it was great.
- A: 2 ? (do)
- B: I went to stay with my brother.
- A: That's nice, 3 ? (live)
- B: Leeds. We went to the theatre on Saturday night.
- A: 4\_\_\_\_\_? (see)
- B: Othello.
- A: \*\_\_\_\_\_? (good)
- B: I liked it, but my brother didn't.
- Listen and complete the sentences with one word in each space. Contractions (I'm, don't, etc.) are one word.

1.		_bank's		road
			_right.	
2.		think	lives	
- 1	SWIS.			
3.			turn	up?
		hear it.		

4	long	you	?
5	There	knew	
6	I'm sorry.	hear	

Work in pairs. Compare your ideas. Listen again to check.

#### VOCABULARY

Replace the adjectives in italics in 1-6 with their opposites in a-f.

1 Do you have any dirty clothes?	a bad
2 It's very hot in here.	b cold
3 That sounds great.	c nice
4 It was clear and sunny.	d wet
5 Is that towel dry?	e clean

Put the words into three groups - local facilities, home or time of year.

6 People were very unfriendly.

apartment	chemist's	March	sofa
autumn	cupboard	October	spring
balcony	fridge	post office	sports centre
bookshop	kitchen	sink	winter

f cloudy

Match the verbs in the box to the groups of words they go with in 1-8.

cut	send	share	turn down
get	set	show	wash

- 1 ~ a flat with a friend / ~ a pizza / ~ your ideas
- 2 ~ an email / ~ a package / ~ a message
- 3 ~ some money / ~ dressed / ~ back home
- 4 ~ the table / ~ your alarm clock / ~ a rule
- 5 ~ the vegetables / ~ yourself / ~ it with scissors
- 6 ~ your hair / ~ your hands / ~ the plates
- 7 ~ the air-conditioning / ~ the TV / ~ the temperature
- 8 ~ me on the map / ~ us round town / ~ him what to
- 10 Complete the text with the words in the box.

		rents sightseeing		visited watched
My broth	er now live	s in Rome and	111	him in
the sumn	ner. He <sup>2</sup>	a sma	ll flat in th	e centre
of town, s	so it was gr	eat to go 3	an	id enjoy
		And his flat i		
		nere was a nic		
his balco	ny. That wa	as all good, bu	t sometim	es my
		me. The		
		ed it, but he di		
made dir	iner and he	e just <sup>8</sup>	_ on the	sofa and
		le also sings 10		
		ing – very bad		
		ippy to leave!		











#### IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · describe what you want
- · talk to a shop assistant
- · understand prices
- talk about department stores
- talk about things happening now
- give excuses
- · follow directions in a store

#### **WORDS FOR UNIT 5**

1 Work in pairs. Match the words and phrases to the photos.

a bar on the top floor business is growing the cheese section choose a cake fruit and vegetables go up the escalator have a sale look round the market a man with a brown jumper the menswear department queue to pay steal some jeans take the lift a young woman with a blue top a woman with a green dress a woman with a leather jacket work in a bakery

- 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- 3 Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

Student A: point to a photo.

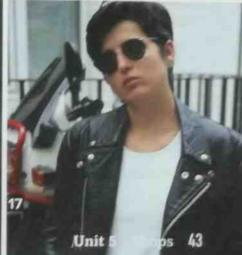
Student B: say the words.

What other colours can you see in the photos? What other clothes can you see?









# HOW MUCH IS THAT RED ONE?

#### **DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

#### Questions in shops

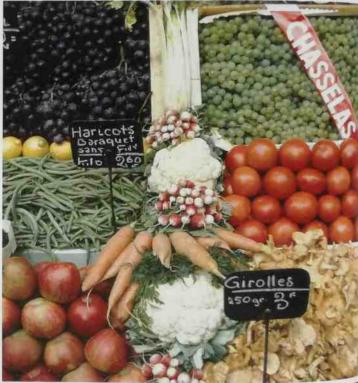
Learning common questions for particular situations will help you understand and have conversations.

- Who usually asks each question 1-8: shop assistants (A) or customers (C)?
  - 1 Who's next?
  - 2 What are those made of?
  - 3 How much are the apples?
  - 4 Can I have some ...?
  - 5 Which one(s)?
  - 6 How much would you like?
  - 7 How many would you like?
  - 8 Anything else?
- Match the questions (1-8) in Exercise 1 to the pairs of possible answers (a-h).

а	A:
	B: Sure. How much?
	Of course. How many do you want?

- b A:\_
  - B: 50p each. One forty-nine a kilo.
- c A:\_
- B: Me.
  - This lady, I think.
- d A:
  - B: That much. Half a kilo.
- e A: B: Those ones have fish in them and the others have meat.
  - Leather.
- f A:
  - B: No, thanks, that's all. Yeah, can I have some of that, please?
- g A: B: Five or six. Just one.
- h A:\_
  - B: The blue one. The ones next to the apples.
- Spend two minutes remembering one answer for each question in Exercise 1. Then work in pairs.
  - Student A: ask questions.
  - Student B: close your book and give answers.







#### LISTEN

Comp includ

2

Then

PRON ▶ 34

main s

thirty

35 1 numbe

- 2 That's
- 3 Everyt
- 4 Those
- 5 It cost
- 6 Our ar

#### SPEAKI

- Work i
  - how
  - What belov think

a cup o

a flat w

a litre o a meal

How photo

Do yo

#### LISTENING

Listen to three conversations in markets. Complete the table about what the people buy, including number, size, colour, etc.

	Buys		Total cost
1		red	3
	2	peach	nes
2	4	cake	6
	Coffee	cake with 5	
3	3		19

Work in pairs and compare your answers. Then listen again and check.

#### PRONUNCIATION

Listen to these numbers and mark the main stress.

thirteen	fourteen	sixteen	
thirty	forty	sixty	

Listen to the sentences and write the numbers you hear.

- 4	Theres	- manageth -
	Inacs.e.	exactly.

- 2 That's \$\_\_\_\_\_ altogether.
- 3 Everything is reduced by \_\_\_\_

4 Those are \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment, reduced from

5 It costs £

6 Our apartment cost when we bought it.

new.

#### SPEAKING

- 8 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - . How important is the price of things? Do you know how much things cost?
  - · What do you think is the average price of the things below where you live? What's the maximum you think it's OK to pay for them?

a cup of coffee

a flat with two bedrooms

midle of bananas

a litre of petrol

a meal for two in a restaurant.

- a new car
- a nice pair of shoes
- a pair of jeans
- a piece of cake in a café
- · How much would you pay for the things in the photos on page 44?
- Do you ever negotiate the price for things? What things? Are you good at it?

#### GRAMMAR this I these I that I those

Match the sentences (1-4) to the pictures (a-d).



- 1. I like these ones.
- 2 This apple is nice.
- 3 Those jeans are expensive.
- 4 That cake looks good.

#### Check your ideas on page 174 and do Exercise 1.

Complete the sentences with one word in each space.

1	A: What	this called	in	English?

B: A shirt.

2 A: What do you call \_\_\_ \_ things on your table?

B: They're coins.

3 A: How much \_\_\_\_\_ those jackets?

B: What? These leather \_\_\_\_\_?

A: Yes.

B: Well, it depends. brown one's £100.

Work in groups. Ask each other the name in English for different things in the classroom. Use these questions.

- · What's this called?
- · What's that thing there called?
- What are these / those things called?

1		
а	For further practice, see Exercise	The state of the s
ч	FOR JURIDER DESCRICE, see Exercise	e 2 on maps 174
æ	The state of the s	and the same of th

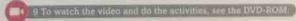
#### CONVERSATION PRACTICE

Work in pairs. Have similar conversations to the ones in the listening. Choose a shop from the photos on page 44.

Student A: you are the shop assistant. Hold your book open for Student B to see.

Student B: you are the customer. Buy two different things in the photo. Try to negotiate the price! Use as much of the language from this page as you can.

Choose a different picture. Change roles and have another conversation.



# THEY'RE HAVING A SALE

#### READING

- 1 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - How often do you go shopping? How often do you buy things online? Which do you prefer?
  - Do you usually wait for shops to have a sale before you buy things? Why? / Why not?
  - Where was the last sale you went to? Did you buy anything?
  - Tell a partner about a time you got a bargain. Use sentences like these.

I bought a coat for the winter. It was €60, reduced from 100.

I bought a mountain bike. It was reduced by 50%.

I bought my car for €2,000! I bought it from a friend.

- · Who in your group got the best bargain?
- Work in groups of four: two As and two Bs. Read about two shops that are having sales.

Student As: read about Emily.

Student Bs: read about Dalena.

Answer these questions for your text.

- 1 Where is she from?
- 2 What does she do?
- 3 Where does she work?
- 4 Why is the shop having a sale?
- 5 How's she feeling? Why?

town. It's a good job.

- 6 What does she want to do in the future?
- 3 Compare answers with the person in your group who read the same text.
- 4 Now work in pairs: one Student A and one Student B. Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 2 to find out about your partner's text.
- Work with the same partner. Complete the sentences with the words in bold from the texts. Put one word in each space.

1	My granddad had h when he	nis own business, but he sold it
2	My dad works very	He has three jobs!
3	It's that s town.	small shops are closing in our
4		ew office because the business we need more space.
5	In the future, I want	to start my own business and noney!
6	There are lots of _	to find a good job here.
	How can I	

\_ the toy section in a department store in

#### SPEAKING

- 6 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions,
  - Do you know any shops that are closing? Do you know why?
  - Are any shops opening where you live? What king shops? Are you happy about it?
  - Do you know anyone who works very hard? What they do?
  - Do you want to be a manager in a company or shin the future? Why? / Why not?
  - Do you want to make lots of money? If yes, how?
     If no, why not?
  - Are there a lot of opportunities for young people your country? Why? / Why not?

#### GRAMMAR

#### Present continuous

Look at these sentences from the texts.

I'm looking for a job at the moment.

We're having a sale because we're closing the shop.

The store opened last year and it's doing very well.

The present continuous uses a form of be + -ing. We use the present continuous to talk about present actions or situations that are temporary and not finished.

W

be

W

th

SØ

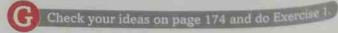
m

7	Complete	the	sentences	with	am /	are / is.

1	The shops in town moment.	having sales at the
2	l working	g very hard at the moment.
3	My mother's not he shopping.	re. She doing the
4	The economy	growing fast at the mor
5	My football team _	doing really well not
6	You real much English when	ly improving. You didn't knew i we first met.
7	Some friends moment.	staying with me at the
8	My brother	studying at university.

#### PRONUNCIATION

- 8 Listen to the present continuous sentences from Exercise 7. Notice how they use the short forms of am / are / is. Listen again and repeat the sentences.
- 9 Look again at sentences 1 and 2 in Exercise
  - 1 What phrase shows the present actions or situally are temporary and not finished?
  - 2 Make a question and a negative from each sent





#### **EMILY. GERMANY**

We're having a sale because we're closing the shop. It's sad, because my grandfather opened it 60 years ago. When I was small, I came here on Saturday mornings and sat and read the children's books.

When my granddad retired, I started to manage the shop. Now there's a sale, so there are lots of people and they're buying lots of books, but we don't normally have so many customers. There are lots of very big bookshops now, which sell every book their customers want. They often have cafés and famous writers come and give talks for them, but we can't do that. And then other people look online to get books cheaper, so we don't really make much money.

I'm looking for a job at the moment, but I don't really know what I want to do in the future. I don't really want to work in another bookshop after I leave here.

#### DALENA, SLOVAKIA

I'm a sales assistant in a big clothes store. The store opened last year and it's doing very well. We're having our summer sale at the moment, so I'm working really hard. The shop is staying open later than normal. We usually close at seven, but during the sale we're open until nine. I'm tired, but I like my job. I like helping people to find nice clothes and, of course, everyone is happy when they find a bargain.

I want to continue working with the company and maybe become a floor manager and then a store manager. I think it's a good place to work, and the business is growing at the moment and opening new stores, so I think there are lots of opportunities. Maybe I can get a job in one of their shops in the UK and improve my English!

- Work in pairs. Which sentences in Exercise 7 are 10 true for you? Change the other sentences so they are true.
- 11 You are at a party or meeting. Write an excuse using the present continuous to explain why each of the people in the box can't come.

your mum and dad your wife or husband Mr Smith (your boss)

Susie (your sister) David (a friend / flatmate) the President!

Now have conversations using your sentences.

For example:

A: Hi. How are you?

B: Fine.

A: Are your mum and dad coming?

B: No. Some friends of theirs are visiting.

For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 175.

# DO YOU SELL ...?

#### **SPEAKING**

- 1 Read the text about the store in the photo. Find out what is unusual about John Lewis.
- 2 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - Do you think it's a good idea to share a company's profits between the workers? Why? / Why not? Do you know any other company that does it?
  - What's the biggest department store where you live?
     Do you ever go there? Why? / Why not? What do you know about the company?
  - · What's your favourite shop? Why?

#### **VOCABULARY** Department stores

3 Label the plan with the words in the box.

an assistant
the basement
the beauty department
the changing rooms
the escalator
the first floor
the ground floor
the lifts

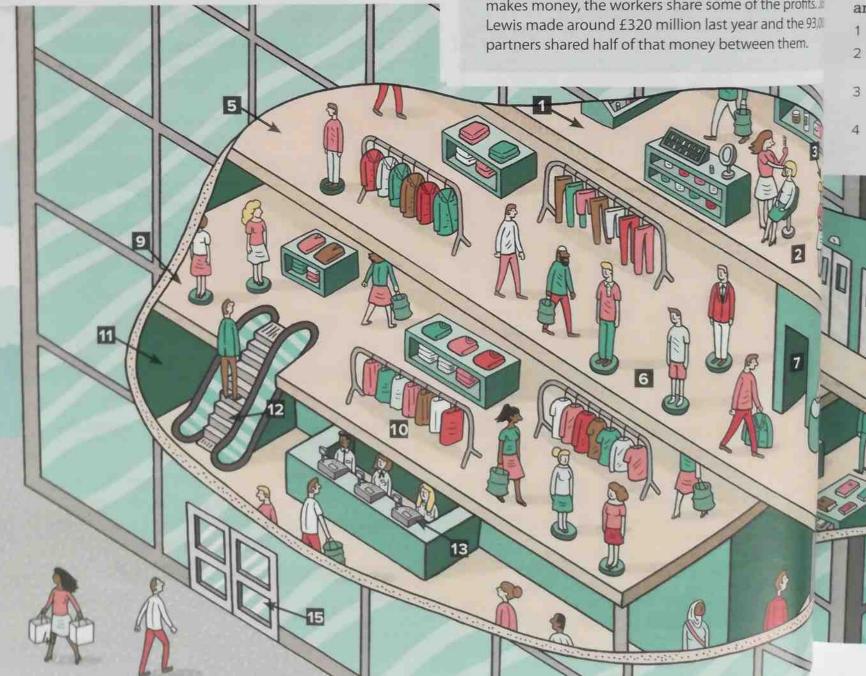
the main entrance the menswear department the second floor the security guard the till the top shelf the womenswear department



John Lewis is the company with the most department stores in the UK. The company started with one shop in Oxford Street, London, in 1864. The store is still there today. It has around 80 sections and sells everything from cheese to baths, and perfume to foreign holiday. After the war, the business grew a lot and it now has 32 department stores, eleven furniture shops, a small fact and a farm. It also owns a supermarket with over 300 shops. John Lewis is an unusual company because all workers are partners in the business – when the company makes money, the workers share some of the profits. It Lewis made around £320 million last year and the 93,00 partners shared half of that money between them.

d

SE



- Work in pairs. Answer these questions using words from Exercise 3.
  - 1 Where do you try clothes on?
  - 2 Where do you ask 'Are you going up?' or say 'Fourth floor, please'?
  - 3 Where do you go in and go out of the store?
  - 4 Which floor do you always go down to?
  - 5 What floor is the main entrance usually on?
  - 6 Where do you queue to pay?
  - 7 Where do you buy trousers and a shirt?
  - 8 Where do you buy a skirt and top?
  - 9 Where do you buy perfume?
  - 10 Who do you ask for information or help?
  - 11 Who stops people stealing things?
  - 12 What do you get off at the top or at the bottom?

#### LISTENING

- 5 Listen to four short conversations in a department store. Match each conversation (1-4) to one of these situations.
  - a Someone is stealing something.
  - b Someone wants to try some clothes on.
  - c Someone is explaining where to meet.
  - d Someone is looking for an item in the wrong place.
- 6 D 37 For each conversation, decide if the sentence is true (T) or false (F). Listen again and check.
  - 1 The man wants some batteries for a toy.
  - 2 The speakers tell a security guard about what they saw.
  - The woman bought some jeans, a skirt and two tops in a sale
  - 4 You can take six items of clothing to the changing room



Choose the correct option in the sentences. Then look at the audio script for Track 37 on page 202 and check your answers.

#### Conversation 1

- 1 Do you sell / Are you selling batteries?
- 2 They're there. On / In the bottom shelf.

#### Conversation 2

- 3 She put that perfume on / in her bag!
- 4 Someone talks / 's talking to her.

#### Conversation 3

- 5 I'm still at / on the bus, but we come down / we're coming down Oxford Street now.
- 6 When you get out / off on the fourth floor, it's behind you. It's at / to the back of the store.

#### Conversation 4

- The changing rooms are over there in I on the corner. Next to / of the Jeans.
- 8 How much / many items can I take to try on?

#### SPEAKING

Imagine you're in a department store. Think of some things you want to buy and complete each sentence in two different ways.

Excuse me. Do you sell ...?

Excuse me. I'm looking for ... .

Now work in pairs. Roleplay conversations between a customer and a shop assistant in a department store. Change roles for each conversation.

Student A: you are the customer. Ask your questions from Exercise 8.

Student B: you are the shop assistant. Look at the plan and the phrases in the box in File 11 on page 196. Give directions to Student A.

#### SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- Listen and repeat the sounds with /ŋ/, /ʃ/, /t J/ and /d3/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using the words in the box. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

cheaper everything choose

improving

jeans manage section shirt

For further revision, see Exercises 1-3 on page 175.







Unit 5











#### IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · describe classmates and teachers
- · name school and university subjects
- · talk about courses you're doing
- · talk about languages and education
- · give opinions about what's better

#### **WORDS FOR UNIT 6**

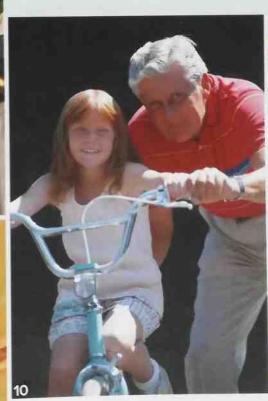
1 Work in pairs. Match the phrases to the photos.

an angry boss a boring class borrow some money cause a problem a creative person help each other a Law student a lazy student learn Arabic learn to ride a bike make clothes a modern university pass the exam police training solve the problem a strange teacher study Engineering teach PE

- 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- 3 Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

Student A: point to a photo.

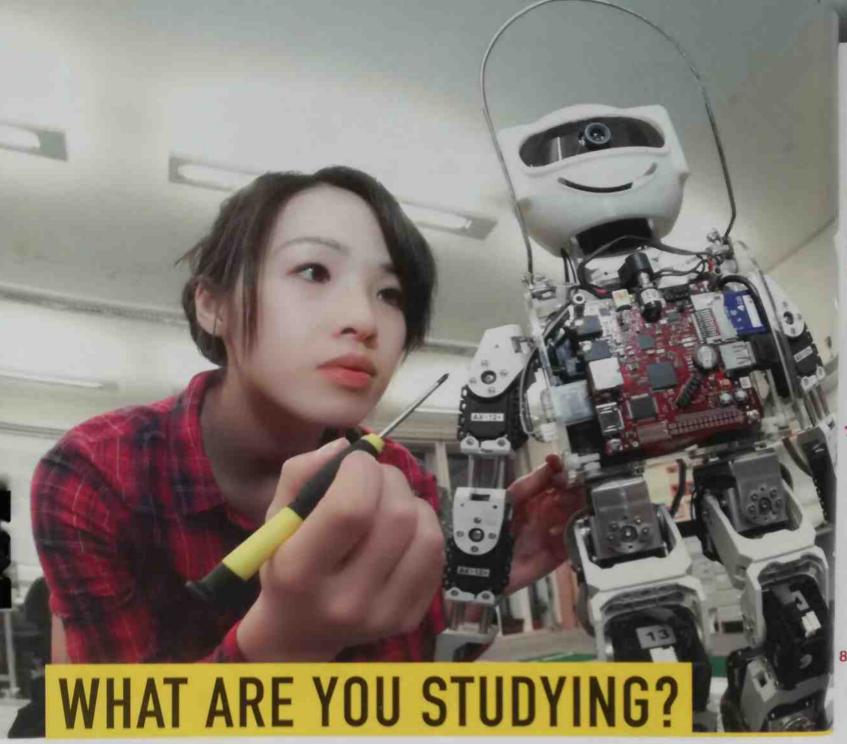
Student B: say the words.







Unit 6 Education 51



## VOCABULARY School and university

1 Match each group of adjectives (1-4) to one of the nouns (a-d).

friendly nice lazy

popular expensive modern 3 interesting boring difficult helpful patient strange

a a course

b a classmate

c a teacher

d a university

2 Work in pairs. Compare your ideas. Then add one more adjective to each group above. 3 Choose three adjectives to describe your school / university / college life. Tell a parts

For example:

Our English teacher is very patient.

My university was very popular – and very expension of the second of the sec

Work in pairs. Look at the subjects below. Answer the questions.

1 Which subjects are arts subjects?

2 Which subjects are science subjects?

3 Which subject(s) do you usually start studying school and which do you usually start at unite

Biology Chemistry Computing Engineering Geography History Law Literature Marketing Maths Medicine PE 5 Wo

.

\* 3

• у

LISTE

stud

2

Conv

2 l'n Conv

1 l'n

4 No

5 lt's 6 Go

3 Worl

• Do mo

• Wh

Wh
 Are

PRO

then are as

42

Work the qu

DEVEL

How's

We can as

A: How's I B: Really V

- Work in groups. Discuss which subjects:
  - . you think are most / least important.
  - . you think are easy / difficult.
  - vou know a lot about.
  - you liked / didn't like at school.

#### LISTENING

Listen to three conversations about studying. Complete the table.

	Subject	Year	How's it going?
1			Really well.
2		2nd	
3			

1 Listen again. Choose the correct option.

#### Conversation 1

- 1 I'm doing I making a degree in Marketing.
- 2 I'm really enjoying / liking it.

#### Conversation 2

- 3 I'm a student at / of university.
- 4 Not very well, actually. I just find it boring I bored.

#### Conversation 3

- 5 It's a lot of work / works!
- 6 Good luck with / for it.
- Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - Do you know anyone at university / college at the moment?
  - What are they studying?
  - What year are they in?
  - · Are they enjoying it?

#### **PRONUNCIATION**

- Listen to eight questions said fast and then slower. Note how we often pronounce are as /ə/. Repeat what you hear.
- Listen again and write what you hear.
- Work in pairs. Take turns to ask and answer 11 the questions.

# **DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

## How's the course going?

We can ask How's the course going? to find out if someone is enjoying their course or not.

A: How's the course going?

B: Really well. It's great. I'm really enjoying it.

- Look at these answers to the question How's the course going? Complete each answer with Really well, OK or Not very well.
  - \_\_\_\_\_, but it's not very easy.
  - \_\_\_\_\_, I find it boring.
  - \_\_\_\_\_. It's very interesting.
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_, but it's a lot of work.
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_\_. I don't really like my teacher. He's strange!
  - \_. The other students are very nice and friendly.
  - . I did very well in my exams. I found them easy:
  - 8 \_\_\_\_\_\_. I think I chose the wrong subject!
  - \_, I suppose, but I'm not sure it's what I really want to do.
- Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - How's your English course going?
  - · What's good about it?
  - · Is there anything you don't like?

#### CONVERSATION PRACTICE

14 Work in pairs. Use the guide below to have four conversations like the ones you heard in Exercise 6. Use different ideas from the table below if you need to, and add a reason for how the course is going. Take turns to start. Try to give different answers each time.

Student A	Student B
So what do you do?	I'm a student at
So what're you studying?	
76	Answer the question.
What year are you in?	Answer the question.
How's the course going?	
	Answer the question and explain why.

Place	Course	Year	How's it going?
University of Rome	Biology	1	Good
Middlesex University	Computing	2	Bad
Le Cordon Bleu, Australia	Hotel Management	3	OK
Harvard	Medicine	4	
Cambridge	Chinese	Final	

10 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM

# LEARNING AND TRAINING

# **VOCABULARY** Courses

- 1 Complete the texts (1-5) by putting the words in brackets in the correct space.
  - 1 I do an art class every Tuesday. The class \_\_\_\_\_ at eight in the evening and \_\_\_\_\_ at ten. We paint anything we want and the teacher \_\_\_\_ us help and advice. (finishes, gives, starts)
  - 2 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a course at the moment. It's for my work, so the company is \_\_\_\_\_ for it. It's about ways to improve sales. It's very useful and I'm \_\_\_\_ a lot. (learning, paying, doing)
  - 3 My brother's \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to become a pilot. The course \_\_\_\_\_\_ three years and it's very difficult. It \_\_\_\_\_\_ about £100,000 altogether. My family's \_\_\_\_\_ the money from the bank to pay for it. I hope he \_\_\_\_\_\_ all his exams! (borrowing, training, passes, lasts, costs)
  - 4 I started learning Russian last year. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to a class on Wednesday evenings. The teacher was very good and patient and I \_\_\_\_\_\_ the class, but I was quite lazy and I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ very much. We \_\_\_\_\_ an exam at the end of the course and I \_\_\_\_\_, so I can't do the next level. (study, had, went, failed, enjoyed)
  - 5 We \_\_\_\_\_ a training session at work every month. The sessions usually \_\_\_\_\_ for about three hours. We do different things. Sometimes a trainer \_\_\_\_\_ from outside the company, sometimes our manager \_\_\_\_\_ us information about changes in the company, sometimes we all \_\_\_\_\_ our ideas about how to improve things. They're often very useful, but occasionally they're very boring. (comes, gives, have, share, last)
- 2 Work in pairs. Use verbs from Exercise 1 to say things about your English class. How many of the verbs can you use?

3 Complete the conversation with the question the box.

How long does the course last? What time does the class start? Do you have any homework? Why are you doing it?

Is it good? What's it about? When are the class How much did it o

C

th

7

A: I'm doing an evening course at the moment

B: 1\_\_\_\_\_

A: Speaking in public.

B: 2\_\_\_\_\_

A: I want to improve my opportunities at work,

B: 3 \_\_\_\_\_

A: Every Monday.

B: 4\_\_\_\_\_

 Yeah. I usually watch some videos online and prepare a talk.

B: 5\_\_\_\_\_

A: Six, and it ends at eight.

B: 6\_\_\_\_\_

A: Ten weeks.

B; 7 \_\_\_\_\_

A: Two hundred pounds.

B: 8 \_\_\_\_\_

- A: Yeah. It's very useful. I'm enjoying it.
- 4 Work in pairs. Practise reading the converse

#### LISTENING

5 Match these words and phrases to the photo.
Think of one more word for each photo.

an online course a horse a training session is







- Listen to four people talking about the courses in the photos. Match the speakers to the photos a-d and decide if all the learning experiences you heard about were good. Then compare your ideas with a partner.
- Listen again. Decide if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

#### Conversation 1

- 1 The course is 6.30 to ten, twice a week.
- 2 She works in fashion now.

#### Conversation 2

- 3 His manager told him to go to the training session.
- 4 He learned how to make good decisions.

#### Conversation 3

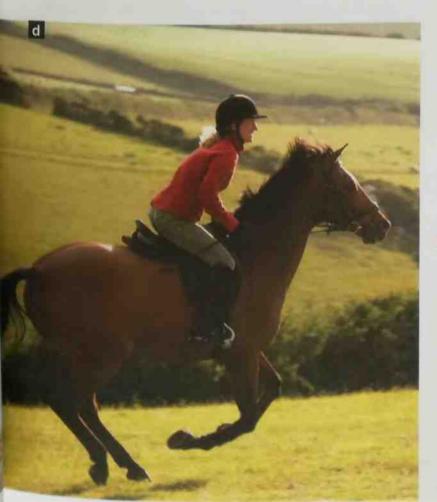
- 5 She always rides twice a week.
- 6 She rode horses when she was younger, but then stopped.

#### Conversation 4

- 7 His wife didn't like the course because there were too many people.
- 8 He wants to become a journalist.
- Complete the sentences from the listening with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1 1	to make clothes. (	learn)
		A COUNTY OF THE PARTY OF

- 2 lt\_ for ten weeks. (last)
- 3 It only \_ \_ about an hour. (last)
- 4 We\_ any choice. (not / have)
- \_ in the countryside and I always wanted \_. (grow up / ride)
- 6 My teacher very patient and I quite good now. (be / get)
- 7 My wife \_ it with me, but she \_ (start / stop)
- taking exams. I always (hate / fail)



#### Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

- · Which of the four courses sounds best to you? Why?
- Do you know anyone who changed jobs? If yes, why did they change?
- Did you have any classes after school when you were a child? If yes, what?
- · What's good / bad about doing open online courses?

#### 10 Work in pairs. Have conversations like the ones in Exercise 3.

Student A: choose one of the courses from this lesson or think about a course you are doing. Tell your partner.

Student B: choose questions from Exercise 3 to ask.

For example:

A: I'm doing a training course at the moment.

B: What's it about?

A: Making decisions.

#### GRAMMAR

#### Modifiers

Very, really and quite are modifiers. They go before adjectives.

Very and really mean 'a lot'.

It's really good.

The teachers are very helpful.

We often make adjectives negative by adding not very.

It wasn't very long - only about an hour.

Quite means 'a little'.

I was quite angry by the end.

It's quite expensive.

#### Choose the correct option. 11

- 1 Some of my classmates aren't very / quite friendly.
- 2 The course is quite / really difficult! I don't understand anything!
- 3 It's a great university. It's very / not very popular.
- 4 She's nice, but she's quite / not very lazy.
- 5 Most of the students are really friendly, but one or two aren't really / very nice.
- 6 It's a good course. It's quite / not very interesting.
- 7 He's a good teacher, but he's not very / quite patient.
- 8 It's a great university, but it's quite / really expensive! I can't study there.

#### Work in groups. Tell each other about things - or people - that you think are:

- a really expensive.
- b very popular at the moment.
- c quite strange.
- d not very modern.
- e quite boring.
- For further practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 175.

# GROWING UP BILINGUAL

#### **VOCABULARY** Languages

Work in pairs. Say a country or area in the world where each of these are official languages.

Russian

- Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - How important is each of these languages in the world:
    - very important?
    - quite important?
    - not very important?
  - · Which of the languages sound nice to you?
  - Do you know any bilingual people? What languages do they speak?

#### READING

caused

Before you read, complete the sentences with the words in the box.

explaining solving creative 1 I'm quite a \_\_ person. I'm good at arts subjects. 2 I'm good at \_ problems. People often ask me for help.

- 3 I'm a very\_ person. I always try and think about good things:
- 4 I'm good at \_\_\_ \_ ideas. I'd be a good teacher.
- 5 I sometimes \_\_\_\_ problems at school and my teacher got angry with me.
- Work in pairs. Discuss which sentences in Exercise 3 are true for you.
- Read the first two paragraphs of the article on page 57. Answer these questions.
  - 1 How many languages do the students at Newbury Park speak altogether?
  - 2 What are some of the languages children learn about?
  - 3 Who teaches the words in these different languages?
  - 4 How many students in England are bilingual?
  - 5 Why do some teachers think it's a problem?
- What do you think of Newbury Park School and the way they teach language? Do you agree with the views in the second paragraph?
- Read the rest of the article. What's the writer's opinion about the questions in Exercise 6? Work in pairs and compare your ideas. Say the reasons the writer gives for their opinion.

- Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - · Did you find any of the ideas surprising? Which in-
  - Do you agree with everything the writer says? If he why not?
  - Do / Did you have people from different countries your school? Where are / were they from?
  - Are there any bilingual schools in your city / region Do you think they are good? Why? / Why not?

#### GRAMMAR

#### Comparatives

They are more creative.

You can compare how good two things are using better than.

Growing up bilingual is better than only knowing one language.

We often then use other comparatives to explain why Bilingual children get higher grades at school

- Choose the best comparative to complete the explanations.
  - 1 Her English is better than mine. She gets higher/ lower grades.
  - 2 This computer is better than mine. My one's slower faster.
  - 3 Mr Platt is a better teacher than Mrs Jones. He's funnier I more boring.
  - 4 I think Biology is better than English. It's more interesting / more difficult.
  - 5 They're better students than me. I'm more helpful! lazier.
- Work in pairs. Discuss what the basic adjective is for each option in Exercise 9. When do we add -er, -ier and more to make comparatives?
  - Check your ideas on page 176 and do Exercise I
- 11 Write sentences using comparatives and the ideas below.
  - 1 I'm / good at / swimming / you.
  - 2 My house is / near to / the school / your place.
  - 3 I'm / tall / you.
  - 4 You're / interested / in history / me.
  - 5 My school was / small / your school.
  - 6 It was / warm / last week / this week.
- Work in pairs. Ask each other questions about the sentences in Exercise 11. Find out who is better at swimming, etc.

For example:

Are you good at swimming?

How for can you swim?



# THE WORLD IN A SCHOOL

Janet Scott finds the benefits of knowing two languages

The students at Newbury Park Primary School in London speak over 40 languages! Each month, a teacher films a student and asks the child to say simple things like hello and thank you in their language. They show the film to the other children in the school to teach them the foreign words. In January and February, the students learned some Turkish and Japanese. This month, they're learning Romanian

In England, one in seven children now speaks a foreign language at home, and some teachers think it's causing problems. They think teaching is more difficult with bilingual children in the class and that bilinguals can't do well in any subject if they don't speak English at home.

It is true that starting school is difficult for some bilingual children. Sometimes, the children had bad experiences before they moved to the UK. Maybe they experienced a war, or a parent died, or they lost their home. Schools can help these children. For example, the students feel more positive about school and their new life if they occasionally do something at school in their first language - like they do at Newbury Park.

But most bilingual children don't have any problems at school. In fact, growing up bilingual is usually better than only knowing one language. Research shows that bilingual children are better at solving problems and they usually finish school with higher grades. That's because they are more creative and they're often better at explaining ideas. That's good news, because 70% of the world's population speak two or more languages!

#### SPEAKING

Choose five things from the box. Decide if they are better or worse now than before. Spend two minutes thinking of one or two reasons why. Use a dictionary if you need to.

the economy	parents	transport
exams	schools	universities
hospitals	sport	the weather
old people	teachers	young people

Work in groups. Say your ideas. What do the other people in your group think?

#### SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- Listen and repeat the sounds with /e/, /o/, /5:/ and /5:/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- ■45 Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using these words. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

learned causes education spent friendly work course popular

For further revision, see Exercises 1–3 on page 176.



- 1 Look at the photo of a refugee camp. Discuss these questions.
  - Why do you think the different people in the photo are there?
  - What things can help refugees in this situation?
  - Are there any refugees in your country? Where are they from?
- Watch the first part of the video (0.00-2.15) about a special course. Answer these questions.
  - 1 Who are the teachers? Who do they work for?
  - 2 Who are the students? Where are they from? Where do they live now?
  - 3 What is the course for?
- 3 Read the sentences (1-4) from the second part of the video. Match them to the follow-up sentences (a-d).
  - 1 Life is difficult in the refugee camp.
  - 2 Photo camp is an inspiration for many of the camp's residents.
  - 3 Near the end of the programme, the students have an exhibition.
  - 4 These students received more than a certificate and a new skill at photo camp.
  - a. They are excited to show their work
  - Agonzi Grace, for example, wants to become a professional photographer.

- c They also learnt how to document their world.
- d But Reza and the other photographers are showing these young adults how to see their temporary hos in a new way.
- 4 Watch the second part of the video (2.16-3.50). Put the pairs of sentences in Exercise 3 in the order you hear them.
- 5 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - Do you think the course is a good idea? Why? / Why not?
  - Do you like taking photos? Are you good at it?
  - Do you have any photos on your phone that you like?
- 6 Work in groups. Show some photos you like to each other. Ask each other questions like these
  - · Where was that?
- · What are they doing
- · When did you take it?
- · Who's that?

## UNDERSTANDING FAST SPEECH

7 Read and listen to this extract from the video said fast, then slow. Stressed sounds are in CAPITALS.

THEY are TEACHing SIXty YOUNG REfuGEES HOW TO tell the STOries of their LIVES in PHOtographs:

8 You try! Practise saying the extract with the same stressed sounds.

# REVIEW 3

# GRAMMAR

- Choose the correct option.
  - 1 A: Can you pass me that I those cups over there?
    - B: Sure. Here.
  - 2 A: You are / Are you waiting to pay?
    - B: No. Go ahead.
  - 3 A: How was the exam?
    - B: Bad! It was more difficult / difficulter than last year.
  - 4 A: Hello. Can I speak to Greg, please?
    - B: Sorry, he does I he's doing his homework.
  - 5 A: Did you enjoy the film?
    - B: It was quite / very good, but not great.
  - 6 A: Do you like this dress?
    - B: I prefer the blue one / ones that you tried on before. And it was more cheap / cheaper!
  - 7 A: Do you want to try some of this / that soup?
    - B: Oh, it's nice. It's more good / better than my one.
- Write full questions to complete the dialogue. Use the words in brackets.
  - \_? (do)
  - B: I'm at university.
  - A: Oh, right. 2\_\_\_\_\_? (studying)
  - B: Business Management.
  - A: 3\_\_\_\_\_? (going)
  - B: Great. I'm really enjoying it. I really like Marketing.
  - \_\_\_\_\_? (What year)
  - B: My second year. I have two more years after this.
  - A: So 5 \_\_\_\_\_ Business Management? (doing)
  - B: My parents want me to manage their factory.
- Complete the sentences with one word in each space. Contractions (he's, don't, etc.) are one word.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ working at the moment. 1 I lost my job. I'm \_\_\_
  - 2 I can't help you now. \_\_\_\_\_ doing my homework.
  - 3 What \_\_\_\_ all those people looking at?
  - 4 Do you have a coat? \_\_\_\_\_ raining outside.
  - 5 I love \_\_\_\_\_ shoes. They're \_\_\_\_\_ nice.
  - 6 A: I can't do \_\_\_\_\_ exercise. Can you help me?
    - \_\_ difficult. B: Sure. It is a \_\_
- Listen and complete the sentences with one word in each space. Contractions (I'm, don't, etc.) are one word.

1 son's Law univers
---------------------

- to \_\_\_\_\_ a horse moment.
- 3 Excuse me.
- \_\_\_\_ changing rooms. \_my classmates \_\_ \_\_\_\_\_friendly.

- English \_\_ mine.
- 6 \_\_\_ warmer last

## VOCABULARY

Match the verbs in the box to the groups of words they go with in 1-8.

borrow	go up	leave	lasted	
give	improve	look for	pay	

- 1 ~ your dictionary / ~ the money / ~ a pen
- 2 ~ sales / ~ my grades / ~ my English
- 3 ~ your opinion / ~ us information / ~ me some advice
- 4 ~ my job / ~ school / ~ home
- 5 ~ my keys / ~ the toy section / ~ a new flat
- 6 ~ at the till / ~ for my course / queue to ~
- 7 ~ a long time / ~ two years / ~ about four hours
- 8 ~ the escalator / ~ the stairs / ~ the mountain
- Put the words into three groups shops, study or clothes.

bakery	fail	leather	shirt
Chinese	History	red top	subject
Engineering	jeans	security guard	training
entrance	jumper	shelf	vegetables

- Choose the best option.
  - 1 Lots of people do it. It's very popular / helpful / special.
  - 2 She's 1.84 m. She's quite high / slow / tall.
  - 3 It's an interesting course, but it's quite friendly / difficult / boring.
  - 4 Our teacher's nice. He's very lazy / patient / hard.
  - 5 I like art. I'm quite important / average / creative.
  - 6 His cat died. It was really sad / warm / modern.
  - 7 I found a bargain. I was very strange / happy / young.
  - 8 I feel a bit easy / strange / stupid because I failed the exam.
- Complete the text with the words in the box.

assistant	ground	section	took
came out	perfume	size	
experience	sale	store	

I went to a big dep	artment 1	to buy	y a dress
for my wife. I went	to the womens	swear 2	
and found a really	nice dress in th	ne <sup>3</sup>	It was
reduced by \$100,			
I asked the 5			
one they had. I ded			
instead. 17			
it stopped between			
ill and when I 9			
10			











#### IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · talk about your family
- · express surprise
- · give opinions about family life
- · talk about things that are necessary or not necessary
- · talk about people you know

#### **WORDS FOR UNIT 7**

1 Work in pairs. Match the words and phrases to the photos.

clever dead do some housework do the washing feed the dog funny husband look after children male and female nursery school old friends

repair a car strict surprised very fit a wedding

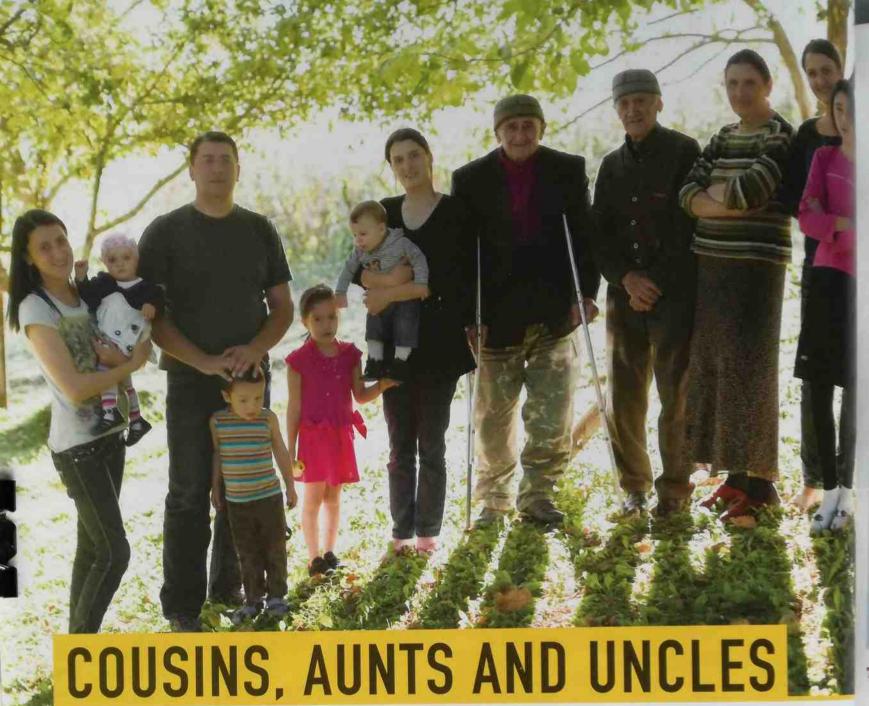
- 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- 3 Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.
  Student A: point to a photo.
  Student B: say the words.











# **VOCABULARY** Relationships

1 Complete the table with the words in the box.

daughter	grandmother	mum	uncle	
girlfriend	husband	sister		

Male	Female
grandfather	
	wife
dad	
son	
	aunt
boyfriend	
brother	
C	ousin

# 2 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 1.

1 Pat is my uncle. He's my mum's

alive. She's 88!

2	Clare is my daughter.	She's	my aunt Stellas
3	Larry is my cousin. He	e's my u	ncle Matthew's
4	Tina's my younger than her.		, I'm two years <sup>old</sup>
5	Mel is my brother's _ months ago.		They met a few
6	My mum's now, and so is my da	and d's dad,	but my

3

۸ ۲ ۲

LIST

6

GR

We de answard A: L

B:

1

3

4

5

6

7

Wo

but For A: D



Work in pairs. Look at the photo. Say who you think the people are.

For example:

I think she's the wife of this man here, and probably the mother of these two here.

Maybe these three are sisters - or cousins.

Write the names of six people in your family. Then tell your partner who they are.

#### LISTENING

- Listen to three conversations about families. Which relations from Exercise 1 do. they mention?
- 18 Listen again. What do you learn about the family members?

#### GRAMMAR

## Auxiliary verbs

We often use just auxiliary verbs (e.g. be, do, can) to answer questions. We don't need to repeat the main verb and / or words that follow it.

- A: Did you go out yesterday?
- B: Yeah, I did go out.
- A: So, are you married, Ted?
- B: Yes, I am married.

B: Yes, he \_

Complete the answers in these short dialogues with the correct auxiliary verbs.

1	A: Do you have any brothers or sisters?
	B: Yeah, I
2	A: Is he married?

3 A: Does she have a boyfriend?

B: Yes, she \_

4 A: Do your children still live with you at home?

B: My son does, yes, but my daughter

5 A: Are you very similar?

B: Yes, we\_

6 A: Are your grandparents still alive?

B: My mum's parents are, yes, but my dad's

7 A: Did you do anything nice at the weekend?

B: Yes, 1\_

8 A: Did it rain?

B: No, it\_

Work in pairs. Take turns reading the questions, but this time give opposite answers.

For example:

A: Do you have any brothers or sisters?

B: No. I don't.

For further practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 177.

#### **DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

#### Adding information

In conversations, we don't normally just give short answers to questions. We try to add comments.

- Match the extra comments to the questions and short answers in Exercise 7.
  - a Luckily! It was a bit cloudy, but it stayed dry.
  - b My grandfather had his 80th birthday party.
  - c A younger brother.
  - d They died a few years ago.
  - e She's studying in the United States.
  - f We're sisters, but we're best friends too.
  - g. The wedding was last month, actually.
  - h He's a really nice guy. I like him.
- Work in pairs. Practise the conversations in Exercise 7, adding the comments above.
- Write short answers to these questions and then add comments. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs.
  - 1 Do you live near here?
  - 2 Do you have any aunts or uncles?
  - 3 Are you married?
  - 4 Did you go anywhere during the holidays?

#### PRONUNCIATION

We often say Really? to show surprise / interest. The intonation goes up high and then down.



- Listen and repeat Really? three times. 12
- Work in pairs. Listen to six sentences. After each sentence, say Really? if the information is surprising or interesting. If it's not, say Oh, OK.

#### CONVERSATION PRACTICE

Write five questions about families to ask other students in your class. Use ideas from these pages.

For example:

Do you have any brothers or sisters?

Are they older or younger than you?

Ask your questions to different people in your class. Add comments when you answer their questions. Say Really? when you hear interesting or surprising things. Ask extra connected questions if you want to.

13 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.

# I HAVE TO DO A LOT OF HOUSEWORK

# VOCABULARY

Jobs and activities in the home

- Work in pairs. Which jobs and activities can you see in the photos?
- Match 1-5 to a-e, and 6-10 to f-j.
  - 1 look after a the washing 2 tell b songs together 3 sing c my baby brother 4 repair d jokes to each other 5 do e the roof
  - 6 feed f my daughter from school 7 pick up g a story at bedtime 8 play h the dishwasher
  - 9 empty the dog
  - 10 read j games together
- Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - · Which of the jobs and activities in Exercise 2 do you do? How often?
  - Which do you enjoy doing? Which don't you like doing? Why?
  - · Which do you think are essential?

#### **SPEAKING**

Work in pairs. Read the introduction to a discussion board on a website. Discuss the three questions at the end.



# **DEBATE OF THE WEEK: WORKING PARENTS**

Family life is changing. In the past, women stayed at home and looked after the children. They did all the housework, and men earned money and maybe repaired a few things in the house. Now, both parents often have full-time jobs. Who does all the housework? How does both parents working affect the kids and family life? Is it a good thing?

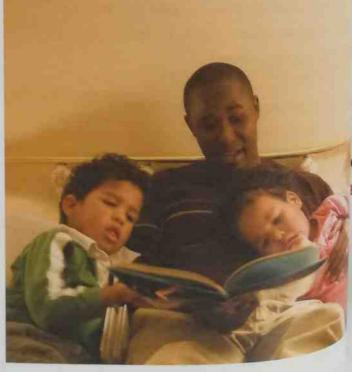
#### READING

Read the comments on the message board. Who is writing each comment? Match each name to one of the people below. There is one person you do not need.

a grandmother	_ a mother	
a father	a daughter	
a nanny	_ an uncle	
a son		







Read th thinks h bad thin

Work in wrote o

### GRAMM

- Look at sentence
  - We hav empty
  - 2 My son a week
  - 3 My frier
  - 4 I'm hapi home a

# MESSAGE BOARD

Bertha, Canada My son Travis brings the kids to my house three days a week - when he has to work. They're a bit difficult sometimes, but I love being with them. We sing songs and play games. I also think my son's wife Clara is really great. I'm happy that she has a job and doesn't have to stay at home all the time. She has a very full life. 6 hours ago Like

José, Chile I'm happy both my parents work because they can buy me nice things. 5 hours ago Like

Sophie, Germany We have a dishwasher and I have to fill it and empty it. Mum and Dad say they don't have time. It's not fair! My friends don't have to do jobs in the home. Their parents do them or they have a cleaner! 5 hours ago Like

Hannah, Australia I recently started work again after I had my baby, Lianna. My husband takes her to nursery school at nine and I pick her up at five. I then have to do housework and feed Lianna. I also have to get up at night if she wakes up. It's difficult, but I still want to work. I love my lob and I feel like I'm doing something important for society.

3 hours ago Like

Roberto, Italy I think it's better to have one parent at home, but it doesn't have to be the woman. My wife had a better job than me, so I left my job to stay with our kids.

2 hours ago Like

David, England Of course both parents want to work. Send your kids to live in a private school. My brother does that and everyone's happy. The kids always have friends and get a good education. The family spends the holidays together.

1 hours ago Like

- Read the comments again. Decide if each person thinks both parents working is a good thing, a bad thing, or both good and bad.
- Work in pairs. Say if you like what each person wrote or not.

# GRAMMAR have to I don't have to

Look at the comments again. Complete the sentences with the missing words.

1 11	We have a dishwasher	and I fill it and	5)
	empty it.		

- 2 My son Travis brings the kids to my house three days a week – when he \_\_\_\_\_ work.
- \_\_\_\_ do jobs in the home. 3 My friends \_
- 4 I'm happy that she has a job and \_\_\_\_\_ stay at home all the time.

Complete the explanation in the box by choosing the correct option.

Have to and has to + infinitive show it's 'necessary / not necessary to do something.

Don't have to and doesn't have to + infinitive show it's <sup>2</sup>necessary / not necessary to do something.

Check your ideas on page 177 and do Exercise 1.

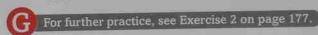
#### Complete the sentences with the correct form of have to or don't have to.

1	We really	_ do some snopping. we don't
	have any food.	
2	The evem's ency	you study very hard

- to pass it. work today, so we can go out
- somewhere, if you want. 4 She can't play today. She \_\_\_\_\_ finish her homework.
- 5 We have lots of time. We \_\_\_\_\_ leave now.
- \_ look after his 6 He can't come today. He \_\_\_\_\_ sister.
- go to bed now?
- he \_\_\_\_\_ be there? 8 What time \_\_\_\_

## 11 Work in groups. Say things you have to do:

- at home.
- at work / school.
- this week.



#### SPEAKING

- 12 On your own, decide if it is good, bad or doesn't matter:
  - · if both parents have to work.
  - · If kids have to do lots of homework.
  - if kids don't have to do jobs in the home.
  - if kids watch TV.
  - if families eat together.
  - · if parents set lots of rules for children.
  - · if parents send their kids to bed at eight o'clock.
  - · if parents don't go out on their own.

#### Work in pairs. Take turns saying your ideas. Reply using I agree, I don't agree or it depends.

For example:

A: It doesn't matter if both parents have to work.

- B: It depends. Sometimes it's OK, but sometimes it's a problem.
- Write two more opinions you have about family life. Work in groups and tell each other your ideas. Do you all agree?

# MY CIRCLE OF FRIENDS

#### SPEAKING

- 1 Read the text on page 67. Then discuss these questions in groups.
  - · Which kind of friend is most / least important? Why?
  - What do you talk about with each kind of friend?
  - · Which kind of friend do you meet / talk to the most?
  - What other different kinds of friends can you think of?

#### LISTENING

- 2 Listen to four people talking about friends. Match the descriptions (1-4) to the different kinds of friends in the text.
- 3 Listen again. Correct two mistakes in each summary.
  - He met Johan at university. Johan lives in New York now. He's a doctor.
  - 2 Her husband studies with Miguel. She doesn't get on well with Miguel Miguel is 21.
  - 3 He's a student. He met Claire when he was on holiday. Claire wants to come to England.
  - 4 Liu is her grandmother. Liu is stupid. She lives in Shanghai.
- 4 Match the verbs (1-6) with the words they went with in the listening (a-f).

1 share

a stupid things

2 go

b face-to-face

3 say

c college

4 meet

d me feel good

5 leave

e a house

- 6 make
- f to parties
- 5 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - Do you know people who share a house? Do they like it?
  - · What's a good age to stop going to parties all night?
  - Do you know anyone who says stupid things? What kinds of things do they say?
  - · Who / What usually makes you feel good?

#### **VOCABULARY** Describing people

6 Work in pairs. Which of the adjectives in the box do you think are positive? Which do you think are negative? Why?

clever	fit	loud	reliable	
confident	funny	quiet	strict	

7	Complete the	sentences with	the	adjectives
	Exercise 6.			

1 She's a very \_\_\_\_\_ woman. She always how me laugh.

2 He's really \_\_\_\_ He goes running every sand plays basketball twice a week as well

3 He's quite \_\_\_\_\_ He doesn't say very muse

4 She's very \_\_\_\_\_ She's an engineer she so five languages and she's very good with company

5 He's very \_\_\_\_\_ When he's talking, it's only for anyone else to say anything!

6 My dad's quite \_\_\_\_\_ If I come home late or don't do well at school, he gets angry.

7 She's very \_\_\_\_ She always does what she says. You can trust her.

8 She's very \_\_\_\_ I mean, she's good at whe a

#### 8 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

- Which adjectives describe people in your family Explain why.
- · Which adjectives do you think describe you?

#### SPEAKING

- 9 Think of four people you know not family members. Write their names and think about how to answer the questions for each person. There is an example for each question.
  - How did you meet each other?

    We were in the same class at secondary school.
  - 2 What kind of person is he / she?
    He's great. He's very funny and very cleves.
  - How often do you talk?
     Two or three times a week. We talk on the phone a lot.
  - 4 How often do you go out together?

    Maybe once or twice a month. We go out for dinter
    or for a drink.
- Work in groups. Ask and answer questions about the people you know. Start like this:

I have a friend called ...

#### SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- Listen and repeat the sounds with /it/ and /it/. Are any of them difficult to hear or say?
- Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using these words. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them

agreed feed fit similar confident female leave strict

For further revision, see Exercises 1–3 on page 177

# A LITTLE HELP FROM YOUR FRIENDS

Some friends last a lifetime, but often we make friends for particular reasons at particular times. Here, we look at a few of the different kinds of friends we make during our lives.



## THE OLD FRIEND

Old friends are friends you met a long time ago and that you are still close to. You have a shared history. You enjoy talking about the past and always stay in touch.

# THE FRIEND OF THE FAMILY

These friends are always happy to help - and they can be very useful. People that our parents or brothers or sisters know can often teach us things or help us to find a job.



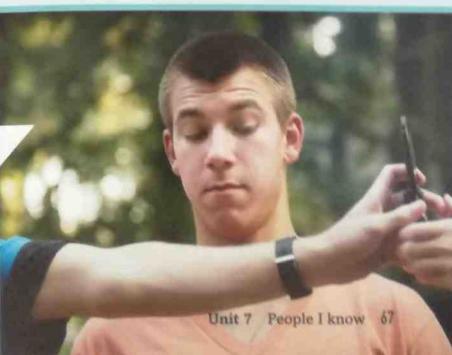
# THE ONLINE FRIEND

Many people make 'friends' through the internet, Sometimes these friendships move into the real world, but usually they don't.



# THE FRIEND OF SOMEONE YOU KNOW

Perhaps this is a friend of a friend or of your husband or girlfriend. The big problem is you don't get on with them. You see them quite a lot and have to be nice to them, but sometimes it's really hard to do.



es ìy

ŋ

eaks ters! cult 1

lat she

ie

y?

out on.

hone

001.

r dinner

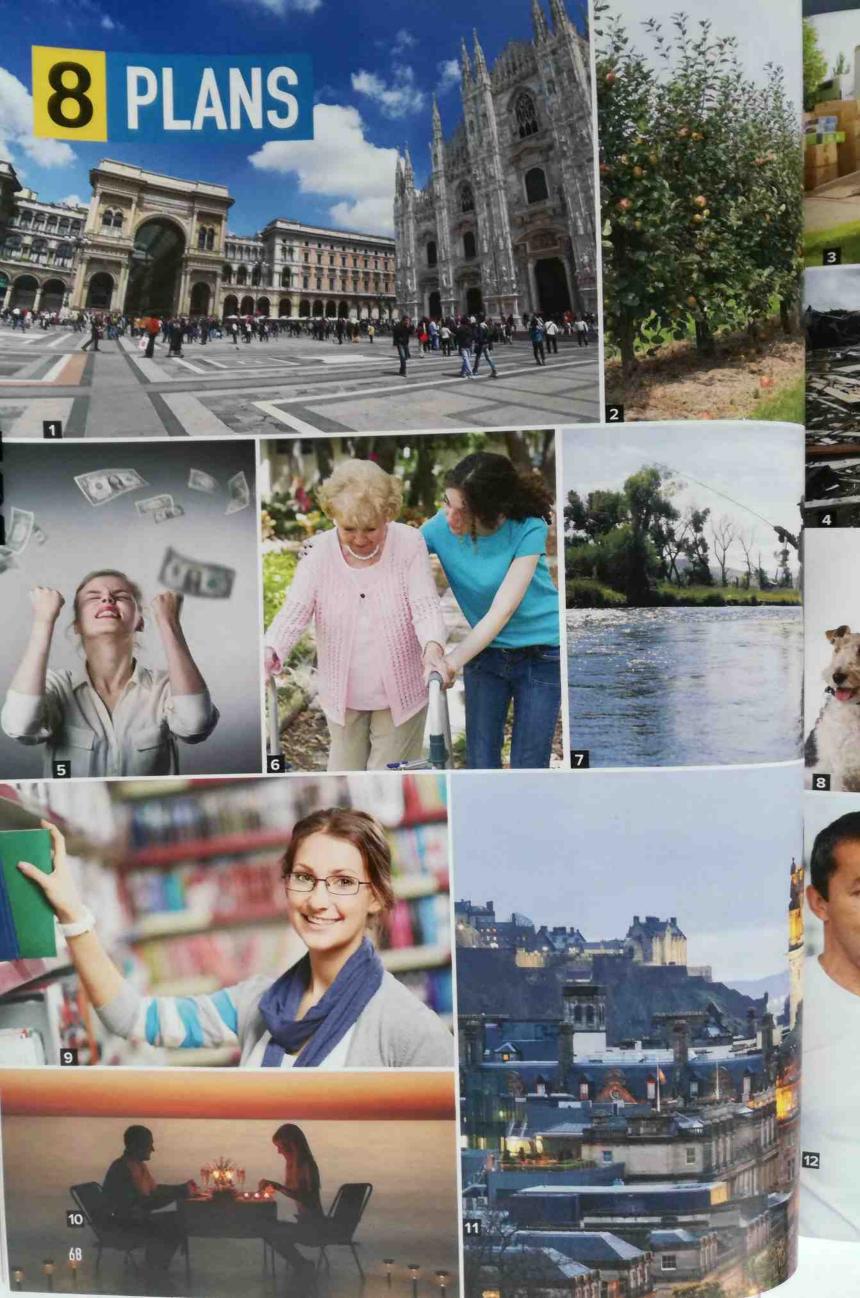
VIEW

ns about

/ii/ and ay? ntences e them

ing them

nilar rict





## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · talk about people's plans
- make simple suggestions
- · talk about things you'd like to do
- discuss government plans
- give basic opinions and reasons

#### **WORDS FOR UNIT 8**

1 Work in pairs. Match the phrases to the photos. Which two phrases do not match a photo?

a big clock build a house destroy a building do some exercise drive someone round get married get a taxi go fishing go to the library grow fruit
have a check-up
lose your job
the main square
move house
provide help
a romantic dinner
save money
win the lottery

- 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- Work in pairs. Match phrases that have a connection. How many different connections can you make? Use your own language to explain if you need to.

For example:

get a taxi / the main square: You can get a taxi in the main square.

get a taxi / drive someone round: Taxi drivers drive people round.











#### SPEAKING

- Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.
  - What entertainment is there where you live?
  - Do you go out much in the evening?
  - When do you go out and where?
  - What do you do in your free time?

#### **VOCABULARY** Common activities

Complete each group of collocations with one verb from the box.

				_
do	get	go	go for	
go to	have	play	write	

- 1 ~ tennis / ~ baseball
- 2 ~ a few emails / ~ a letter
- 3 ~ some shopping / ~ my homework
- 4 ~ a walk in the park / ~ a run
- 5 ~ the library / the doctor's for a check-up
- 6  $\sim$  a meeting with a client /  $\sim$  a romantic dinner
- 7 ~ home / ~ fishing
- 8  $\sim$  something to eat /  $\sim$  a taxi home

- Work in pairs. Use the language in Exercise
  - a two things people do at work.
  - b two things students do.
  - c two things people do if they feel ill.
  - d two things people do to keep fit.
  - e two things you did yesterday.
  - f two things you are planning to do soon.
  - g two things you really like doing.
  - h two things you never or hardly ever do

#### LISTENING

- Listen to three conversations about Decide which conversation (1-3) happens
  - a at work.
  - b at university.
  - c on holiday.
  - ▶ 55 Listen again. Find out in which conversation someone:
    - a is going to go to a restaurant.
    - b arranges where to meet.
    - c asks someone out on a date.
    - d is going to tell some colleagues about some
    - e doesn't want to meet.
    - f is going to fly somewhere soon

GRA

Lo COL A: 1

B: /

goil to talk

Co of 1 /

PR

**>** 5

dial

fror Not Wo

ans Tell

to d You out

> go wat go

Fore A: /'n

B: Re A: In

# GRAMMAR

- 6 Look at these sentences from the listening. Then complete the rules in the Grammar box.
  - A: What're your plans?
  - B: I'm going to go running by the river later.
  - A: What about tonight? Are you going to be busy then?
  - B: No. Why?

#### going to

We use the present form of the verb  $^1$ \_\_\_\_\_ + going to  $^2$ \_\_\_\_ to talk about  $^3$ \_\_\_\_ – and especially to talk about plans we have.

# Check your ideas on page 178 and do Exercises 1 and 2.

- 7 Complete each sentence with the correct form of be + going to + the verb in brackets.
  - 1 A: My boyfriend \_\_\_\_\_\_ me for a romantic dinner tonight. (take)
    - B: That's nice. Where \_\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_? (go)
  - 2 A: I \_\_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow. My flight is at six in the morning! (leave)
  - B: Really? That's early. What time \_\_\_\_\_? (get up
  - 3 A: Some friends \_\_\_\_\_\_ next week. (visit)
    - B: That's nice. How long \_\_\_\_\_? (stay
  - 4 A: I spoke to Sergei. He \_\_\_\_\_. He's got another bad headache. (not come)
    - B: Really? \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the doctor's for a check-up? I hope it isn't anything serious. (go)

#### **PRONUNCIATION**

- 8 Listen to going to and six sentences from Exercise 7 — first slow and then fast. Notice how we often say going to as /gʌnə/.
- Work in pairs. Practise reading out the dialogues in Exercise 7. In each dialogue, answer the final question.
- Tell a partner which things below you are going to do today / tomorrow / this week. Say when. Your partner is going to ask a question to find out more.

meet a friend go on holiday watch TV go shopping

cook dinner / lunch write an email / on my blog do some studying / homework get up early / late

For example:

- A: I'm going to meet some friends tonight.
- B: Really? Nice. Where are you going to meet?
- A: In the centre of town. We're going to have dinner somewhere.
- G For further practice, see Exercise 3 on page 178.

## **DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

# Making suggestions

We often make suggestions using How about ...?

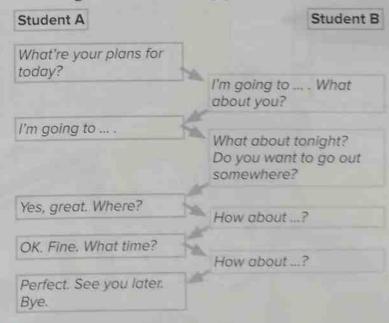
- A: Do you want to meet somewhere?
- B: Yes, OK. Where?
- A: How about in the main square at eight?
- 11 Put the sentences in the correct order to make a conversation.

1\_2\_3\_4\_5\_6\_7\_8\_9\_

- a How about in the main square, under the big clock?
- b Is six OK?
- c Oh, sorry. Well, how about seven thirty?
- d What're your plans for later?
- e Perfect! See you later. Bye.
- f Yes. Great. Where?
- g I don't have any. Why? Do you want to meet somewhere?
- h It's quite early.
- i Yes, fine. What time?
- 12 Listen and check your ideas.
- 13 Write a suggestion with *How about* ...? to respond to each question.
  - 1 What do you want to see at the cinema?
  - 2 What are we going to get her for her birthday?
  - 3 What do you want to eat tonight?
  - 4 Do you know a good place to have a party?

#### CONVERSATION PRACTICE

14 Work in pairs. Have conversations about your plans. Take turns being Student A and Student B. Use the guide below to help you.



14 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.

ans

# HOPES AND DREAMS



# Typefaces Personal Typefa

#### LISTENING

- 1 You are going to hear four people talking about things they want to do. The pictures show wheeling about things they want to do. The pictures show wheeling about thinks they say?
- 2 Listen and match each speaker to one of the pictures. Then work in pairs and company your ideas.

Speaker 1: Picture \_\_\_\_\_\_
Speaker 2: Picture \_\_\_\_\_

Speaker 3: Picture

Speaker 4: Picture \_\_\_\_\_

3 ► Listen again. Tick (✓) the sentences the are true.

#### Conversation 1

- 1 He's from Manchester.
- 2 He already does kung fu.

#### Conversation 2

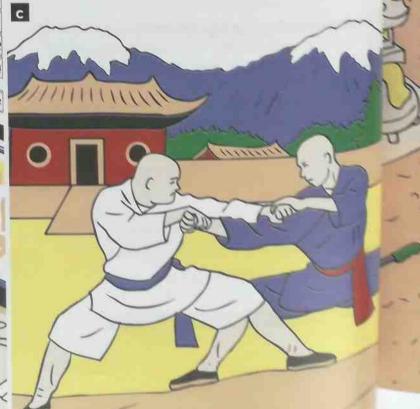
- 3 She's planning to leave her job this year.
- 4 She wants to have children before starting a business.

#### Conversation 3

- 5 He thinks that retiring is going to be good.
- 6 He wants to grow flowers.

#### Conversation 4

- 7 She wants to be rich.
- 8 She wants to learn how to drive.
- 4 Read the audio script on page 205 to check yearswers. Underline the words that helped you decide.
- Work in groups. Would you like to do any of things the people talk about? Why? / Why no



# vocabulary Life events and plans

Complete each pair of sentences with one verb from the box. One sentence is about a past event and one is about a future plan. Use the correct form in each sentence.

get			21310	
Decom	leave	start	win	
become	have	move	stop	

- 1 a My wife's going to \_\_\_ a baby in January.
  - b My friend \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ a serious accident a few years ago and he can't work now.
- \_\_\_ to St Petersburg when I was ten. My dad got a job here.
  - b We're going to \_ \_ house next year. We need a bigger place!
- 3 a My mum \_\_\_\_\_ working when she had me!
  - b My dad says he's going to \_\_\_\_\_ smoking. I hope so!
- 4 a My grandparents \_ \_ a restaurant 50 years ago and now I run it.
  - b I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ my own business when I'm older.
- a writing competition when I was 30, and after that I left my job and became a writer.
  - \_ the lottery and then we b We're going to \_ can stop work and travel round the world.
- \_\_\_\_ married next year. 6 a We're going to \_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_ divorced when I was b My parents \_\_\_\_\_ younger.
- home when I was 27. I went abroad to work.
  - \_ my job. I'd like to do b I want to \_\_\_\_\_ something different.
- \_ a nurse after I left school. 8 a I trained to \_\_\_
  - b My brother's an actor. He'd like to famous, but he's still waiting for his big opportunity.

rour

the

u

Work in pairs. Use verbs from Exercise 6 to talk about your life up to now and your plans for the future.



#### GRAMMAR

#### would like to + verb

We use would like to + infinitive to talk about things we want to do - or hope to do - sometime in the future.

I'd really like to learn Spanish.

I'd like to go to Iran one day. I'm sure it's interesting.

#### Negatives

I wouldn't like to do his job! It's hard!

I wouldn't like to live there. It's not very nice.

Questions

Would you like to go out with me?

Would you like to try some of this food?

#### Use the notes to make sentences with the correct form of would / wouldn't like (to).

- 1 I / really / spend a year in South America.
- 2 1 / really / meet him sometime. I love his music!
- 3 My brother / learn how to cook.
- 4 She / change jobs sometime soon.
- 5 1/not/be famous!
- 6 It's a nice apartment, but I / not / live in that area.
- 7 you / get something to eat after class?
- 8 you / come shopping with me tomorrow?

#### **PRONUNCIATION**

- 9 Listen and check the answers to Exercise 8. Notice when we use the contraction 'd.
- Work in groups. Discuss which of the things 10 below you'd like to do sometime in the future. There is an example for the first sentence.
  - 1 buy my own house

A: I'd really like to buy my own house one day. B: I'm OK just renting. I think it's easier.

- 2 get married
- 3 have kids
- 4 travel round the world
- 5 move to a different country
- 6 speak really good English
- 7 write a book
- 8 get fitter
- 9 learn to play a musical instrument
- 10 learn another foreign language

#### Now tell other people in your group about:

- a place you'd really like to visit.
- a person you'd really like to meet.
- something you'd really like to do.
- · something you'd like to learn.
- something you'd like to stop doing.
- For further practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 178.



#### **SPEAKING**

- 1 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - How important are the changes below for your town / city?

better water better wi-fi a bigger library improved roads more schools more street lights a new airport

a new hospital

a new metro line

a new museum

a new shopping mall

a new stadium

- Say if they are very important, quite important or not very important. Explain why.
- Look at the photo. Are they building or destroying anything in your city, area or country? What? Where? Is it a good idea?
- Are they planning to build anything? What? Where? Is it a good idea?

#### **VOCABULARY** For and against

If you are for a plan, you think it's good. If you are against a plan, you think it's bad.

When we explain why we think a plan is good or bad, we sometimes use *be going to* to say the results we predict for the future.

I'm **for** building more schools. There **are going to be** fewer students in each class. That's good for kids.

- Read the comments (1-9) about plans. Are the speakers for or against the plans?
  - 1 It's going to save time.
  - 2 It's going to provide a useful service.

- 3 It's going to improve education.
- 4 It's going to help businesses.
- 5 It's going to cause a lot of noise and pollution.
- 6 It's going to be bad for the economy.
- 7 It's going to create jobs.
- 8 It's going to cut the number of cars on the road
- 9 People are going to lose their jobs.
- Work in pairs. Which comments in Exercise could you make about the changes in Exercise For example:

A new airport is going to cause a lot of noise and pollution. A new shopping mall is going to provide useful service.

- 4 Spend two minutes trying to remember the verification in Exercise 2. Then cover Exercise 2 and complete the sentences below with the verbs. The first 10 is given.
  - 1 I don't want the government to cut taxes. It's god b\_\_\_\_\_ bad for public services.
  - 2 The government needs to use technology more s\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money.
  - 3 I'm for having the Olympic games here. It's golf c\_\_\_\_\_ lots of opportunities for people here.
  - 4 The government wants to c\_\_\_\_\_ the number policemen, but I'm against it. It's going to problems. There's going to be more crime.
  - 5 It's a good idea to stop cars in the city centre is to i\_\_\_\_\_ the city and p\_\_\_\_ more specific people. Shopping is nicer when there isn't any
  - 6 A big car company is going to close down bed it's I\_\_\_\_ money. I want the governments h\_\_\_\_ the people who are going to lose the p

### READING

- 5 Look at the extract from a website. Read the comments about three plans the local or national government has. What do you think the plans are? Complete headings 1-3 on the website. Then compare your ideas in pairs.
- Which person:
  - 1 would like more tourists?
  - 2 would like to improve education?
  - 3 wants to save time?
  - 4 wants to save money?
  - 5 likes sport?
  - 6 is worried about the environment?
- Work in pairs. Say which people have similar opinions to you and why.

#### SPEAKING

- Read the plans below and decide which you are for and which you are against. Write one reason
  - 1 The government is going to build new train lines for high-speed trains.
  - 2 The government wants to make a law to stop people building in the countryside or next to the sea.
  - 3 The government is going to increase the age when people retire from 65 to 68.
  - 4 The local government is going to close all the libraries and provide some books online for free.
  - 5 The local government would like to build a shopping mall in your area with 100 shops and a car park.
- Work in groups. Discuss your opinions about the plans in Exercise 8.

For example:

- A: I'm for the high-speed trains. It's going to create jobs.
- B: I agree. It's going to save time and provide a useful service for us.
- C: I'm against it. It's going to be bad for the environment.

#### SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- Listen and repeat the sounds with /ei/, /ai/ and /u:/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using these words. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

create drive

of

flo

exercise library

move provides saving situation

For further revision, see Exercises 1-3 on page 179.

# YOUR OPINION MATTERS!

#### The local government wants to



I think it's a good idea. It's going to help business and more people are going to come here. At the moment people have to fly to the capital and then get the train. It takes hours.

#### AGAINST



I don't think it's a good idea. It's not going to be near my house, but I still don't want all those planes to come here. There's going to be a lot of noise and pollution. And they want to build it in some nice countryside outside the city.

#### The government is planning to \_



Gavin

It's going to improve the situation. The government is spending too much money at the moment. They need to do something about it and I don't want to pay more taxes.

#### AGAINST



It's going to cause a lot of problems because there are going to be fewer doctors, fewer policemen, fewer teachers. Maybe some people can pay to see a private doctor, or pay for extra classes for their children, but for a lot of people it's going to be bad for their health and their children's education.

#### Our government wants to



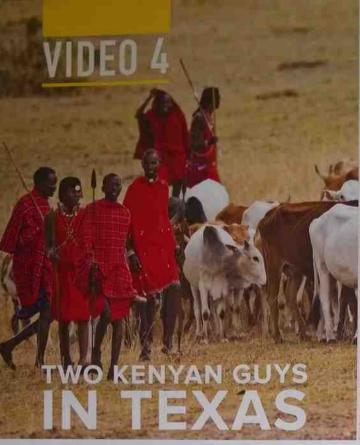
Gloria

It's going to be good for our country and our economy. Lots of people are going to come here and spend money in the hotels and restaurants. And they're going to meet local people and learn about our country too. I think it's a great opportunity. And for me, it's going to be good because I'd really like to go and see the matches - I hope the tickets aren't going to be very expensive.

#### AGAINS T



It's going to cost a lot of money and I think we could spend the money on better things. There are more important things than sport. How about providing a computer for every student or providing free English lessons? Those are better ways to spend all that money.





- Look at the photos. Answer the questions.
  - · Where are the two places?
  - · What can you see in each photo?
  - What do you think is similar and what's different about their houses and lifestyles?
- Read the summary of the first part of the video and check any words you don't know. Then watch the first part of the video (0.00-2.07) and complete the summary with one word in each space.

Two Maasai men are travelling around 1
They decide to visit a ranch in 2 to see all the cows, because the Maasai believe all the cows in the belong to them! They meet a man called He's famous because he owns a ranch in as well as his ranch at home. He's going to show the Maasai men around and introduce them to his family. When they are in the car, they try to learn some ways to say 'hello' and 'how are you'. The Maasai men find it 1 to understand the Texan man's accent.

- Watch the second part of the video (2.08-4.44). Answer these questions.
  - Which members of the family do you see and hear about?
  - 2 Which rooms do you see?
  - 3 How different is the Maasal's house? in what ways?

- 4 Choose the correct option. Watch the second part of the video again to check.
  - 1 The ranch was owned by his grandmother's land grandfather's family.
  - 2 A prime minister / A famous Hollywood actor vs. them and stayed in the bedroom.
  - 3 The gun is not real / was used in a war.
  - 4 The Maasai move every year / every three yearst look for fresh grass.
  - 5 A fire / The rain destroys the Maasai's old house
  - 6 The Maasai are going to learn how to become cowboys / cook.
- 5 Work in groups and discuss the questions.
  - Would you like to visit the two homes? Why? / Why not?
  - Do you ever have visitors to your home?
  - Do you have any paintings or photos of your family on the wall in your home? Who of?
  - Do you have any special objects people can see if your home? What are they? Why are they special?
  - What's your favourite part of your house? Why?

#### UNDERSTANDING FAST SPEECH

- 6 Read and listen to this extract from the video said fast, then slow. Stressed sounds are in CAPITALS.
  - KINDa like the WOmen in YOUR culture SHE brought the COWS to the MArriage
- 7 You try! Practise saying the extract with the same stressed sounds

# REVIEW 4

# GRAMMAR

1	Complete 1-1 with one word in each space.
	1 A: Are you to be here for lunch today 2
	B: Yes, I I'm going to leave at about four o'clock.
	2 A: Do you have to work at the weekends?
	B: No, I
	3 A: Who's going make the dinner?
	B: We
	4 A: Your grandmother's 98! Wow! Can she still walk OK?
	B: Yes, she, but she's very slow.
	5 A: Do you enjoy studying?
	B: No, I
	6 I can't talk now. I have speak to my boss.
	7 I don't speak much English, but my wife
	8 I like to visit Chile next year, but tickets are very expensive.
2	Rewrite the sentences as negatives (-) or questions (?).
	1 I'm going to see him today. (-)
	2 She has to come to the meeting. (-)
	3 You'd like to be famous some day. (?)
	4 I'd like to work for that company. (-)
	5 He's going to stay here. (?)
	6 I have to wait. (?)
	7 We have to go to the meeting. (-)
	8 She'd like a cup of coffee. (?)
3	Put the word in bold in the correct place in the sentence.
	1 She have to drive me to the station. I can take a taxi. doesn't
	2 My parents speak Chinese and my older brother too does
	3 My grandfather's tall and my dad is. too
	4 It's OK. You don't to do it. You decide. have
	5 Would you like get something to eat? to
	6 My husband is going to, but I'm not. go
4	one word in each space. Contractions (I'm, don't etc.) are one word.
	1 She's the idea.
	o work
	tomorrow, my wife
	3you
	tomorrow!
	4 really working and travel more.
	The state of the s

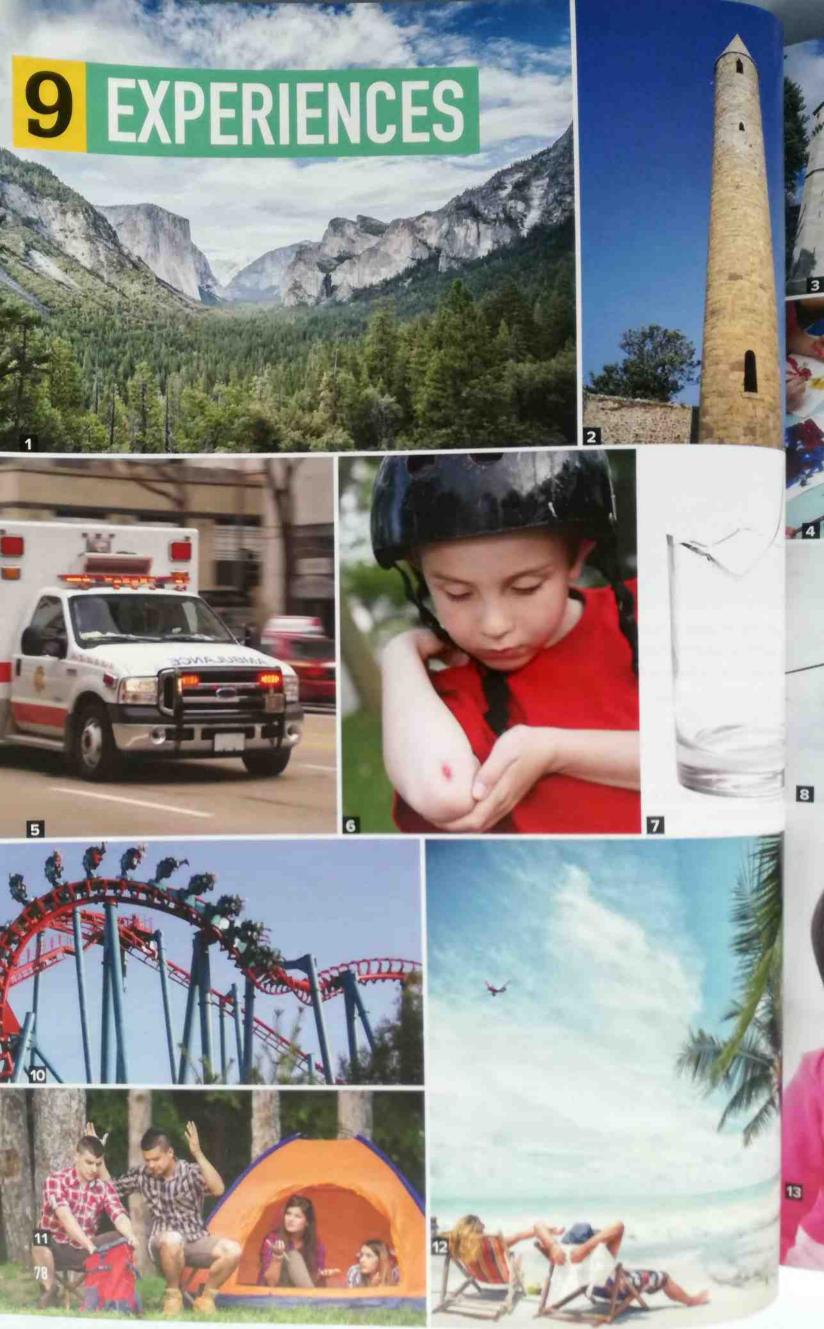
6 My daughter still \_

my sons \_\_\_\_

Work in pairs. Compare your ideas. Listen again to check.

## VOCABULARY

Li	cut	provi	de	save	stop
10310	ALLICO TO	4U Km/	D It cauc	Albania mila managari	the speed limi e is going to money in the
1000	ealth sen	VICE: I H	e dover	mont would	d also like to
1	build	crea	ate	help	improve
jo to	bs and o	pportun edu	ities for cation ar	young peop nd <sup>7</sup>	more ole. It wants a lot more
sc to	nools, ro	ads and	houses nesses.	. It's a big j	ob, but it's goin
				with the	missing lette
					thon last year.
					ys gets A grade
					qu
				very re	
					a rotic
6	My grant together		very f	y. We I	augh a lot
7	She's ve anything		_ct wit	h her kids.	They can't do
3	It's very	d!	Can you	ı turn it dov	vn?
9	He's ver	y quiet.	He's not	very c	_fit.
)	She's 53 younger.			ed. I th	ought she was
	atch the				groups of
		jo lave	lose move	pick u play	p repair start
1	~ to Ger	many /	~ house	/ ~ to a nic	er area
2	~ a mee	ting with	n a client	/ don't ~ tir	ne / ~ a check-
3	~ my chi	ld from	school /	~ a friend	from the airpor
1	~ games	/~ an	instrume	ent / ~ tenn	is
5	~ runnin	g/~to	a party	~ home	
5	~ my car	/~ab	roken ct	nair / ~ the	roof
)	- comot		A 4 / - A	livorced / ~	a taxi home
	~ Sumet	hing to	eat/~u	IIVOIGEGI -	
7					~ some exercis
3	~ my ho	mework	:/~ the		~ some exercis





### IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · talk about places you've been to
- recommend places
- · explain and ask about problems
- talk about experiences

#### **WORDS FOR UNIT 9**

1 Work in pairs. Match the phrases to the photos.

break a glass buy fresh fish call an ambulance an exciting ride fall down forget to bring go up a tower get a great view

hurt myself lie on the beach lose the game make a mess start crying visit a palace win the match

- 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- Which things do you think are part of a good experience? Which are part of a bad experience?
- 4 Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

Student A: point to a photo.

Student B: say the words.









#### **SPEAKING**

- 1 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.
  - Do you know the building in the photo? If yes, what do you know about it?
  - What do you know about the city of Istanbul?
- 2 Make a list of eight very famous buildings or places around the world - and four very famous ones in your country.
- Work in groups and compare your lists. Did you think of the same places?

#### **GRAMMAR** Present perfect

- Look at the dialogues below, then complete the rules in the Grammar box.
  - 1 A: Have you visited the Hagia Sophia?
    - B: No, never. Have you?
    - A: No, I haven't.
  - 2 A: Have you tried Turkish food?
    - B: Yes, lots of times. I love it.
  - 3 A: Have you been to Istanbul?
    - B: Yes, I have. Have you?

We use the present perfect to ask about an action before now when we feel it is connected to the present situation - to ask, for example, if someone has experience of something.

To make the present perfect, we use a form of the verb + a past participle.

Regular past participles end in 2

Some past participles are irregular. For example, be - 3

### Check your ideas on page 179 and do Exercise 1.

Work in groups. Ask each other about the famous buildings / places you thought of in Exercise 2, and answer using the phrases in the box.

For example:

A: Have you (ever) been to ...? / Have you ever visited ...?

B: Yes, I have. Have you?

Yes, I have. Have you?

No, I haven't. Have you?

No, never, but I'd like to.

Ch the

Ch



LISTI

tou the the

spe Lis

to give - or ask about - details of the past action (e.g. exactly when we use the past simple.

A Hove you been to Moscow?

R Yes. I went there last year

A Hove you ever tried English food?

B Yes, I have. I had it in Manchester two years ago.

A: Did you like it?

B: No, not really.

#### Choose the correct option.

- 1 A: Have you ever been to Africa?
  - B: Yes. I went I have been to Nigeria and Ghana a few years ago.
- 2 A: Have you tried the restaurant here in the hotel?
  - B: No. Have / Did you?
  - A: Yes. We went / have been there last night. It was / has been really good.
- 3 A: Have you ever been to Turkey?
  - B: Yes. We have been I went there last year on holiday.
  - A: Oh, really? Did you visit / Have you visited the Hagia Sophia in Istanbul?
  - B: No. We wanted / have wanted to, but we were only I have only been in the city for a day.
- 4 A: Have you ever tried Thai food?
  - B: No. never.
  - A: Really? Wow! Well, have you tried I did you try any other Asian food?
  - B: Yes. Once. I've been I I went to an Indonesian restaurant when I was in Holland, but I haven't really liked / didn't really like it.
- 7 Change partners. Have similar conversations to the ones in Exercise 6, but this time, add details when you answer.



#### LISTENING

b

m

- 8 Listen to a conversation between two tourists in Istanbul and someone who lives there. Put the questions in the order you hear them. The first one is done for you.
  - 1 2 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
  - How long did you spend there?
  - b Have you been to Topkapi Palace?
  - What are your plans for this evening?
  - d Did you go up the Galata Tower?
  - Have you been to Istanbul before?
  - f Have you tried the fish here?
  - 9 Where have you been?
  - it When did you arrive?
  - Work in pairs. Do you remember how the speakers answer the questions in Exercise 8? Listen again and note the answers.

#### Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

- Which countries / cities would you really like to visit?
- Do you know anyone who's been to any of those places already? Did they like them?
- Which tourist places in your country have you never been to? Why not?

#### DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

#### Recommending

If someone hasn't been to a place that we think is good, we often say You should!

If someone hasn't been to a place that we think is bad, we often say Don't!

We can then explain why we are recommending (or not recommending) the place.

- A: Have you tried the fish here?
- B: No, we haven't.
- A: Oh, you should. It's very good very fresh.
- C: Have you visited the palace?
- D: No, I haven't.
- C: Don't! It's really boring.
- Think of four places you think are good to visit - and four places that you think are bad. Think about why.
- Work in pairs. Have conversations about your places. Follow these patterns.

A: Have you been to the zoo here?

B: No, I haven't.

A: Oh, you should! It's great. They have lions!

C: Have you been to Harrods?

D: No, never.

C: Don't! It's very expensive!

#### CONVERSATION PRACTICE

You are going to roleplay a conversation like the one you heard in the listening.

Student A: you're a local person. Ask the questions below.

Student B: you're a tourist. Answer Student A's questions. Use language from these pages.

Then change roles and have another conversation.

- Have you been here before?
- · When did you arrive?
- · Where have you been?
- Did you like it?
- Have you been to ...?
- What are your plans for this evening?



17 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.



#### **VOCABULARY** Problems

Match the verbs in each group with the correct sentence endings.

the wrong train. 1 I forgot

2 I made a mess.

to turn off the gas. 3 I took

on the floor. 4 I broke

my glasses. 5 It fell

my flight. 6 I missed

myself. 7 Host

8 I hurt a bit ill.

9 I felt my passport.

How serious are the problems in Exercise 1, in your opinion? Work in pairs and write the sentences in the table below.

Very serious	
Quite serious	
Not very serious	

Work in pairs. Take turns saying a different sentence ending for each verb in Exercise How long can you continue?

For example:

A: I forgot to tell you.

B: I forgot his name.

A: I forgot to turn off the light.

B: I forgot the word.

A: I don't know another. 1 point to you! OK. You start next.

B: I made ...

#### LISTENING

- Listen to five short conversations where there is a problem. Decide in which conversation (1-5):
  - a someone has made a mess.
  - b someone has lost something.
  - c someone has hurt themself.
  - d someone has taken the wrong road.
  - e someone has forgotten to bring something

it! I

GRAM

the eac Con

4 D

Con

6 It' Con 7 I'V 8 D Con 9 0

Wor peop 105 for br

For e A: /'m oft B: / th thii

thii

Past I Regular simple te verbs are

Work have have

> arrive be break check come CLIT do fall



Work in pairs. Look at the sentences from the listening. What are the two missing words in each sentence? Listen again and check.
argation 1
you checked in your
2 I've found them! They were by!
- worsation 2
's thrown the plate on the floor.
4 Do you have a cloth or some tissues? There's sauce
4 Do you have a sauce
Conversation 3
a bottle this morning.
5 d bottle
6 Kanoriii
Conversation 4
7 I've cut
8 Do you have or something?
Conversation 5
9 Oh! You've come the Do you have a map?
10 You need to go back and then here.
Work in groups. Discuss how often you and

- lose things.
- · hurt yourself.
- · forget things.
- · take the wrong direction.
- · break things.
- · make a mess.

For example:

- A: I'm quite good. I hardly ever lose things, but my dad often loses things especially his keys.
- B: I think I'm average. I sometimes forget things but I think It's normal. My friend, Kenji he never forgets things. He hears something once and he remembers it! He's amazing.

#### GRAMMAR

#### Past participles

Regular verbs have the same -ed ending for both the past simple tense and the past participle, but many common verbs are irregular.

Work in pairs. Decide if the verbs in the box have a regular or irregular past participle. You have seen all the verbs in this unit!

arrive be break check come cut do fall	feel find forget happen hurt lose make miss	plan see stop study take throw try visit

Check your ideas on page 180 and do Exercise 1.

B	Complete the sentences with the correct present
	perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

1	my keys? I'm sure I put them down here somewhere. (you / see)
2	I'm really sorryyour name! (I / forget)
3	I don't believe it my bag! (someone / take)
4	What was that noise? What? (you / do)
5	I'm really sorry a glass. (I / break)
6	Can you help us? (our bags / not arrive)
7	Hi. This is Andrew. I'm really sorry, but our flight. (we / miss)
8	Where? Is he going to come back? (Martin / go)

the police? (anyone / call)

#### PRONUNCIATION

- 9 Listen to the present perfect forms in Exercise 8 first fast, then slow. Notice how have can sound like /hæv/, /həv/, /əv/ or /v/ and how sometimes you don't hear it at all in fast speech.
- 10 Listen to the slower version and repeat the sentences.
- Work in pairs. Write a response to each sentence in Exercise 8.

For example:

- 1 Have you seen my keys? I'm sure I put them down here somewhere.
  - Yes. They're in your hand!
- 2 I'm really sorry. I've forgotten your name! That's OK. I've forgotten yours too!
- Work with another pair. Read out your dialogues.
- G For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 180.

#### SPEAKING

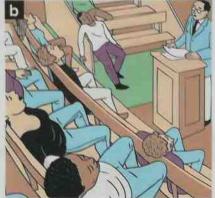
- Work in pairs. Discuss these questions. Give some details.
  - Have you lost anything recently?
  - · Have you broken anything recently?
  - · Have you taken any exams recently?
  - · Have you hurt yourself recently?
  - Have you missed anything recently?
  - · Have you seen anything good recently? (TV or films)

# MEMORABLE EXPERIENCES

# **VOCABULARY** Describing experiences

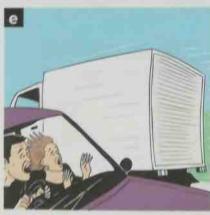
- Match the sentences (1–8) to the pictures (a–h).
  - 1 It was really relaxing.
  - 2 It was really annoying.
  - 3 It was really boring.
  - 4 It was really sad.
  - 5 It was really embarrassing.
  - 6 It was really exciting.
  - 7 It was really scary!
  - 8 It was really stressful.

















- Work in pairs. Discuss which adjectives in Exercise 1 describe good experiences and describe bad experiences.
- Work in pairs. Read the sentences about how experiences and check you understand the words in bold. Then discuss what adjective Exercise 1 best describes each experience
  - We went to a big theme park with some amazing rides.
  - 2 The plane was delayed and we had to wait forh
  - 3 Someone with a gun stopped us and stole our money.
  - 4 We did nothing for a week. We just lay on the band swam in the sea.
  - 5 The airline lost our bags on the way there.
  - 6 My boyfriend asked me to marry him.
  - 7 There was an accident on the motorway and several people died.
  - 8 I got up in the night to get some water from the cooler and I forgot to take my room key!
  - 9 We went over the city in a helicopter.
  - 10 My wife's parents stayed with us for a couple of months last summer.

#### READING

- 4 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.
  - · Has this been a good year for you or not?
  - What are you going to remember from this year
- 5 Read about the memorable experiences people had in one year. Which person talks about.
  - 1 a celebration?
  - 2 a theme park?
  - 3 a concert?
  - 4 a football match?
  - 5 a holiday?
  - 6 a baby?
- Read again. What do you think of the experiences in the text? Rank them from 1 (= the best) to 6 (= the worst).

The best	1
	2
	3
	4
	5
The worst	6

Work in pairs. Compare your lists from Ext. 6 and explain your ideas.

# INFORGETTABLE

nich

day

om

SILIC

ach

le

ise

#### KRISSU, ESTONIA

went to our national dance and song festival in Tallinn. 18,000 of us sang together and more than 100,000 people watched us. When you sing with so many people, you create an amazing sound. I actually started crying!



#### JUANA, MEXICO

This year was very stressful at work. but in November I went to a meditation centre for ten days. In the centre, you don't speak to anyone, you can't use your mobile phone or a computer, or watch TV. You try not to think. You relax completely. It was exactly what I needed.



#### LAURA, SCOTLAND

I had a party for my 21st birthday. All my family were there. It was really nice -apart from when my dad gave a speech about me. It was a bit embarrassing.





#### MANUELA, ITALY

Having my daughter was obviously unforgettable, but it was extra special because I had her at home. The day it happened, I started feeling her move at six in the evening. We thought we had lots of time, but by seven o'clock I was in a lot of pain! My husband called an ambulance, but my daughter arrived first! It hurt a lot and it was a bit scary without a doctor, but it was very quick, and she's beautiful and healthy!



#### TARIQ, OMAN



We went to Ferrari World in Abu Dhabi. I love cars -especially Ferraris. It was really good, but there were some long queues. We waited for two hours to go on the fastest roller coaster in the world! Then the ride only lasted a minute, but it was really exciting and I loved it!



#### JACK, UK

On May the 30th, I went to see my team Hull play in the Cup Final. We lost 3-2. After the game, someone stole my wallet. I went to the police, but they couldn't help. I missed my rain, so it took a long time to get home. I would like to forget that day, but I can't!

Ö	Complete each pair of collocations with a verb
	1 dn amazina

2	an amazing sound / more jobs
	your mobile phone / your computer
3	a speech / him a present
4	an ambulance / the police
5	for two hours / for a bus
6	3-2 / our last match

## Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- Have you ever been to a festival? Where? Was it good?
- Have you ever been to a theme park? Where? Was it good?
- Have you ever given a speech? When? In front of how many people?
- Have you ever queued for a long time? How long for? What for?
- Have you ever called an ambulance or the police? Why? Was everything OK?

#### SPEAKING

- Choose an experience that one of the adjectives from Exercise 1 describes. Plan what you want to say about the experience. Use a dictionary or ask your teacher for help, if you need to. Write:
  - · what the experience was.
  - · when it happened.
  - where you were.
  - who you were with.
  - what happened first, second, etc.

#### For example:

One time I lost all my bags. Five years ago I went on holiday to America with my family. We went to New York. We arrived late and we missed our next flight. When we got to San Francisco, our bags didn't arrive. It took six days to get them!

Work in groups. Tell the group your story, but 11 don't say the adjective. Can the other students guess which adjective you chose?

For example:

A: It sounds very stressful.

B: Yes, it was!

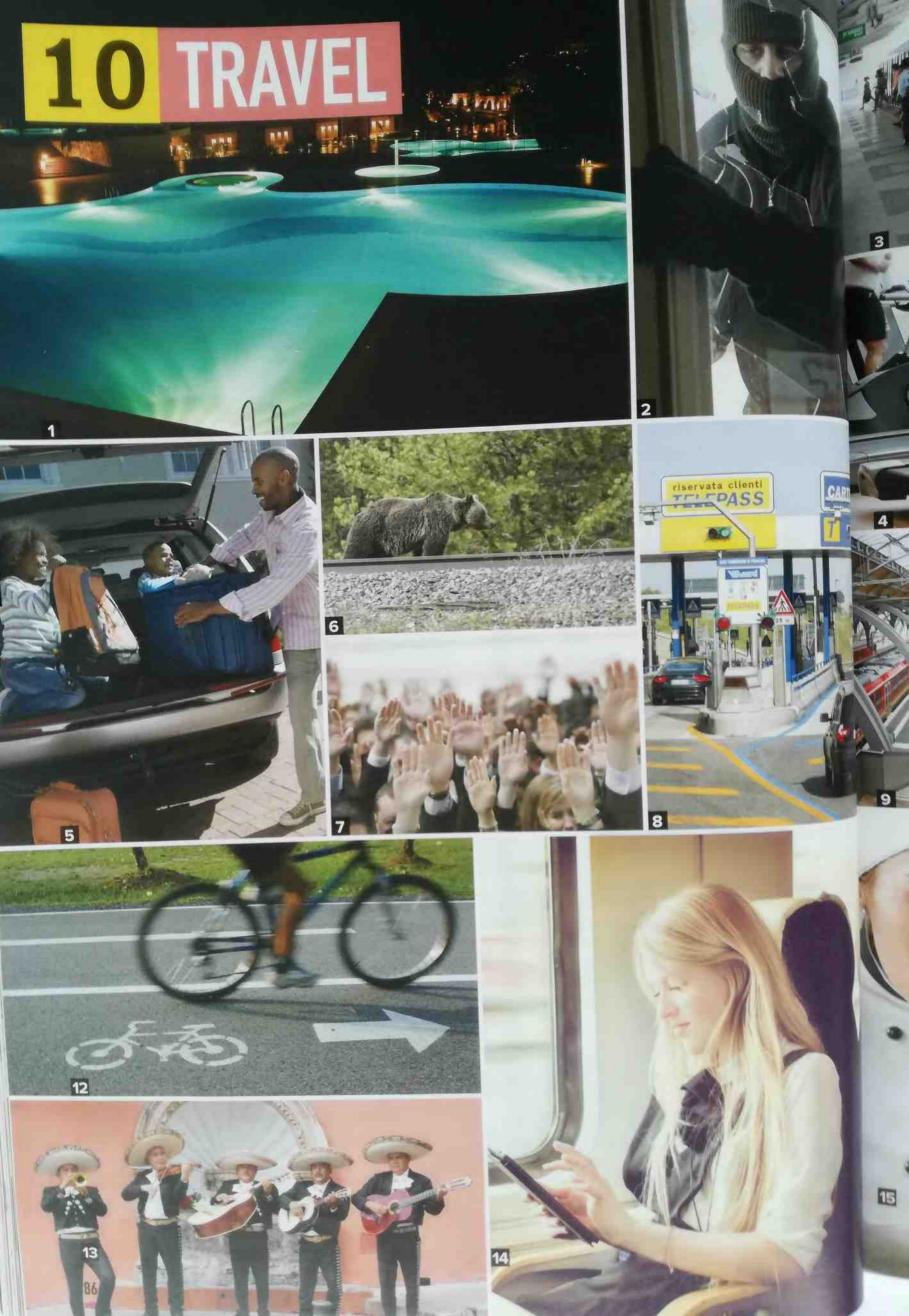
#### SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- Listen and repeat the sounds with /æ/, /p/, / au/ and /ou/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using these words. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

planned sad found broken round stole **lost** forgot



For further revision, see Exercises 1-3 on page 180.





## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · talk about train travel
- · buy tickets
- talk about the time
- · talk about transport where you live
- recommend places

#### **WORDS FOR UNIT 10**

1 Work in pairs. Match the phrases to the photos.

an animal on the line change money charge for the motorway cycle in a bike lane get a haircut get in the car get off the train go to the gym a lot of crime

a lovely pool
park the car
pay in cash
taste delicious
travel first class
vote for it
wait on the platform
watch a live band

- 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- 3 Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

Student A: point to a photo.

Student B: say the words.





Unit 10

Travel 87



#### **VOCABULARY** Trains and stations

- Work in pairs. Check you understand the words in bold in the questions below. Then decide who usually asks the question - a passenger (P) or someone who works for the train company (T)?
  - 1 Would you like a single or return?
  - 2 I'm a student. Do I get a discount?
  - 3 Which platform is it?
  - 4 Is it a direct train?
  - 5 What's causing the delay?
  - 6 Which stop do we get off at?
  - 7 How would you like to pay?
  - 8 How much is a first-class ticket?
- Match the questions in Exercise 1 to the answers below (a-h).
  - a In cash.
  - b No, you have to change in Munich.
  - c 67 pounds and second class is 39.
  - d A return, please, coming back tomorrow.
  - e Not the next one, but the one after that.
  - f Platform three.
  - g There's an animal on the line.
  - h Yes, you get 15% off.
- Work in pairs. Practise saying the questions and answers in Exercises 1 and 2.

#### LISTENING

171 Listen to a conversation in a train station in Amsterdam, Holland. Answer the question

IVI:

3

4 1

a

С

e

Wor

Say

diffe

- 1 What kind of tickets do the passengers buy?
- 2 How much are the tickets?
- 3 How do they pay?
- 4 What time is their train?
- 5 Which platform do they need?
- Listen again. Complete the sentences will one word in each space.

\_\_\_ can I help?

- 2 The \_\_\_\_\_ train is at 12.25.
- 3 It's probably \_\_\_\_\_\_ to buy two singles.
- 4 Please \_\_\_\_\_\_your PIN. Great.
- 5 You have to \_ at Hilversum.
- 6 How long does the journey \_
- 7 You \_\_\_\_\_ around three o'clock. 8 Thanks for your \_
- 6 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.
  - Are trains good or bad in your country? Why?
  - Do you have a favourite train journey?
  - Are there any train journeys you'd like to make

#### DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

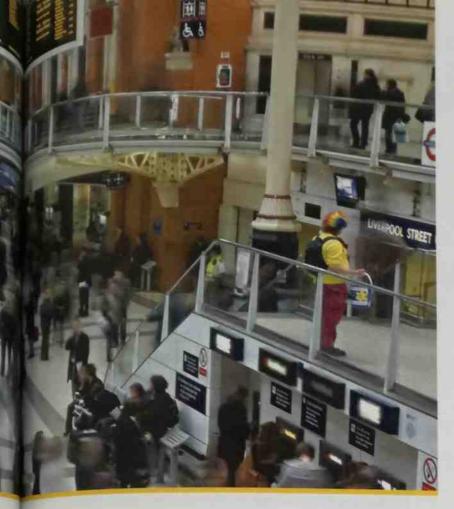
#### Telling the time

We can say times in two different ways.

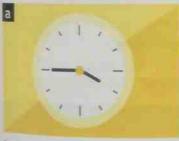
12.25: twenty-five past twelve 11.45: quarter to twelve

twelve twenty eleven forty-fin

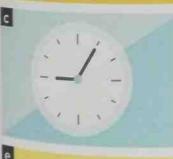
Both ways are very common.



- 7 Match the times (1-8) to the pictures (a-h).
  - 1 half past three
  - 2 quarter to four
  - 3 four fifteen
  - 4 five to nine
- 5 five past nine
- 6 six twenty-five
- 7 nine o'clock
- 8 two thirty

















Work in pairs. Cover the times in Exercise 7. Say the times in the pictures (a-h) in two different ways.

- Work in groups. Discuss the questions.
  - · What time is it now?
  - What time did your class start?
  - What time does it finish?
  - What time do you usually get up?
  - What time did you go to bed last night?
  - What time do you usually catch the bus / train in the morning?
  - · What time do you usually get home?
  - What time do you usually have dinner?

#### PRONUNCIATION

- 12 Listen to eight phrases and sentences that use to between other words. Notice that we often pronounce to as /tə/. Listen again and write what you hear.
- 11 Listen again. Repeat what you hear.

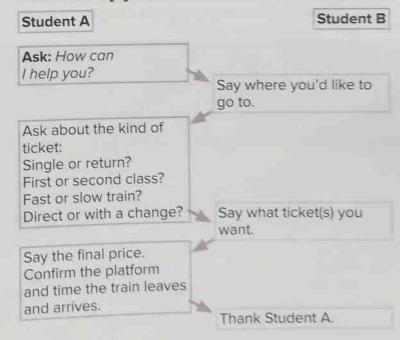
#### CONVERSATION PRACTICE

12 Work in pairs. You are going to roleplay a conversation at a station.

> Student A: you sell tickets. Look at File 8 on page 195.

Student B: it's nine in the morning. You'd like to buy a ticket to Hull. Ask Student A for information.

Now roleplay the conversation. Use the guide below to help you.



Change roles and have another conversation. 14

Student A: it's four in the afternoon. You'd like to buy a ticket to Hope. Ask Student B for information.

Student B: you sell tickets. Look at File 5 on page 194.

18 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.

# GETTING AROUND

#### **VOCABULARY** Transport

1 Complete each group of collocations with one word from the box.

bike bus car flight taxi train

- 1 get the ~ / the 73 ~ / get off the ~ / wait at the ~ stop / the ~es run all night
- 2 go in the ~ / get in the ~ / park the ~ / my ~ broke down / rent a ~
- 3 catch a ~ / get the 8.20 ~ / a direct ~ / miss my ~ / pick me up from the ~ station
- 4 ride a ~ / lock my ~ / fell off my ~ / have a mountain ~ / someone stole my ~
- 5 get a ~ / stop a ~ / the ~ driver took a long route / the ~ driver charged too much
- 6 book my ~ / miss my ~ / the ~'s delayed / ~ FR09 to Rome
- 2 Tick the collocations you knew before and cross the collocations that are new for you. Then work in pairs. Compare what you knew. Check any words you don't know in a dictionary.
- 3 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - What bus routes go near your house? Where do they go? Do you take any of them? If yes, what stops do you usually get off at?
  - Do you have a bike? What kind? Is it safe to ride a bike where you live? Do people often steal bikes there? Have you ever fallen off a bike?

- Do you have a car? What kind? Is it easy to park where you live? Has your car ever broken down? Have you ever rented a car?
- How often do you fly? When you book a flight how you choose the airline? Have you ever missed a flight
- Do you ever take taxis? Why? / Why not? Is there much competition between taxi companies in your city? Have you ever been charged too much or take a strange route?

#### READING

- 4 Read the article about taxis round the world.

  Decide which of the ten paragraphs (1-10) is not true.
- Work in groups. Discuss your ideas about which part of the article is not true. Then check in File 10 on page 195 to see if you were right.
- 6 Work in pairs. Look at the things, places and numbers below. Can you remember what the article says about these things?

1 320 and 25% 6 7,000 and 300

2 the hippocampus3 Uzbekistan7 Olden and 5508 Seoul and 17

4 South Africa and 2,000 9 Britain, Europe and

5 a company in Puebla

7 Read again and check your ideas.

# TAXI!

- 1 KNOWLEDGE: London taxi drivers have to take a course to learn 320 routes and all the names of the roads on each route. Only 25% of people finish the course and pass the exam.
- **2 BIGGER BRAINS:** On average, taxi drivers have a bigger *hippocampus* than other people. The hippocampus is a part of the brain connected to memory and learning.
- **3 EXPENSIVE:** In Muscat, Oman, you can get a one-million-dollar Ferrari Enzo taxi. The driver charges clients \$30 per kilometre.
- 4 I HAVE A CAR. I AM A TAXI DRIVER: In Tashkent, Uzbekistan, anyone with a car can be a taxi driver. If they see someone waiting at the side of the road, they can stop and negotiate a price.
- 5 DANGEROUS: In South Africa in the 1990s, competition between different taxi companies caused 'taxi wars' in which more than 2,000 people died.

- SAFER: Many women don't feel safe in taxis if a man is driving. But there aren't enough women taxi drivers because they don't feel safe picking up men! A company in Puebla, Mexico, has found a solution pink taxis. Women drive them and they only pick up women.
- **THE LONGEST JOURNEY:** In 1930 two old ladies in Australia to a taxi on a 7,000-mile trip across the desert, with taxi driver Charles Heard. The trip cost around £300.
- LOST IN TRANSLATION: A Spanish couple had to pay \$3,000 they got a taxi in Norway. They wanted to go to Olden but the drift understood Halden more than 550 kilometres further away!
- THAT'S BETTER: The city of Seoul, South Korea found foreign tourists had difficulty using taxis because they don't know enough Korean. So now it provides a free translating service in seventeen languages. Customers can phone a number and ask a translator to the driver.
- THEYRE THE BEST: Britain has some of the worst transport point in Europe. There's too much traffic, there are too many delays on transport and it costs too much. However, the UK is number one taxis. International tourists voted on a website. They said Britains drivers are friendly and reliable: in fact, the best in the world!

# GRAMMAR

W do

flight

SUC taken

hich

nd 1

NEW TEN

2 100% ries

river

ns lux

too much, too many and not enough

to shows a situation is bad because it's more than we want. Not enough shows a situation is bad because it's less than we want

There's too much traffic.

There are too many delays on public transport.

There aren't enough women taxi drivers.

They don't know enough Korean.

Look at the sentences above. Complete these rules with too much, too many or not enough.

only goes with uncountable nouns.

only goes with plural nouns.

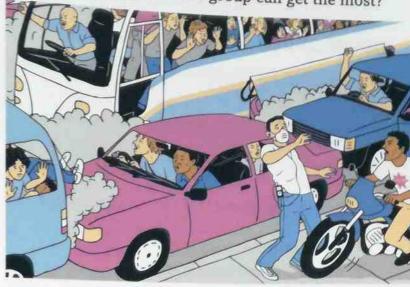
can go with uncountable noun or plurals.

#### Check your ideas on page 181 and do Exercise 1.

9 Choose the correct option.

- 1 There aren't enough / are too many trains. They need to run more often.
- 2 The government says there are too much I too many accidents here, so it wants to reduce the speed limit.
- 3 Talways travel by car. There is I are too much crime on public transport.
- 4 There isn't / aren't enough buses at night. You have to get a taxi after eleven in the evening.
- 5 Too much / many people are flying these days. Flights are too cheap.
- 6 There are too many cars on the road. Travelling to work takes too much time / hours.

10 Work in groups. In three minutes, see how many sentences about the picture you can say using too / not enough. Which group can get the most?



For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 181.

#### SPEAKING

Work in groups. Talk about where you live using too much, too many and not enough. Think about the things in the box. Say what your town or city needs to make things better.

For example:

The trains in my city are OK, but there aren't enough trains at night. They stop at midnight.

accidents cyclists places to park taxis airport drivers pollution traffic roads and motorways buses flights trains



# WHERE'S THE BEST PLACE TO GO?

#### **DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

#### Where's the best place?

When we want to know good places to do things, we often ask Where's the best place to ...?

To suggest places, we often say Try + the name of a place.

- 1 Match the questions (1-8) to the suggestions (a-h).
  - 1 Where's the best place to eat?
  - 2 Where's the best place to stay?
  - 3 Where's the best place to change money?
  - 4 Where's the best place to go shopping?
  - 5 Where's the best place to go dancing?
  - 6 Where's the best place to go cycling?
  - 7 Where's the best place to get some exercise?
  - 8 Where's the best place to get a haircut?
  - a Try the park. There are bike lanes there, so it's very safe.
  - b Try Melati's. It's small and friendly, and it has a really nice atmosphere. The food is great as well.
  - c Try Embassy, It's always really busy and the music's great. They have live bands every Friday as well.
  - d Try the post office. They usually give you a good rate, especially for dollars.
  - e Try the Natural Fitness Centre. They have a good gym and a nice swimming pool.
  - f Try the big department store in town. They sell a good selection of different things.
  - g It depends what style you want.
  - h Try the Imperial. The rooms are nice and it's not very expensive. It's good value for money.
- 2 Work in pairs. Discuss what you think the words in bold in Exercise 1 mean.
- 3 Now practise having conversations.

Student A: you are a tourist. Ask questions 1–8 from Exercise 1.

Student B: suggest good places you know in your town or city.

Then change roles.

#### LISTENING

- 4 Listen to a conversation in a hotel between two guests and a receptionist. Answer these questions.
  - Which two questions from Exercise 1 do the guests ask?
  - Which places does the receptionist recommend?



5 Choose the correct option. Then listen again and check your answers

- 1 How can I / I can help you?
- 2 We like / We'd like to go out for dinner.
- 3 It's not the cheapest / cheaper place in town
- 4 Need we / Do we need to book?
- 5 Which / What time would you like your table?
- 6 What's the easy / easiest way to get there?
- 7 It takes / spends about half an hour to walk there
- 8. Do / Would you like me to book one for you?
- 9 There's a nice market in / at the main square
- 10 No problem. It's my / It was pleasure.

Wol

. Ar

. H

. W

. D

. D

GRAN

Supe To com adjecti To mak

- add -

– for a

- for lo most A smal

7 Rea and sup

Adj

go

fas

sm

hot

inte



- Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
- Me you happy to go to a more expensive restaurant the food there is very good?
- How often do you eat fish and seafood? Do you have a favourite place to eat fish?
- what kind of places do you eat in when you are in a town you don't know?
- Do you prefer walking or taking a taxi? Why?
- po you like shopping in markets or do you prefer other kinds of places? Why?
- Do you usually buy presents when you go on holiday? If yes, what kind of things do you buy?

### GRAMMAR

#### Superlatives

a compare more than two things, use the + a superlative

o nake superlative adjectives:

- add est to short, one-syllable adjectives.
- for adjectives ending in a consonant, double the
- to adectives ending in -y, change to -iest.
- to longer adjectives (two or more syllables), use the most + adjective.

Asmall number of superlative adjectives are irregular.

1 Read the information in the Grammar box and complete the table with the correct superlative forms.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good	better	
bad	worse	
fast	faster	
small	smaller	
big	bigger	
strange	stranger	
not	hotter	
early	earlier	
boring	more boring	
interesting	more interesting	

Check your ideas on page 181 and do Exercise 1.

15

8	Complete
	Complete the conversations with the superlative
	form of the adjectives in brackets.
	1 A: What's

way to get back to our hotel? (quick)

B: Take the underground. It's only two stops away.

2 A: How was Vienna?

B: Amazing. It's one of\_ \_cities I've ever been to. (beautiful)

3 A: Is it an expensive hotel?

B: Well, it's not \_\_ place to stay, but it's not either. (cheap, expensive)

4 A: Is the crime bad there?

B: Yes. It's one of \_\_ \_ cities in the world! (dangerous)

5 A: How was your journey?

B: It was awful - one of \_ flights I've had. (bad)

6 A: How's your course going?

B: It's impossible! It's \_\_\_ \_ thing I've done! (difficult)

For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 182.

#### SPEAKING

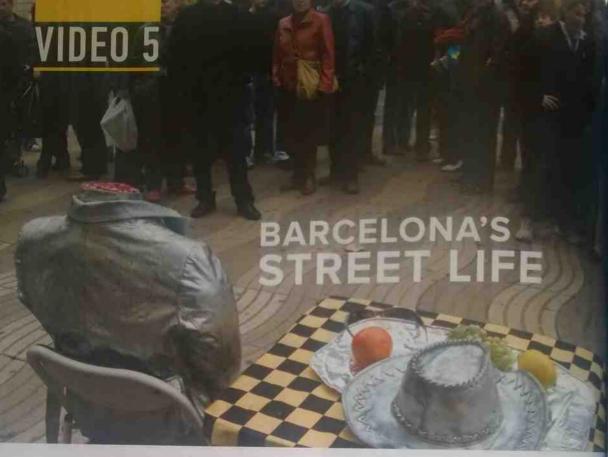
- Work in groups. Make questions by changing the words in italics into superlatives.
  - 1 Where's good place to live in your town / city?
  - 2 And where's bad place to live?
  - 3 Where's old part of your town / city?
  - 4 What's easy way to get around your town / city?
  - 5 Where's cheap place to eat?
  - 6 What's big city in your country?
  - 7 What's beautiful part of your country?
  - 8 What are popular places for tourists?
  - 9 Who's famous person from your country?
  - 10 What's delicious food from your country?
- 10 Now discuss your answers to the questions. Do you agree with the other people in the group?

### SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- Listen and repeat the sounds with /o/, /u:/, /3:/ and /a:/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using the words in the box. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

world route half booked would value journey car

For further revision, see Exercises 1-3 on page 182.



#### 1 Look at the photo. Discuss the questions.

- · What do you think of this kind of street performer?
- Do you sometimes see similar people where you live?
- What other kinds of street performers have you seen? Where?
- Do you ever give money to people performing on the street?

#### Watch the video. Decide if these sentences are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 You see all of the following:
  - a jazz band
  - people dancing
  - a clown
  - a woman performing magic
  - a man selling art.
  - a shop selling flowers
- 2 All the speakers like the Rambias
- 3 All the speakers are from Barcelona,

#### 3 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

- Have you been to Barcelona? If yes, what did you think of it?
- . If no, would you like to go there?
- Did you like any of the performers in the video?

4 Read the sentences below. Then watch the video again and put the sentences in the order you hear them.

1\_2\_3\_4\_5\_6\_

- a In the Ramblas you can find ... music from Argential from Spain, from Africa, from all the world.
- b You'll always find a friend on the streets.
- c There's never nobody in the Ramblas. Every hours, the day there's life.
- d You have traffic, you have people, you have tourist you have thieves, you have performers.
- e It's worth coming to Barcelona.
- f If you walk past, by the flower shops, I mean, the will they build it up is beautiful.

#### 5 Work in groups. Make a list of:

- · the three best streets where you live.
- · the three best places you have ever visited.

Discuss your reasons. Then share your ideas with the class

#### UNDERSTANDING FAST SPEECH

6 Read and listen to this extract from the video said fast, then slow. Stressed sounds are in CAPITALS.

like Any TIME you go OUT of your HOUSE, there's ALways SOMEthing going ON.

You try! Practise saying the extract with the same stressed sounds.

# REVIEW 5

P	AD.	AMMAR
L	GIN	omplete the text with one word in each space.
1	Hi 2-	best food in the world! I cooked some a and it was one of the 4
	of 6	eaten in my life. The eaten in my life. The ly problem was my wife didn't like it. She said it was hot. She also said I spend too 7
		ne cooking – and not <sup>8</sup> time talking to her.
2	pe	at the verbs in the questions in the present erfect and the answers in the past simple.
	1	A: you / ever / be to Brazil?
		B: Yes. I / go there last year on holiday.
	2	A: your son / see the new Disney film?
		B: Yes. he / see it at the weekend, actually.
	3	A: they / visit the USA before?
		B: Yeah, they / come to see us here two years ago.
	4	A: she / meet your parents yet?
		B: Yes. we / have lunch with them on Sunday.
	5	A: you / try Indian food?
		B. Once, in London, but I / not like it.
3	C	orrect the mistake in each sentence.
	1	That's her goodest book.
	2	He have done this hundreds of times before.
	3	The most easy way to get there is by taxi.
	4	I've never readed anything by Günter Grass.
		There not enough time to do it now.
		There are too much guns in our society.
		The Alhambra is most beautiful building in Spain.
		I've played a really good computer game yesterday.
		There isn't enough places to park in the city centre.
		His books are too much long.
4	or et	Listen and complete the sentences with ne word in each space. Contractions ( <i>I'm</i> , don't c.) are one word.
	1	She'sfunniest
	179	people
	2	I've there, but
	3	pollution and there
		Cals of the
	4	in Madrid
		900
	3	There chairs here

help.

Work in pairs. Compare your ideas. Listen

happened.

again to check.

ch the

entina,

our of

ourists,

the way

eas

the are in

e'5

he

der

VOCABULARY

0	Replace each adjective in opposite from a-j.	Sentences 1 to the
	opposite from a-j.	ochiences 1–10 with its

1	The mountains are quite far.		
2	We had a voncer!	a	stressful
3	We had a very relaxing week.	b	expensive
4	It's a very exciting film.	C	right
7	It's very cheap there.	d	fast
5	We're on the wrong platform.		early
6	I was very sad to leave.		impossible
7	We arrived late.		
	It's easy to park the car there.	g	boring
9	We took the	h	dangerous
	We took the slow train.	E	happy
10	It's a very safe place to live.	j	near

# 7 Put the words into two groups – problems, or trains and stations.

buy a single enter your PIN feel ill first class	get a discount hurt myself lose my bags make a mess	pay in cash steal money
---	--	----------------------------

# 8 Match the verbs in the box to the groups of words they go with in 1–8.

arrive book	break charge	get off lose	miss take
~ the bu	is / ~ at the ne	ext stop / ~ th	e train

- 3  $\sim$  in London at eight /  $\sim$  late / the train  $\sim$ s at nine 4  $\sim$  a flight /  $\sim$  a table /  $\sim$  a taxi for you
- 5 ~ my flight / ~ my train / ~ my bus
- 6 ~ a glass / ~ a window / ~ my glasses
- $7 \sim a lot / \sim for the motorway / \sim £60 an hour$
- 8 ~ my keys / ~ the match / ~ money

#### 9 Complete the text with one word in each space. The first letters are given.

My grand	father v	as born ir	1900 a	nd 'd	in
2000 or	e day at	ter his 10	Oth birth	day. He	had an
2ac	an	fell down	the stai	irs. He h	ad several
ions in hi	s life - h	ie was a ta	axi 3dr		, a teacher
and for	20 years	, he was a	politicia	n. He hi	ad quite a
lot of suc	cess. He	wanted t	petter *p	_	transport
and how	anted n	ore peop	e to cy.		_ when
-thermon	onle just	wanted n	tore cars	and to	build more
Burnet	F	ecause of	f his wor	k, they	created the
Winds faithful	7la	in th	e countr	y. Lots c	of people
don't like	politicia	ins, but m	y grandf	ather wa	as very
	1 r	eally miss	him.		
and he woother per first bike	vanted nople justE 7la politicia	ore people wanted n	le to <sup>5</sup> cy. nore cars f his wor e countr y grandf	s and to k, they o	when build more created the of people





# IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- order and pay in restaurants
- understand menus
- describe different kinds of food
- agree and disagree with statements
- talk about what you eat

## **WORDS FOR UNIT 11**

Work in pairs. Match the phrases to the photos.

ask for the bill buy some sweets a cookery book cut some onion fried chicken a fruit dessert

look at the menu a lot of garlic a lot of spices order food online a pregnant mum sell soft drinks

steak and chips tomato soup a vegetable dish want to lose weight

- Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

Student A: point to a photo.

Student B: say the words.













#### SPEAKING

- 1 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - · How often do you eat in restaurants?
  - · Do you have a favourite restaurant?
  - · What do you usually eat when you go out for a meal?
  - · Who usually pays?

#### **VOCABULARY** Restaurants

2 Complete the dialogues with the pairs of words in the box.

10	the bill + service course + like dessert + the ice cream	order + the soup ready + decide a table + booked	
1	A: Hello. Do you have?		
2	A: No, I'm afraid not.  A: Are you to  B: Not yet. We're still try want.	order? ving to what we	
3	A: OK, so can I take you B: Yes. Thanks. For start please.	ır next please, sir ters, I'll have,	?
4	A: And for your main the chief		

5 A: Would you like any \_\_\_\_\_\_?
B: Yes, please. Can I have \_\_\_\_\_\_?
6 A: Can we have \_\_\_\_\_\_, please?
B: Yes, of course. Here you are.
A: Thank you. Oh! It's quite expensive. Does this include \_\_\_\_\_\_?
B: Yes, we add 10%.
Work in pairs. For each dialogue (1–6) in

Exercise 2, decide whether A is the waiter

- LISTENING
- 4 Listen to two English people in a restaurant in France. Answer these questions
  - a What three problems do they have?
  - b What do they order?
  - c Do they enjoy the meal?

waitress or the customer.

- d Do you think they are going to leave any extra money for the waiter? Why? / Why not?
- Work in pairs. Who / What do these adjectives describe? Discuss your ideas. The listen again to check.

- COLUMN	gain to che	CK.		160
busy	delicious	finished	full	well-cook



- 6 Work in groups. Which of these sentences do you agree with? Why? There is an example for the first sentence.
  - · French food is the best in the world.
    - A: I haven't tried French food, so I don't know. Maybe it's true.
    - B: I've tried it, but I prefer Japanese food.
  - · It's always better to book a table before you go out for dinner.
  - · Waiters and waitresses usually just recommend expensive things.
  - ' If you have a starter and a main course, it's better not to have a dessert.
  - · It's better if restaurants include service in the bill.

# DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

# Ordering food and drink

We can use different phrases to order food and drink. They all mean the same thing.

For starters, l'Il have the soup, please.

<sup>Pd</sup> like the chicken, please.

n

Can I get a steak, please? Can I have the ice cream?

- Listen to the sentences in the box first slow, then fast. Repeat what you hear.
- Put a-f in the correct order in the two conversations.

Conversation 1 1\_2\_3\_4\_5\_6\_

- a Yes. Thanks. I'll have the salad for starters, please.
- b Can I get the chicken, please?
- c Are you ready to order?
- d Really? Oh. OK. Well, can I have the fish then, please?
- e Certainly. And for your main course?
- f I'm afraid the chicken's finished.

Conversation 2 1\_\_2\_\_3\_\_4\_\_5\_\_6\_

- a Yes, please. Can I get the ice cream?
- b Without, please, so just black.
- c Would you like any dessert?
- d I'm really full. I'll just have a coffee, please.
- e Of course. And for you, madam?
- f With milk or without?
- 9 Listen and check your answers. Then work in pairs. Practise reading out the conversations.

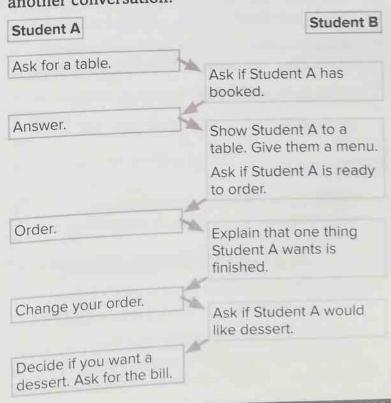
#### **CONVERSATION PRACTICE**

Work in pairs. You are going to roleplay a conversation like the one you heard in the listening.

Student A: you are a customer. Look at File 9 on page 195. Decide what you'd like to have.

Student B: you are a waiter / waitress. Choose questions from these pages to ask. Remember them.

Now roleplay the conversation. Use the guide below to help you. Then change roles and have another conversation.



21 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.

# WHAT'S THIS ON THE MENU?

#### VOCABULARY Food

1 Match the kinds of food in the box to the photos.

beans dairy products	fish fruit meat	nuts seafood vegetables
-------------------------	-----------------------	-------------------------------

- 2 Work in pairs. Decide which word does not go in each group (1-7). Use the correct sentence from a-g to explain why. The first one is done for you.
  - 1 salt / sugar / pepper / spices / water They're all things that we add for flavour except water.
  - 2 potatoes / pasta / cream / rice / bread
  - 3 wine / milk / cheese / butter / cream
  - 4 apples / oranges / eggs / kiwis / bananas
  - 5 juice / coffee / carrots / tea / beer
  - 6 lemons / onions / garlic / potatoes / spinach
  - 7 tomatoes / beef / lamb / pork / steak
  - a They're all basic foods except ...
  - b They're all vegetables except ...
  - c They're all things that we add for flavour except ...
  - d. They're all drinks except ...
  - e They're all kinds of meat except ...
  - f They're all dairy products except ...
  - g They're all kinds of fruit except ...
- 3 Which of the foods from Exercise 2 can you see in the photos?
- Work in pairs. Practise asking about and explaining the names of different foods.

Student A: look at File 7 on page 194.

Student B: look at File 12 on page 196.

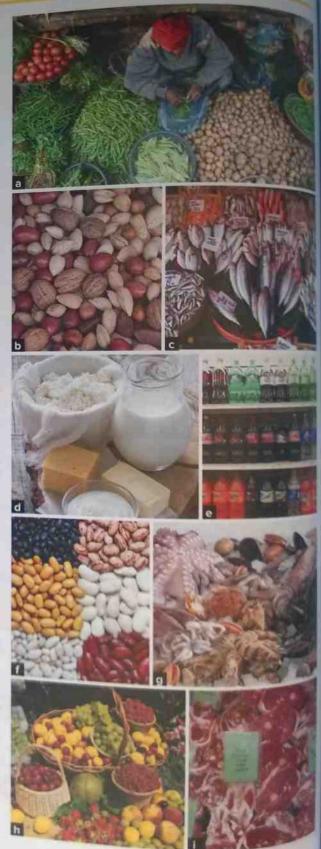
#### LISTENING

- 5 Listen to three conversations connected to food. What is happening in each conversation?
  - a. They're discussing a place to go and eat.
  - b. They're discussing a place to go on holiday.
  - c They're discussing a food programme on TV.
  - d They're discussing things on a menu.
  - e They're discussing what they are going to cook.

Conversation 1:

Conversation 2:

Conversation 3:



Listen again and complete the sentences with two words in each space. Contractions  that's, I've, etc.) are one word.  Conversation 1  Conversation 2  4 A. No? Why not?	from the Grammar box.  We use to agree with a statement with not or never.  We use to agree with a positive statement in the present simple where we have a sometimes use / or / don't.  We sometimes use other auxiliary verbs like have, con to disagree.  Generally the control of th
B: It's and I don't like planes.  5 C: Hmm. I'm not sure. What's like? Is it all meat and barbecues?  B: No, not at all! There's lots of great Asian food and all kinds of different things.  6 B: Yeah. In fact, I had some of the best food I've	<ul> <li>2 don't really like.</li> <li>3 eat or drink too much.</li> <li>4 don't eat or drink enough.</li> <li>Take turns to start. Your partners should agree of disagree.</li> </ul>
there.  A: It sounds great.  Conversation 3  7 B: Me too. Don't you like any seafood?	For example:  A: I love cheese, I eat it every day.  B: Me too.  C: Oh, I don't. I don't really like cheese.
A: Not really prawns before, but I prefer meat.  8 B: Hmm. Good choice. I saw Jamie Oliver on TV last night and he made a prawn curry.  C: Oh yeah. I saw that too. Maybe I thought of it!  9 A: OK, I think I'll have the steak.  B: Oh right – OK. I'm going to have the lamb.	10 Complete these sentences so that they are true for you.  1 I love  2 I've never had food.  3 I can't very well.  4 I've seen several times.  5 I'd really like to  6 I last weekend.
<ul> <li>Work in groups. Discuss these questions.</li> <li>What different restaurants are there near your home? What are they like?</li> <li>What countries have you been to? What was the food like?</li> <li>What cookery programmes do you know? Do you watch them? How often?</li> </ul> GRAMMAR	<ul> <li>Work in pairs. Read out your sentences to each other. Your partner should agree or disagree. Trand find out more by asking a question.</li> <li>For example: <ul> <li>A: I've never had Russian food.</li> </ul> </li> <li>B: Me neither. Are there any Russian restaurants near here?</li> <li>or</li> <li>A: I've never had Russian food.</li> <li>B: Oh, I have.</li> </ul>
Me too, me neither and auxiliaries  Look at two ways speakers in the listening agreed and disagreed with each other.  Agree  A: I can't decide.  A: OK. That's fine with me.  Disagree  A: Oh, I don't like seafood.  A: Really? I'd really like to go there.  B: Me neither.  B: Me too.  B: Really? I do!  B: Oh, I wouldn't.	A: Really? Was it nice?  B: Yes. Delicious.  For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 183.  SPEAKING  Work on your own. Using your own language, write a menu for a restaurant in your country. write a menu for a restaurant in your country. Have six to eight dishes including starters, main courses and desserts.
	the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on their menu are in English. Then the things on the things of



#### GRAMMAR

#### Explaining quantity

Some words that we use to show quantity go with both countable and uncountable nouns.

Other words only go with one of these kinds of nouns.

1 Look at the pictures and the sentences (1-5) that show quantity with an uncountable noun (meat). Match them to the sentences (a-e) that show the same quantities with a countable noun (vegetables).



1 leat a lot of meat.



2 Leat quite a lot of meat.



3 | eat some meat.



4 I don't eat much meat.



5 I don't eat any meat.

- a I eat quite a lot of vegetables.
- b I don't eat many vegetables.
- c leat a lot of vegetables.
- d I don't eat any vegetables.
- e I eat some vegetables.
- 2 Work in pairs. Answer these questions.
  - 1 Which words in Exercise 1 go with both countable and uncountable nouns?
  - 2 Which word only goes with countable nouns?
  - 3 Which word only goes with uncountable nouns?
  - 4 Which words do we often use in negative sentence?
- Check your ideas on page 183 and do Exercise 1.
- 3 Complete the sentences with one word in each space.

1 I'm a vegetarian. I don't eat	meat or fish
---------------------------------	--------------

- 2 I don't eat \_\_\_\_ chocolate bars maybe just one or two a month.
- 3 I had \_\_\_\_\_ biscuits half an hour ago, so I'm not very hungry.
- 4 Most days, I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ time to cook, so just do something quick and easy.
- 5 A: Did you add \_\_\_\_\_\_ sait to this? I can't taste it
  B: Oh no! I forgot.
- 6 A: Do you eat a \_\_\_\_\_ of pasta?
  - B: Yeah, \_\_\_\_ a lot, but I sometimes have potatoes instead.
- Work in groups. Tell each other how much / how many of these things you eat or drink. Follow the example below. Who has the best diet?

l eat a lot of fruit - maybe three or four pieces a do

chicken coffee

fish

red meat soft drinks sweets vegetables

For further practice, see Exercises 2 and 3 on page 183.

# Y EATING HABITS

men a diet at the moment, so I'm eating a lot of cabbage I'm quite bored of it, but I already weigh five kilos less and I did last month. In the past, I was quite unhealthy. I are the of sweets and cake and things like that, but I've stopped

AGUSTIN

In from Argentina and we eat a lot of meat, especially beef in fact I read somewhere recently that Argentinians ear more near per person than anyone else in the world! Maybe this is hears we have the best steaks! Some people think we don't at a lot of vegetables, but that's not true. We usually add them the main dishes, though, instead of cooking them separately.

#### ROBIN

I don't eat any meat or fish. I also avoid animal products, so I don't eat any cheese or milk or butter I don't wear leather either. I cat a lot of vegetables - fresh and raw usually - and quite a lot of nuts and beans. Recently, I've started eating a lot of papayas too. They're a kind of fruit They're very good for you. They're full of vitamins.

#### SOPHIA

I'm pregnant at the moment and my eating habits have completely changed. I'm trying to eat healthy food - a lot of salads and fruit and vegetables - but sometimes I just really want a burger. Or two! I also want unusual combinations of food. For example, yesterday morning I had chocolate cake and cheese - for breakfast!

#### READING

- Read the article about eating habits. Which of the four people do you think eats the healthiest food? Why?
- 6 Decide if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).
  - Hanna is trying to lose weight.
  - 7 She doesn't eat a lot of sweets or cake.
  - 3 Agustin thinks some excellent food comes from his
  - 4 Argentinians don't eat many vegetables.
  - 5 Robin eats some dairy products.
  - 6 He doesn't usually cook his vegetables.
  - 7 Sophia has recently had a baby.
  - 8 She sometimes wants to eat some strange things.
- 7 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.
  - · Which person is most similar to you? Why?
  - Do you think it's good to go on a diet sometimes? Why? / Why not?
  - · Do you like raw food? If yes, what kind?
  - · Are your eating habits the same as they were in the past - or have they changed?

#### UNDERSTANDING VOCABULARY

Forming negatives by adding un-

We often form negatives of adjectives by adding the

healthy - unhealthy

anagi - unusual

Complete the sentences with either the adjectives in the box or their negative form.

employed popular friendly happy tidy healthy forgettable

- 1 I don't eat any burgers or chocolate. I try to just eat food like salads and fruit.
- 2 I spent two years working in a restaurant and hated it! It was a very \_\_\_\_\_ time in my life.
- 3 Luigi's is the most \_\_ restaurant in town. You have to book if you want to eat there.
- \_ at the moment, but I'm looking for a iob.
- 5 I work part-time in a café. The people I work with are lovely. They're all very \_\_
- . He always makes a terrible 6 He's very \_ mess when he uses the kitchen.
- The girls at my school learn to cook, but the boys don't. It's really\_
- 8 My dad took me to an amazing restaurant for my \_ experience. birthday. It was an \_\_\_\_\_
- Can you think of two more adjectives that you can add un- to?
- Work in groups. Tell each other about: 10
  - 1 two unusual things you've eaten / drunk
  - 2 an unforgettable meal you've had.
  - 3 something that you know is unhealthy, but that you still love eating.
  - 4 something that makes you unhappy
  - 5 something that you think is unfair.

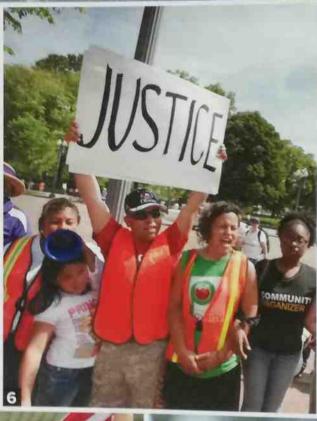
### SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- Listen and repeat the sounds with /10/, /eo/ and /A/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using these words. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

unusual. here: anywhere vegetarian dalry beer

For further revision, see Exercises 1-3 on page 184.













# IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- talk about health problems
- give advice
- say no to offers and advice
- talk about how you feel and why
- understand some news stories

## **WORDS FOR UNIT 12**

1 Work in pairs. Match the phrases to the photos. Which phrase does not match a photo?

a big storm complain to the staff fans celebrating get some fresh air have a big smile I burnt my hand it's badly damaged my stomach hurts not interested in politics

protest against it put ice on it put on sun cream read the news she's a bit upset she's fallen asleep stop infection stop shouting!

- Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

Student A: point to a photo.

Student B: say the words.

Match each of the phrases above to a person you know. Then work in pairs and explain your choices.

For example:

get some fresh air – my friend Karen. She lives in the countryside.

read the news – my dad. He reads the news a lot.









# ARE YOU OK?













#### LISTENING

1 Find each of these parts of the body in the pictures. What problems do you think each person has? Why?

arm	foot	head	stomach
back	hand	leg	21323

- 2 Listen to five conversations and match them to the pictures. There is one picture you don't need.
- Work in pairs. Decide which pair of words goes with which conversation. Try to explain what they said.
  - a sick / fresh air
  - b doctor / a bad cough
  - c hurts / lie down
  - d play / warm up
  - e broken / cancel
- 4 Listen again and read the audio script on page 208 to check your ideas.

#### VOCABULARY Health problems Complete the sentences with these words. headache cough hurts sick burnt hungry infection cut stiff cold Do you have any aspirin? I have a \_ 2 Do you have a plaster? I've \_ my foot on a piece of broken glass. 3 You shouldn't carry that if your back \_ sounds terrible. Maybe you should stop smoking. 5 I'm really \_\_\_\_\_. I haven't eaten all day. 6 Ineeded antibiotics to stop the 7 I'm going to take the day off. I have a don't want anyone else to get it. 8 Can we go a bit slower? My legs are a bit

#### 6 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

9 | feel terrible. I think I'm going to be

10 A: What's up? Why did you shout?

after my run yesterday.

. Have you hurt / cut / burnt yourself recently? How?

It's OK. I just need to put some ice on it.

my hand on the hot frying pan.

- · Have you ever broken a bone? Which one? How?
- When was the last time you had a cold / a cough / a headache – or were sick?
- Did you go to the doctor? If yes, what did they do?

#### GRAMMAR

#### should I shouldn't

We use should(n't) + infinitive to give advice.

Should shows we think it's a good idea to do the action.

Shouldn't shows we think it's a bad idea.

#### 7 Complete the sentences with should or shouldn't.

- A: That cough sounds terrible. Maybe you \_\_\_\_\_
  stop smoking.
  - B: I know, but that's easy for you to say!
- 2 A: You \_\_\_\_ carry that if you have a bad back. Let me take it.
  - B: Oh, thanks.
- 3 A: You \_\_\_\_\_ sit in the sun. You can burn easily.
  - B: It's fine. I've put on some sun cream.
- 4 A: That's a bad cough.
  - B: I know. I \_\_\_\_\_ go to the doctor's.
- 5 A: He looks really tired.
  - B: I know. He \_\_\_\_\_ work so hard.
  - A: Yeah, He \_\_\_\_\_\_ take a holiday.

# Check your ideas on page 184 and do Exercise 1.

Work in pairs. Give two or three pieces of advice for each person in the pictures on page 106.

For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 184.

### PRONUNCIATION

- 9 Listen to six sentences with should / shouldn't first fast, then slow. Notice that you sometimes don't hear the /d/ or /t/ at the end of the words.
- 10 Listen again and repeat what you hear.

## **DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

#### Saying no

When we say no to offers and advice, we often give a reason. It's polite.

- A: Maybe you should lie down.
- B: No, it's OK. I think I'm just hungry.
- A: Are you sure?
- B: Honestly, I'll be fine after I have something to eat.
- Write four similar conversations starting with sentences 1–4. Say no to the advice or offers. Give reasons. Use your own ideas, or phrases from the box below.
  - 1 Maybe you should go to hospital.
  - 2 Would you like any more to eat?
  - 3 Maybe you should take the day off.
  - 4 You shouldn't stay here on your own.

No. thanks. I'm fine.

No, it's OK, it's not serious.

Honestly, it's just a small cut.

Really, it's just a cold.

I just need to sit down.

I just need to put some ice on it.

I'll be OK in a few days.

I'll be fine in a moment.

12 Read out your conversations in pairs.

#### CONVERSATION PRACTICE

13 Have conversations with different students. Use the guide below to help you. For each new conversation, change partner and choose a different problem.

Student A	Student B
Are you OK? I How are you?	Say your problem.
Maybe you should I shouldn't	Reject the advice.
Are you sure?	Yes + reason

22 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.

# FEELING GOOD?

#### SPEAKING

- 1 Read the short text on page 109. Then work in groups and discuss the questions.
  - Why do you think Switzerland was at the top of the list?
  - · Why do you think Syria was near the bottom?
  - Why do you think the Texan women were happier with friends than with their children?
  - · What things make you happy?
  - Do you think governments can improve people's happiness?

#### **VOCABULARY** Feelings

2 Decide if the words in the box describe positive or negative feelings.

а					
	angry	excited	relaxed	tired	
	annoyed	happy	stressed	upset	

- 3 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 2.
  - Some friends are getting divorced. I'm very
     about it. I cried when I heard the news.
  - 2 On my way to work yesterday, someone almost hit my car. We had an argument and I shouted at him. I was very \_\_\_\_\_!
  - 3 I'm really \_\_\_\_\_\_. I passed my driving test.
  - 4 I worked from six until seven today, so I was very
    \_\_\_\_\_ when I got home. I fell asleep watching
    TV:
  - 5 I have to do a lot of work this week, and my boss isn't very patient, so I'm feeling very \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.
  - 6 I was a bit \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ because I had to wait for 20 minutes to pay the bill. I actually **complained** to the manager about it.
  - 7 He's much more \_\_\_\_\_\_ now he's on holiday. He's actually started smiling and joking again! The last few months have been terrible for him.
  - 8 I'm going to go to France with my school. I'm really because it's my first time away without my parents. I'm really **looking forward** to it.
  - Work in pairs. Answer these questions about the words in bold from Exercise 3. Use a dictionary if you need to.
    - · Why might you cry?
    - · Why might you shout at someone?
    - · What other tests do people do?
    - · In what places do people often fall asleep?
    - · Why else might you complain in a restaurant?
    - · When might you smile?
    - · What other things might you look forward to?
- 5 Tell a partner about the last time you did four of the things in Exercise 4.

#### LISTENING

- 6 Listen to a woman talking about what she did yesterday. For each of the nine things she talks about, choose how she felt.
  - 1 tired / happy / annoyed
  - 2 angry / upset / excited
  - 3 stressed / tired / relaxed
  - 4 happy / angry / bored
  - 5 positive / annoyed / stressed
  - 6 bored / angry / surprised
  - 7 worried / happy / annoyed
  - 8 excited / relaxed / tired
  - 9 bored / tired / stressed
- 7 Work in pairs. Why did she have each feeling?
- 8 Listen again and check.

#### **GRAMMAR**

#### because, so and after

We use because, so and after to join two parts of a sentence

She was upset because her boss shouted at her.

The bus was full, so I couldn't sit and read.

After the meeting finished, I sat and thought about everything I had to do.

After dinner, I watched the news on TV.

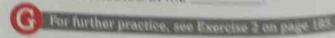
9	Comp	lete t	he rul	les with	i because,	se or	afte
---	------	--------	--------	----------	------------	-------	------

1 -	shows when a situation or action have
2	shows why a situation or action happen
3	shows the result of a situation or action

- 4 The phrases following \_\_\_\_ and so aways a verb, but \_\_\_\_ can start a phrase that one a noun and no verb.
- Check your ideas on page 185 and do Exercise 1.

#### 10 Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

- I'm really stressed because
- I was stressed, so \_\_\_\_\_\_
- I was really tired after
- · After work, \_\_\_\_\_
- · He cried
- She shouted at me.



Work in groups. Think of a day and describe to the group. Say what you did, where you and who you met. Describe your feelings.

# pappiness around the world

ut what she hings she

ch feeling?

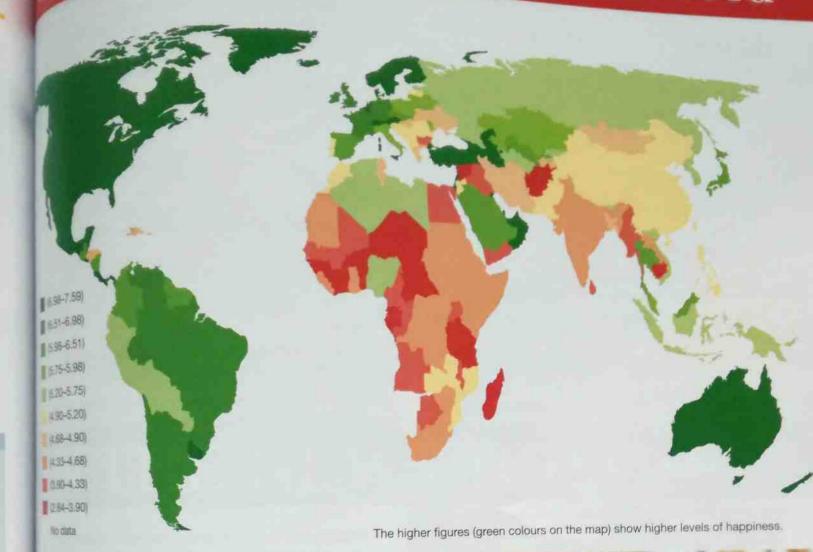
of a sentence.

about

or after.
action happens.
tion happens
on or action
so always have
se that only has

wn ideas.

d describe it ere you went elings.



In 2015, the World Happiness Report found that Switzerland was the happiest country in the world and yna was one of the unhappiest. The report shows that money is not the only thing for a happy life. For example, Sugapore was the third richest country the world but only 24th on the list, and Costa Rica is twelfth in the list, and only the 68th richest country. Research by Daniel Kahneman found that this was also true for individual people. He asked some women in Texas to write down how they elt at different times in their day. Most of them were happy most of the time and poor! The thing that made them appliest was spending time with friends and relatives. They enjoyed this more than oking after their children! They didn't travelling to and from work. low some economists think that portments should do more to improve hopes happiness and not only worry shoul the economy and money.



# GOOD AND BAD NEWS

## **SPEAKING**

- 1 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.
  - How often do you read / watch / listen to the news?
  - Where do you get your news from? Why?
  - How do you feel about these different kinds of news?
     What kind do you read most?

business crime

entertainment foreign

politics science sport weather

## VOCABULARY In the news

- Work in pairs. Decide if you think each headline describes good news or bad news.
  - PLANS TO BUILD 800 NEW HOMES
  - New supermarket opens in town centre
  - Teachers protest against pay cuts
  - PRIME MINISTER'S CAR HIT WITH EGGS
  - Bad weather causes delay at airport
  - 6 Country celebrates Independence Day
  - FIRE DAMAGES FACTORY
  - EIGHT KILLED IN MOTORWAY ACCIDENT
- 3 Match 1-4 with a-d, then match 5-8 with e-h.

1 build

a a new restaurant / to the public

2 open

b the car in front / your head

3 protest

c against job cuts / against changes to

working hours

4 hit

d a new stadium / more hospitals

5 cause

e the environment / your health

6 celebrate

f animals for sport / ten people

7 damage

g serious damage / a lot of problems

8 kill

h a win / your birthday

4 Work in pairs.

Student A: close your book.

Student B: say a verb.

build

Student A: say a phrase.

build a new stadium

Work in groups. Use the phrases in Exercise 3 as true things about where you live.

For example:

The government building is sometimes open to the public.

There was a terrible accident last week. A bus killed three people.

### READING

- 6 Read the four short newspaper articles on page 111. Decide in which article people felt
  - a happy.
  - b excited.
  - c angry.
  - d upset.
- 7 Work in pairs. Compare your answers and explain your ideas.
- 8 Work in pairs. Say what you remember about these numbers from the article.
  - 1 2.500
  - 2 a small number
  - 3 77
  - 4 2-1
  - 5 eleven
  - 6 over 100
  - 7 hundreds
  - 8 six months
- 9 Read again and check your ideas.

## **SPEAKING**

Think of a news story that made you feel happy upset or angry. Spend two minutes planning how to explain the story. Use a dictionary if you need to. Then work in groups and share your stories. Do you all feel the same way about the stories.

## SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- 11 Listen and repeat the sounds with /h/, ill and /ð/. Are any of them difficult for you to hold or say?
- 12 Work in groups. Listen to eight sentence using these words. Together, try to write their down. Then listen again and finish writing their listen again.

birthday

headache

hospital

without

m

th

W

TI

ad

tir

lo

CE

CE

B

Di

Di

W

ge

Ti

Di

at

mi

14

Air

For further revision, see Exercises 1-3 on page 185

ise 3 to

# IN THE NEWS TODAY:

Police have stopped a protest by workers at the main national airline office. After yesterday's news that the company are planning to cut 2,500 jobs, workers met this morning to express their feelings. The police took action when a small number of people started throwing bottles.

Fans of the Black Bears are today still celebrating after their team won the King's Cup for the first time in 77 years. In the most exciting final in a long time, the Bears won 2-1. The winning goal came in the last minute of the game, and caused celebrations across the whole city.

Big storms in the Pacific Ocean have killed eleven people and caused serious damage to many parts of Vanuatu. In the capital, Port Vila, the bad weather destroyed over 100 houses. Families are now sleeping outside - and hoping that the government is going to send help.

Tickets for a concert by the pop group One Dimension went on sale today at the national stadium. Hundreds of fans queued through the night to get the best seats. This is going to be the group's only concert this year because singer Harry Payne is going to get married in the autumn and is planning to then take a break for six months



nappy g how ories. ries?

the

cilled

elt:

out

IEW hear

nces 1em them



1 Look at the photo and read the text to find out what initiation is.

**Initiation** is when someone does something to become part of a group. For example, it could be when:

- a child becomes an adult.
- a person joins a religion.
- a person joins an army or a gang.
- a person ends their education and begins work.

During the initiation, the person often has to do something difficult or show a skill. For example, they have to do something painful or kill something or concentrate for a long time. They also often change the way they look in some way. For example, someone cuts off all their hair or they have to wear special clothes or make-up. Initiation is often a celebration. People can dance and sing, eat nice food or drink something special and some people give presents or money.

- 2 Work in pairs. What examples of initiation can you think of? What happens?
- 3 Watch part of a programme called *The Beast Hunter*. The presenter of the programme takes part in an initiation ceremony in a village. Which of the things in the text in Exercise 1 do you see? What feelings does he have?

4 Complete the sentences from the video with the nouns in the box. Watch again to chee

100	ooat dance	gloves mind	pain trust	turn 24 hours
1	The boy	struggles not	to show his	
2	After five	e minutes, the		ome off.
3	All too s	oon, it's my _		
4	The pair	ı keeps buildi	ng and it'll la	st for
5	The	ends a	and I'm alone	with my pain
6	I had ho some _	ped that this	ordeal would	I simply eam?
7	Here in	a forest in Bra	azil, I'm losing	g my
8	How dic	I we get on th	0	?
7.0	Touls in	n	Hanna m	actions

- 5 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - What do you think of the presenter and the programme?
  - Would you like to do anything like this?
  - Are you good with pain?
  - What has been your best feeling ever?

## UNDERSTANDING FAST SPEECH

6 Read and listen to this extract from the video said fast, then slow. Stressed sounds at CAPITALS.

when I PUT my HANDS in the ICE WAter, it's the it's the feeling on EARTH. It feels SO GOOD.

You try! Practise saying the extract with the same stressed sounds.

RE

GRA

con space

2 A

3 A

5 If 6 TI

7 D

Cho

1 ln 2 Th

3 You

5 1 c

6 Ih

8 Th

be

Corr

1 A:

2 A: B:

3 WE

4 Th

5 We

one vetc.)

1 We

2 I we

3 The

4

5 They didn't
6 Complete the sentences with these adjectives.  annoyed busy excited full tired bored delicious fried healthy unfair
1 The film was really slow and I got quite 2 I can't eat anything else. I'm really 3 For my main course, I'd like the chicken. 4 I'm really about the trip. It's going to be great! 5 How did you make this soup? It's! 6 I have quite a diet.
7 I complained because I was about the terrible service.  8 I was very when I got home last night. I fell asleep on the sofa!  9 You should book a table before you go. They're usually very  10 Male workers get more money than female workers. It's so!  7 Match the verbs in the box to the groups of
words they go with in 1–8.  burn celebrate damage open cancel cut hit order
1 ~ my foot on a piece of glass / ~ jobs / ~ some garlic 2 ~ my hand / ~ the dinner / ~ easily in the sun 3 ~ my head / ~ the car in front / ~ me in the face 4 ~ your health / ~ a building / ~ the environment 5 ~ to the public / ~ at nine o'clock / ~ a new store 6 ~ a starter / ~ online / Are you ready to ~? 7 ~ your birthday / ~ the win / ~ Independence Day 8 ~ the meeting / ~ my flight / ~ my credit card  Complete the text with one word in each space. The first letters are given.  I'm trying to keep my 'we under control. It's hard, because I love eating 'de like cake hard, because I love eating 'de like cake and ice 'ac I Now, though, I eat lots of fruit and and ice 'ac and I don't eat red meat, because it has too much 'bf and I avoid '6s drinks and too because they have too much in them.

eck.

ne

he are in

EST

stressed.





## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · talk about the weather
- talk about possibilities in the future
- ask for more details
- talk about the countryside and the city
- talk about animals
- talk about duration

## **WORDS FOR UNIT 13**

1 Work in pairs. Match the phrases to the photos.

a bit windy chase each other check the forecast climb a hill a cloudy day a crowded street don't let it bite an empty road a farmer using chemicals

an icy road it smells bad jump off a mountain pick up rubbish scared of spiders the top of a wall surrounded by fields want attention a warm summer's day

- 2 191 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

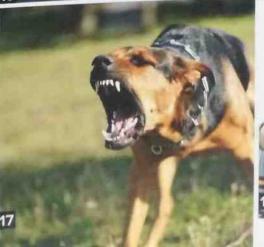
Student A: point to a photo.

Student B: say the words.

Put the phrases into two groups: My life and Not my life. Then work in pairs and explain your choices.











#### **VOCABULARY** Weather

- Which words in the box can you use with each sentence starter (1-4)?
  - 1 It's going to ...
  - 2 It's going to be ...
  - 3 There's going to be a lot of ...
  - 4 There's going to be a ...

cloudy	dry	ice	snow	sunny	wet
cold	hot	rain	storm	warm	windy

- 2 Work in pairs. What's the weather forecast for today? For tomorrow? For the rest of the week?
- 3 Work in groups. Discuss these questions for your country. There is an example for the first question.
  - What's the weather like in the spring? In the summer?
     In the spring, it's usually quite warm. Sometimes it's very sunny, but sometimes there are storms and it rains. Occasionally it snows and it's very cold.
  - · What's the weather like in the autumn? In the winter?
  - · Which season do you like most? Why?
  - · Which places have the best / worst weather? Why?

#### LISTENING

4 Degree Listen to three conversations in which people decide what to do. Complete the table.

Forecas	t	They decide to
3		

## GRAMMAR might and be going to

- 5 Look at these extracts from the listening. Complete the rules in the Grammar box below.
  - 1 It's going to be quite hot. They said it might reach 3 degrees.
  - 2 It might rain this morning, but it's going to be dry the afternoon.
  - 3 I think it's going to be cold. They said it might snow

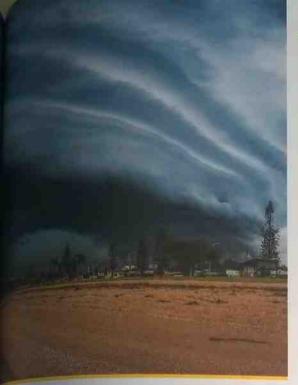
We use	e $might$ + infinitive and be going to + infinitive to take the future.
3	shows certainty.
2	shows possibility.

C	Check your	ideas on page	186 and do	Exercise 1.	
6	Complete	the senten	cae writh	might or the C	OI:

- 6 Complete the sentences with might or the correl form of be going to.
  - 1 A: Do you have any plans for later?
    - B: I \_\_\_\_\_\_ go shopping, but I'm not sure.
  - 2 A: What are they doing to that church?
    - B: They're pulling it down. They \_\_\_\_\_ build some new flats there.
  - 3 A: What are you going to do when you leave school
    - B: I'd like to continue studying, but I to get a job. My family needs the money.
  - 4 A: What's the forecast for tomorrow?

B: It	definitely	be cold - and
they said it		possibly snow!

5 It said on the news it \_\_\_\_\_ continue raining for the next two days. There \_\_\_\_ possibly some flooding.



#### PRONUNCIATION

- Listen to six sentences with might. Notice that you don't always hear the final t. Now listen again and write the sentences you hear.
- Eisten again. Repeat what you hear.
- Write four things you might do in the next week, month or year. Think about why they are just possibilities. Is it because of the weather, money, other people or some other reason?
- Work in groups. Explain your ideas.

For example:

- A I might go to Germany this summer. I'm not sure yet. I need to save some money first.
- B: That sounds good, I might start learning Chinese this year, First, I want to learn more English, but maybe after that ...

For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 186.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

## Short questions

conversation, we often use short questions without verbs.

- Why don't we go to the swimming pool?
- We could do. Which one?
- A The open-oir one.

- 11 Choose the best short question to complete each
  - 1 A: Why don't we go and see Insanity? It's on at
    - B: Yeah, maybe. Where? / What film? / What time?
    - A: There's a showing at 8.40.
  - 2 A: I might go for a walk later.
    - B: Oh, OK. Who with? / When exactly? / Where?
    - A: Just round town. Would you like to come?
  - 3 A: Do you want to go into town later?
    - B: Maybe. How? / What for? / What time?
    - A: I don't know. To maybe have a drink or something.
  - 4 A: Look, we're both stressed. Why don't we take a holiday?
    - B: We could do. How long for? / When? / Where?
    - A: Just a few days.
  - 5. A: Why don't you invite some friends for dinner?
    - B: Who? / Why? / When?
    - A. Do you need a reason? It's just a nice thing to do!
  - 6 A: It's nice and sunny. Why don't we go to the beach?
    - B: Yeah. We could do. Which one? / What time? / How? Is there a bus?
    - A: No, but I can borrow my friend's car.
- 12 Work in pairs. Practise reading out the conversations in Exercise 11.
- 13 Change partners.

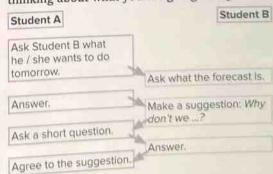
Student A: say the first line of each conversation in Exercise 11.

Student B: ask a different short question.

Student A: give an answer.

#### CONVERSATION PRACTICE

You are going to have similar conversations to 14 the ones you heard in Exercise 4. Work in pairs. Look at the guide below and spend two minutes thinking about what you are going to say.



Now roleplay the conversation. Then change roles and have another conversation.

25 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD ROM.

# **COUNTRY GIRL?**

#### VOCABULARY

### The countryside and the city

- 1 Work in pairs. For each category, decide two things for the city and two for the countryside.
  - 1 the most common animals
  - 2 the main entertainment / activities outside the home
  - 3 things people are often scared of
  - 4 things people often complain about
- 2 Compare your ideas with another pair. Did they have the same ideas as you?
- 3 Work in groups. Check you understand the words in bold. Decide if the descriptions are by people living in the countryside or the city.
  - 1 We're surrounded by big blocks of flats.
  - 2. Hive on a farm, so we're surrounded by fields
  - 3 They grow a lot of rice in the area. It's hot and wet.
  - 4 It's very flat and the wind is always blowing.
  - 5 It's very quiet. We live on the edge of a big forest.
  - 6 We live on top of a hill, so we have a nice view.
  - 7 It's completely empty. There's just a few sheep.
  - 8 The smell is from the big chemical factory near here.
  - 9 There are a lot of empty houses and the roads are in bad condition.
  - 10 The streets are crowded and there's a lot of pollution.
  - 11 The water in the river has a lot of chemicals in it.
  - 12 It's convenient for shops and transport.
  - 13 It's very clean. You don't see any rubbish on the streets.
  - 14 It's dangerous. There are a lot of violent gangs.
- Work in pairs. For each sentence in Exercise 3, say:
  - if you think it's a good environment to live in.
  - a place you know the sentence could describe.

#### READING

5 You are going to read a post on a funny blog called Six reasons not to .... Read the introduction and complete the title of the post.

## SIX REASONS NOT TO

I saw a programme on TV yesterday about a couple building their perfect house. It cost almost a million dollars and they built it in the countryside. They said they wanted to escape the city and the crime and pollution. They wanted fresh air and 'a good environment for their children.' I shouted at the TV. 'Are you crazy? Don't waste all that money – don't move to the countryside!

- 6 What do you think the six reasons might bes
- 7 Read the article and match the headings (a-f) to the paragraphs (1-6). Decide what the write doesn't like about each thing.
  - a The jobs
  - b The smell
  - c The shops
  - d The animals
  - e The scenery
  - f The clothes
- 8 Read the article again and decide if these sentences are true (T) or false (F), according to the article.
  - 1 Everything in the country is natural.
  - 2 A cow once hurt the writer.
  - 3 All the shops close early.
  - 4 It's difficult to keep your clothes clean.
  - 5 Most of the countryside looks the same.
  - 6 There's a good internet connection everywhere.
- 9 Work in pairs. Discuss what you think of each of the six reasons not to live in the country. Do you agree or disagree with them? You might use some of these adjectives.

funny	strange	true	
sad	stupid	wrong	

#### SPEAKING

- 10 Work in pairs. Choose one of these tasks (a orb)
  - a Think of six reasons not to live in the city.
  - b Discuss these questions based on the vocabulary if Exercise 3.
  - Do you think being a farmer is a good job in your country? What are the main things they grow or produce?
  - Are there any factories near you? What do they produce?
  - Are there any forests near where you live? Do you ever go there?
  - What hills or mountains are there near where you live? Have you been to the top of any of them?
  - Do you know any empty buildings in your town? What are they empty?
  - Is your home in a convenient place?
  - · How good is the water and air where you live?





## **VOCABULARY** Animals

Label the photos with the words in the box.

cat	dog	horse	rat	
	and the second	Color Minana	choon	
cow	tox	pig	sheep	

- Work in groups. Look at the photos. Discuss the questions. There is an example for the first question.
  - Which animals do you like? Are there any you don't like?
    - I like horses. They're beautiful animals. I don't like pigs. I think they're really dirty.
  - Can you say one good or bad thing about each animal?
  - Does anyone you know own any of these animals?
- Choose the two words that fit in each sentence (1-8). Cross out the word that doesn't fit. The first one is done for you.
  - 1 They're very friendly. They sometimes sit / jump / ride on you.
  - 2 They need a lot of exercise / noise / attention.
  - 3 I try to avoid them. They often sit / smell / bite.
  - 4 They're very useful. They provide us with disease / milk / leather.
  - 5 They're fun to play with / ride / smell.
  - 6 They sometimes make a terrible exercise / mess /
  - 7 They sometimes chase / jump / kill other animals.
  - 8 They can cause attention / damage / disease.

Work in pairs. Use the ideas in Exercise 3 to talk about the animals in the photos.

For example:

Cats are very friendly. They sometimes sit on you. M cat sits on me when I'm watching TV.

#### LISTENING

- 194 Listen to three conversations about animals. Answer the questions.
  - a Which of the animals in Exercise 1 is each conversation about?
  - b Why are they talking about these animals?
  - c Have you had good or bad experiences with these animals?
- Work in pairs. Decide what conversations the phrases came from. Explain your decisions.
  - a We need to pay someone to come in and kill the
  - b Scary!
  - c How annoying!
  - d I found it outside the next day.
  - e He's huge!
  - f I see them quite a lot.
  - g I think they're a bit scared of her.
  - h We have more space now.
  - i I worry they'll bite the kids one day
- Work in groups. Have you ever had any good bad experience. bad experiences with any animals? Tell your stories.

GRAN Prese

Loo peo cho

in th

5 D

3 W

Com form

2 140









### GRAMMAR

llk

Present perfect to say how long

- I Look at the extracts from the listening where people talk about duration (how long). Then choose the correct option to complete the rules in the Grammar box below.
  - 1 B: How long have they been there?
    - A: For a few months, I quess.
  - <sup>2</sup> D: How long have you had him?
    - C: Five years.
  - 3 We've been here a year now.
- We can use the present perfect to talk about the duration of something from ...
- a one time in the past to another time in the past.
- b a time in the past to now.
- c now to the future.
- When we say the duration, we ...
- e shirte e
- b sometimes
- c never
- Use for at the start of the time phrase.

## Check your ideas on page 186 and do Exercise 1.

- Complete the questions using the present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.
  - 1 How long \_\_\_\_\_\_ your cat? (you / have)
    2 How long \_\_\_\_\_\_ together? (you / be)

- 3 How long \_\_\_\_\_ married? (they / be)
- 4 How long \_\_\_\_\_ each other? (they / know)
- 5 How long \_\_\_\_\_ in this house? (you / live)
- 6 How long \_\_\_\_\_ there? (she / work)
- 10 P 95 Listen and check your ideas. Write the answers you hear to the questions.
- 11 Practise saying the questions and answers.
- 12 Work in groups. Find out:
  - who has had a pet the longest.
  - who has known their best friend the longest.
  - who has lived in their house / apartment the longest.
  - if anyone knows a couple who have been together for fifty years or more.
- For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 186.

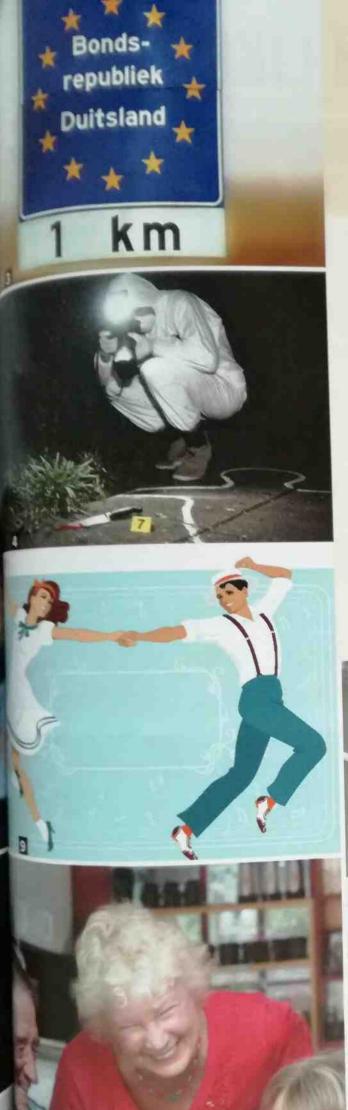
## SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- 13 Listen and repeat the sounds with /kr/, /dr/, /tr/ and /str/. Are any of them difficult to hear or say?
- Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using these words. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

countryside crowded dry streets transport crime

For further revision, see Exercises 1-3 on page 186.





## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · give your opinion about films, plays and musicals
- · ask for descriptions and opinions
- · discuss news and newspapers
- · make predictions about the future
- · talk about society and social issues

### **WORDS FOR UNIT 14**

1 Work in pairs. Match the phrases to the photos. Which phrase does not match a photo?

the acting was bad advert for a musical arrive at the border don't get on well extra wages get treatment go and see a play have insurance injure herself leader of a team
lost the election
more efficient
a scary film
start peace talks
a strong economy
support each other
there's been a murder
use violence

- 2 Description States 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- 3 Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.
  Student A: point to a photo.
  Student B: say the words.



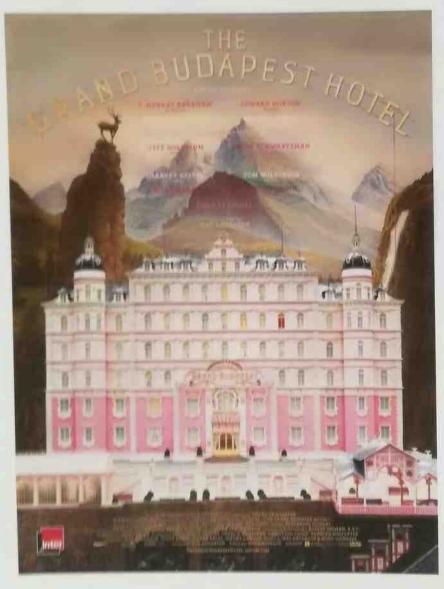


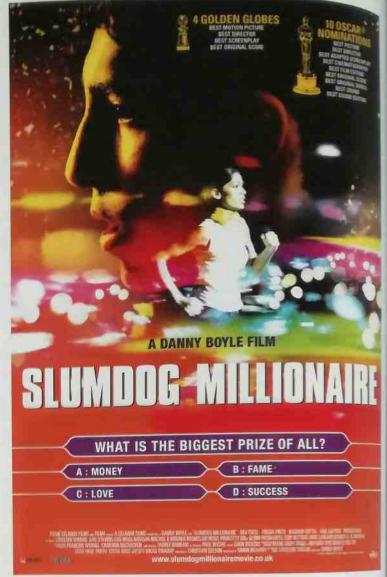


# WHAT WAS THE FILM LIKE?

## **SPEAKING**

- 1 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - · When was the last time you saw:
    - a film?
    - a concert?
    - a play?
    - a musical?
  - What did you see? What did you think of it?
  - Have you seen any of the films in the posters?
     What did you think of them?







¥	ocabulary escribing films, plays and musicals
P	complete the sentences with these adjectives.
2	brillant funny scary terrible predictable strange violent entertaining sad
	1 It was It really made me laugh.
	2 It was really I cried a lot at the ending.
	3 It was very There was a lot of killing and a lot of blood in it.
	4 It was really I spent half the time hiding behind the sofa.
	5 It is very After ten minutes, you know how it's going to end.
	6 It was one of the best things I've ever seen in my life.
	7 It was – one of the worst things I've seen in a long time.
	8 It was very – very unusual.
	9 It was very I felt sad for days afterwards.
	10 It was really I really enjoyed it.
1 5	are negative? Why?
	Listen to two conversations, one about a film and the other about a musical. Answer these questions about each conversation.
	1 Have both people seen the film / musical?
	2 What did they think of it?
	3 Do you think the person who didn't see it would like it? Why? / Why not?
469	with one word. Then work in pairs and compare your ideas. Then listen again and check.
	Conversation 1
	1 Have you ever seen a film 28 Days Later?
	2 I've heard it, but I've never seen it.
	3 What's it?
	4 It terrible!
	5 No, it's great!
	Conversation 2
	6 What did you think it?
	It was quite entertaining in, I suppose.
	8 The and the music were great.

9 But what about the \_

Why? / Why not?

\_ it really sad.

too violent? very predictable?

Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

\* Would you like to see 28 Days Later or Dogs?

Can you think of something you found: really scary?

## **DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

## What's it like?

If we want someone to describe something or someone, we often ask What is I was ... like?

- A: I've never seen it. What's it like?
- B: It's brilliant. It's really, really scary.
- Match the questions (1-8) to the answers (a-h).
  - 1 What was the film like?
  - 2 What was the acting like?
  - 3 What was the band like?
  - 4 What was the ending like?
  - 5 What's the food like there?
  - 6 What's your boss like?
  - 7 What're your parents like?
  - 8 What was your holiday like?
  - a Very sad. I couldn't stop crying.
  - b She's great. She's very easy to talk to.
  - c Quite good. They played their roles very well.
  - d It started well, but I didn't like the ending.
  - e Oh, it was wonderful. It was very relaxing and we were very lucky with the weather.
  - f They were great. They played for two hours and did all their most famous songs.
  - g My mum's great, but I don't get on with my dad.
  - h Amazing! They do a delicious garlic chicken!
- Work in pairs.

Student A: ask the questions in Exercise 7.

Student B: say the correct answer from a-h.

9 Change roles.

Student B: ask the questions in Exercise 7.

Student A: invent your own answers.

10 Write three What is / was ... like? questions. Then ask other students in the class your questions.

## **CONVERSATION PRACTICE**

- Make a list of six films, plays, concerts or musicals you have seen in the last few months.
- Work in pairs. Take turns asking about the things on your list. Follow this model and continue the conversations for as long as you can.

A: Have you seen ...?

B: No, I haven't, What was it like?

Yes, I loved it! What did you think of it?

26 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.



# WHAT DO YOU THINK WILL HAPPEN?

#### LISTENING

Work in groups. What are the big news stories at the moment connected to each of the areas below? What do you think about each story? Explain your opinions.

sports news entertainment news business news

international news national news the weather forecast

- Work in pairs. What order do the different kinds of news usually appear on news reports?
- Listen to a news report. Match each story (1-5) to an area of news in Exercise 1.
- ▶ 100 Listen again, Tick (✓) the sentences that are true. Correct the sentences that aren't true.
  - 1 Most people think that the Popular Front are going to win the election.
  - 2 The final result is going to be sometime on Monday.
  - 3 NBE lost nearly four hundred million dollars last year.
  - 4 They're planning to close two factories and cut 500 jobs.
  - 5 Adjikistan and Kamistan have started peace talks.
  - 6 The problem is about where the two countries begin
  - 7 Shaneez has been with her boyfriend for a long time.
  - 8 Her boyfriend is also a singer.

- 9 Florian Mendy hurt himself during the recent match against Brazil.
- 10 Mendy is definitely going to miss the rest of the World Cup.
- Choose one of the following to talk about. Decide if you think the story was a good thing or a bad thing - and why. Spend a few minutes preparing what you want to say.
  - an important election result
  - a company with big problems

  - a couple getting married
  - a player who got injured
- Work in groups. Share your stories and explain your thoughts and feelings.

#### GRAMMAR

## will / won't for predictions

In Units 8 and 13, you saw that we use be (not) going to infinitive to say what we think is certain or probable in the

We can also use will / won't + infinitive to do this

Tomorrow's general election will probably be the class in many years.

There's a chance he won't play in the rest of the competition.

We often use the contraction of will - 1/2



- 7 Below are five comments from the chat room on the radio station's website. Match each comment to one of the five stories you heard in Exercise 3.
  - This will be terrible for the whole area. It'll have a really bad effect on local communities because people will have to move to find work.
    - It won't last. They'll probably be divorced by the end of the year.
    - This loss won't make any difference. They'll still have a very strong team tonight.
    - I don't think the situation will get any worse. They both have too much to lose. Their big neighbours will push for more talks, and they'll all find a solution to the problem.

d

It'll be better if there's no clear winner. It'll mean they all have to work together!

- Which of the comments in Exercise 7 are optimistic (= think good things will happen) and which are pessimistic (= think bad things will happen)?
- 9 Complete the sentences with will or won't.
  - I probably \_\_\_\_ come out with you tonight. I need to finish some work.
  - 2 You can try and talk to her if you want, but it make any difference.
  - 3 I think he \_\_\_\_\_ be a very good leader.
  - 4 They don't have a very good team. They \_\_\_\_\_ win the game.
  - 5 The new law might help a bit, but it \_\_\_\_\_\_
    completely solve the problem.
  - 6 I don't expect I \_\_\_\_\_ pass the exam. I haven't done enough work for it.
  - 7 We \_\_\_\_\_ probably arrive sometime in the evening. It depends on the traffic.
  - 8 The company lost a lot of money this year. I hope we \_\_\_\_\_ lose our jobs.

#### PRONUNCIATION

- 10 Listen and write the sentences you hear. Notice that 'll is pronounced /əl/ – and won't is pronounced /woont/.
- 11 Listen again. Repeat what you hear.
- 12 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Use the answers in the box below.
  - 1 Do you think you'll ever speak perfect English?
  - 2 Do you think you'll live to be 80?
  - 3 Do you think your country will ever win the World Cup?
  - 4 Do you think you'll ever live or work abroad?
  - 5 Do you think you'll ever be really rich or famous?
  - 6 Do you think we'll find life on other planets?
  - 7 Do you think there'll ever be world peace?
  - 8 Do you think we'll ever learn how to look after the environment?
  - · Yes, definitely.
  - · Yes, probably.
  - Maybe.
  - . No.
- Write two predictions of your own about what will / won't happen in the future. You might want to think about these areas:

holidays politics relationships sport work

- 14 Work in groups. Explain your ideas. Do your partners agree with you?
  - G For further practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 187.



## **VOCABULARY** Life and society

- Choose the sentence (a or b) that best matches each sentence 1–5.
  - 1 The economy is quite weak.
    - a There's a lot of unemployment.
    - b Wages are high and it's easy to find work.
  - 2 Crime is a huge problem.
    - a I have insurance, but I've never needed to use it.
    - b You see a lot of violence and murder on the news.
  - 3 The people are very nice and friendly.
    - a I get on with my neighbours and we really support each other.
    - b People are polite but they don't talk to you much.
  - 4 The climate's good.
    - a It's dry and warm all year round.
    - b It's really cold in winter and too hot in summer.
  - 5 I'm unhappy with the health system.
    - a Treatment is expensive, so you need health
    - b Treatment is free and the service is quite efficient.

2 Spend two minutes remembering the sentences in Exercise 1. Then work in pairs and test each other.

Student A: keep your book open. Say the a or b sentence in 1–5.

Student B: close your book. Say the correct sentence (1–5) or the opposite.

For example:

A: Wages are high and it's easy to find work.

B: The economy is strong.

- Work in pairs. Write one more sentence about each of the things in bold in Exercise 1.
- Work in groups. Read your sentences. Can the rest of the group guess what each sentence is about?

For example:

A: Everything is very expensive.

B: The economy.

A: Right.

READIN Work i

Are t

Do y

. Wha

Work i about differe Studen

Studen Decident answer

1 Hov 2 Why

3 Do

4 Wha

6 Wha

8 Is th

A N

I came in concompantive year

l don't m very rela neighbou it's warm mountair problem because

Before I of health sy problems night and never see door and health sy provides I've need

> Comp who r think they a

## READING

Work in pairs. Discuss these questions,

- Are there many people from your country living aproad? Why? In which countries?
- Do you know anyone who has moved to another country or city? Why did they move?
- . What other reasons are there to move to another country?
- Work in groups of four: two As and two Bs. Read about two people who have moved to live in a different country.

Student As: read the text below.

Student Bs: read the text in File 6 on page 194.

Decide how the writer of your text would answer these questions.

- How long have you lived here?
- 2 Why did you move here?
- 3 Do you like it here?
- 4 What do you think of the people?
- 5 What do you think of the climate?
- 6 What do you think of the health system?
- 7 How's the economy doing?
- 8 is there much crime?
- 9 Do you think you'll ever go back home?

## A NEW LIFE Maja

I came here to work. It's really easy to get a job in computing because there are so many tech companies here and wages are high. I've lived here for five years now, I love it.

I don't miss anything about my country. People here are very relaxed and open and I get on very well with my neighbours. We don't have long, dark, cold winters here—It warm all year round. But if I want snow, I can go to the mountains and I can still watch ice hockey here. The only problem is, it's difficult to find time to do those things because I work long hours.

Before I came here, I heard crime was bad and that the bealth system was expensive, but I haven't had any problems. In big cities, it can be dangerous to walk at night and there's gun violence, but in my small town I've never seen anything like that. I don't always lock my front door and no-one has ever stolen anything. As for the health system, the service is expensive, but my company provides health insurance, so I've had no problems when I've needed treatment.

Compare answers with the person in your group who read the same text. Which country do you think the writer is from and where do you think they are living?

- 8 Now work in pairs: one Student A and one Student B. Without looking at your texts, ask and answer the questions in Exercise 6 to find out about your partner's text.
- 9 With the same partner, discuss which of the two writers has a better quality of life.

#### GRAMMAR

#### Adjective + verb

We can use an adjective and a verb together.

It's really easy to get a job in computing.

10 Work in pairs. Look back at the texts and answer these questions.

Text A

- 1 What is difficult for the writer?
- 2 What is dangerous sometimes?

Text B

- 3 What was dangerous?
- 4 What is difficult?

Can you see the same pattern in the five different sentences?

- Check your ideas on page 187 and do Exercise 1.
- 11 Make true sentences about the place you live or work, using the pattern from Exercise 10.

1 It's easy \_\_\_\_\_.

2 It's important \_\_\_\_\_

3 It's nice \_\_\_\_\_

4 It's cheap \_\_\_\_\_

5 It can be difficult \_\_\_\_\_

G For further practice, see Exercise 2 on page 187.

#### SPEAKING

Work in groups. Discuss what you think of the things in the box in your country or city. Do you think they are better or worse than other places?

crime the health system politics the climate the quality of life work

## SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- 13 Listen and repeat these common word endings: /ons/, /mont / and /fon /. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- 14 Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using these words. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

differences environment insurance

situation

violence.

For further revision, see Exercises 1-3 on page 188.







- 1 Work in groups. Look at the photos of different national symbols. Discuss these questions.
  - Do you know which countries these things are national symbols of?
  - Do you know what connects the four countries?
  - Why do you think these things became national symbols?
- 2 Read the short text to find the answers to the questions in Exercise 1.
- 3 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - Does your country have a national animal / bird / tree / flower?
  - How much do you know about each one?
  - Are there any other things that you think are national symbols of your country?
- 4 You are going to do a quiz. Work in teams. Watch the video and answer the ten questions.
- 5 (4.34-8.37) to find the answers. Write one new piece of information you hear about each answer. The winner is the team with the most correct answers and /or the most extra information.
- 6 Choose one of the things below to talk about. Spend two minutes planning what to say.
  - a time you went to one of the countries mentioned in the quiz
  - · the country that you would most like to visit
  - three symbols of your town / city and how you feel about them
  - · a good symbol for your family
  - a good symbol for the class you're studying in
- 7 Work in pairs. Share your ideas.

he photos show national symbols of the four countries that make the United Kingdom. The thistle is the national flower of Scotland. For example, there's a thistle on the national rugby team shirt. An old story says that one night, Vikings tried to quietly enter Scotland from the sea, but one of them stepped on a thistle and screamed loudly. Scottish soldiers then woke up and won the fight.

R

n

The leek is a national symbol of Wales. An old story says Welsh soldiers once wore leeks when fighting to show who they were. Other stories say that hundreds of years ago, Welsh doctors used leeks to make all kinds of medicine.

The blue flax flower is a symbol of Northern Ireland. The country is famous for making cloth from flax. Northern Ireland is home to people of different religions – Protestants and Catholics – and there have been problems in the past, but both groups like the flower.

The only lions in England live in zoos, but the lion is still England's national animal – maybe because a famous English king, Richard I, was called Richard the Lionheart. The national football team wear three lions on their shirt, and there are also big statues of lions in Trafalgar Square, in London.

# DEVIEW

1	
	GRAMMAR the contenges with one and the
	Complete the sentences with one word in each
1	- 40
	space.  A: What's the forecast for tomorrow?
	B it said it's to continue raining.
	A Oh no! When do you think it 2stop?
	B. It's difficult 3 say. It can sometimes rain for
	days. When are you going go home?
	A I don't know now. I 5 go back early. It's horrible to 6 sightseeing in the rain.
	B. No. stay. You haven't been here very 7
	and there's a 8 the weather will get better over the weekend.
	Put the word(s) in bold in the correct place in
-	the sentence.
	1 They said it might be very cold next weekend. not
	2 They said it's going to very cold and it snow tonight.
	may
	3 How long you worked here? have
	4 Let's go out somewhere. It's hot to stay in all day, too
	5 I've had a cough a few days now. for
	6 Iden't trink things will get worse, any
	7 I haven't known him long, very
	B Do you llaink you'll move? ever
200	Rewrite the sentences as positive statements (+),
	negatives (-) or questions (?).
	1 Middle store Friday. (-)
	2 Is it easy to find work there? (+)
	3 Imight so to the party. (-)
	4 Idon't trink they'll miss her. (+)
	5 it's good to be scared at times like that. (-)
	6 I think they'll win. (?)
Ĭ	
	one word in each space. Contractions (I'm, don't, etc.) are one word.
	IIVEU
	2 How known this?
	3 It's difficult
	3 It's difficult worry
	try, but I
	change things.
	economy
	Prince and the second s
	19 Spiel
9650	hot and a storm.

Work in pairs. Compare your ideas. Listen again and check.

## VOCABULARY

- 6 Choose the best adjective.
  - 1 He's a very famous / icy / convenient writer.
  - 2 The film was really dangerous / violent / relaxing.
  - 3 Crime's a big problem there. It's an efficient / a free / a scary place to live.
  - 4 The countryside there is very warm / flat / brilliant and boring.
  - 5 The economy's very weak / sad / high at the moment
  - 6 Hospital treatment here is quite polite | expensive | strange.
  - 7 It's a predictable / a huge / an empty country.
  - 8 We've had some really sunny / crowded / entertaining weather.
- 7 Match the verbs in the box to the group of words they go with in 1-8.

check	find	have	need	
fail	grow	make	vote	

- 1 ~ the forecast / ~ with my wife / ~ the meaning
- 2 ~ for the Peace Party / ~ in a general election / ~ against the idea
- 3 ~ insurance / ~ long, cold winters / ~ problems
- 4 ~ rice / the economy ~s / ~ in the field
- 5 ~ a solution to the problem / ~ work / ~ time to do it
- 6 peace talks ~ / ~ an exam / ~ to win
- 7 ~ a big difference / ~ friends / ~ a terrible noise
- 8 ~ a lot of attention / ~ some help / ~ a lot of exercise
- Put the words into three groups weather, animals or society.

cause disease cloudy friendly neighbours a good climate a lot of unemployment low wages	provide leather reach 40 degrees ride across the fields smell terrible wet and windy win the election	
--	--	--

Complete the text with one word in each space. The first letters are given.

		city a rew ye		
it. There wer	e so many	people in th	e city. The	streets
were always	1cr	and there	e was alwa	ys.
		re as well. C		
3mu	_ near my	house. It wa	s awful. It's	safer
here - and c	leaner. The	ere isn't any	po	
because the	re aren't ar	ny factories.	I live on the	2
50	of a big fo	rest and I'm	SU	by
fields. My ho	use was in	a bad 7co_	W	nen I
hought it, bu	it I've repai	red it. I keep	cows, and	they
	me with n	nilk and mea	t.	
<sup>2</sup> ru	everywhe near my leaner. The re aren't ar of a big fo ouse was in t I've repai	house. It was ere isn't any ny factories. rest and I'm a bad <sup>7</sup> co	once there is awful. It's fpo I live on the su wh cows, and	was a safer





## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- · talk about useful machines
- find out how much people know
- talk about computers and the internet
- spell and give addresses
- explain what's good about apps and websites

## **WORDS FOR UNIT 15**

Work in pairs. Match the phrases to the photos.

change the battery design a website do a search I dropped it install solar power keep files plug it in press the button

produce electricity read the instructions save energy shelves of food try to repair it various apps very heavy

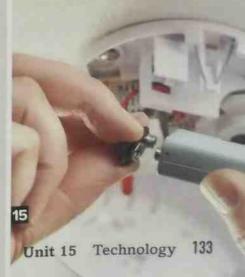
- 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat the words.
- 3 Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

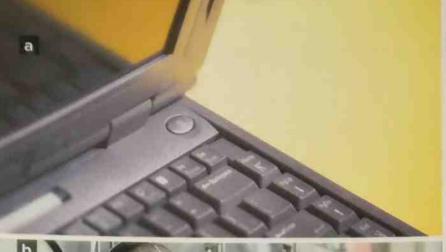
Student A: point to a photo.

Student B: say the words.



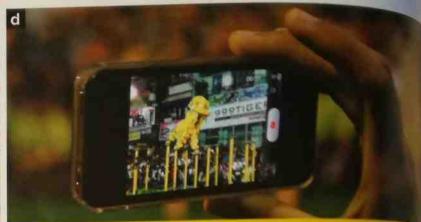












# CAN YOU RECOMMEND ANYTHING?

## VOCABULARY

Machines and technology

1 Label the pictures with the words in the box.

digital camera dishwasher hairdryer

laptop mobile phone tablet vacuum cleaner washing machine

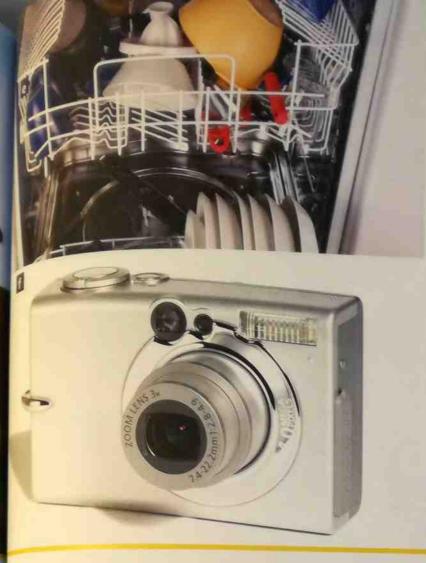
- 2 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - Which of the things in the photos do you have?
  - · Which brands do you have?
  - · Which is most useful? Why?
  - What other machines or technology do you own?
  - Are there any you don't have, but would like to get?
- 3 Check you understand the words in bold. Then work in pairs. Look at the photos again and point to:
  - 1 a screen.
  - 2 a plug.
  - 3 a keyboard.
  - 4 where you turn them on and turn them off.
  - 5 where the battery goes.
  - 6 buttons you can press.

## LISTENING

- Listen to three conversations about technology. What kind of machine do they take about in each one and why?
- 5 Listen again. Complete the table.

	Brand	What's good about it?
1		Quite a lot of 2      Not too heavy     The 3 lasts a long time.
2	Kotika	They 4 great.  Nice and 5 great for playing and watcher videos.
3	Bonny	Quite strong, so hard to      Takes great pictures – even     when it's "      Not very "o

- 6 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - 1 Do you think the things they recommend sound good or not? Why?
  - 2 Is there anything else they should think about the each piece of technology?
  - 3 How much does each thing cost in your country





## GRAMMAR

## be thinking of + -ing

to talk about wens that we are not 100% sure about, we often use thinking of + -ing.

m thinking ing a laptop.

She's thinking of starting her own internet company.

We're thinking getting a new washing machine.

## Complete the sentences with the correct form of be thinking of and the verbs in brackets.

my dad some new clothes, but I don't know any good shops. (buy)

2 My brother \_\_\_\_\_ an English course. (do)

3 We\_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema later. (go)

the mobile phone company I use. (change)

5 My parents \_\_\_\_\_ a new car. (buy)

<sup>6</sup> They \_\_\_\_\_ to Japan for their holiday. (go)

a pet for my younger sister. (get)

8 My sister \_\_\_\_\_ Engineering at university. (study)

## Work in pairs.

Student A: say each sentence in Exercise 7. Then Can you recommend anything / anywhere?

Student B: make recommendations.

Then change roles and repeat.

Write three sentences about things you - or people of doing. Ex people you know - are thinking of doing. Explain your ideas to a partner.

## **DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

## Do you know much about ...?

To find out how much people know about general topics, we often say Do you know much about ...? To answer, say No, not really. / A bit. / Yeah, quite a lot.

A: Do you know much about computers?

B: A bit. Why?

You are going to find out how much people in 10 your class know about the topics in the box. First, add two extra topics. These could be things you know a lot about - or things you want to learn about.

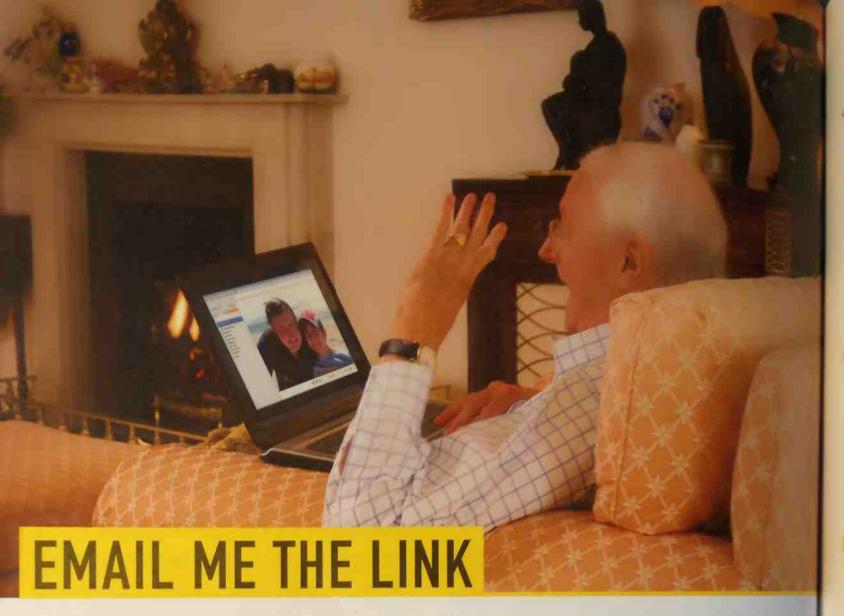
history	the moon	cows	
Australia	cars	tennis	
geography	computers		

Now find out how much other people in your class know about each of the topics.

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

- Decide on two pieces of technology you're 12 thinking of buying. Decide how much you want to spend on them.
- Talk to some other students. Explain what you're 13 thinking of buying - and why. Ask for and make recommendations.
- 14 Tell a partner who gave you the best advice.
- 28 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.

For further practice, see Evergines 1 and 2 on page 188.



### VOCABULARY

Computers and the internet

Complete the dialogues with these pairs of nouns.

software + download computer + memory stick video + search files + email website + link photo + email address 1 A; That's a lovely \_\_\_\_ of us. B: I know. I'll send it to you if you want. What's your 2 A: Do you always save everything like that? B: I do, yeah. My old \_\_\_\_ \_ died last year and l lost a lot of files, so now I keep copies of everything online and on this 3 A: I read a great article about Lisbon on the Graddy last night. B: Oh really? Can you send me the to read that. 4 A: I don't know why it's working so slowly. B: You need the latest version of their \_ don't need to pay for it - just \_\_\_ It from their website. 5 A: Did you get those \_\_\_\_\_ I sent you?

B: I'm not sure, actually. I haven't checked my

the one that everyone's talking about?

A: Oh, just do a \_\_\_\_\_ for it, It's really funnyl

of the singing dog -

\_\_today.

6 A: Have you seen that \_

B: No. What's that?

Complete each group of collocations (1-5) with one noun from the box in Exercise 1.

3

W of FOI

W

Wite

We

ad

W

al

ad

WI

Yo

qu

Fir

the

qu

the

ide

ticl

Wo

YOU

Ch

ap(

tec

LIST

- 1 send an ~ check my ~ get an ~ delete an ~ by accident
- 2 buy a new ~ check on the ~ restart the ~ my ~ died
- 3 design a ~ build a ~ visit our new ~ have a look on their ~
- 4 create new ~ open ~ copy ~ save all my ~ on a memory stick
- 5 write ~ download ~ use ~ install ~

## Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

- Which websites do you visit most?
- Do you have a memory stick? If yes, what do you keep on it?
- How many email addresses do you have? Why?
- Can you remember the last search you did? Did is find what your remember the last search you did? Did is find what you remember the last search you did? Did is find what you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you did? Did is find you remember the last search you remember the last searc find what you wanted?
- How often do you install new software?

136

## PRONUNCIATION

Listen to each group of letters and repeat them.

1	/is/	b, c, d, e, g, p, t, v
2	/e/	f, l, m, n, s, x, z
3	/ei/	a, h, j, k
4	/ju:/	q, u, w
5	/ai/	l, y
6	/au/	0
7	last	B

Work in pairs. Take turns saying the letters of the alphabet in the correct order.

For example:

Aid

Bill

ATC

Which letters are the most difficult for you to say?

When we say website and email addresses, we say 'dot' for and 'at' for  $\widehat{\omega}$ .

We usually say 'co', 'com', 'net', 'org', etc. as one word.

- 6 Listen and write the three different addresses.
  - 1 Her website address:
  - 2 Her email address:
  - 3 Her home address:
- Write a website address, an email address and a home address. Then work in pairs. Say your addresses and spell them for your partner to write down

## LISTENING

- You are going to listen to and answer a questionnaire about computers and technology. First, work in pairs and read the options in the questionnaire. Discuss what you think the questions are.
- Listen and check your ideas. Try to write the questions you hear. Then compare your ideas with your partner.
- Now listen to the whole questionnaire and tick () the answers that are best for you.
- Work in pairs. Compare your answers. Who do you think likes technology more?
- Change partners. Tell your new partner about two people you know one who loves technology and one who hates it. Give examples of how they love / hate it.

## TECHNOLOGY — LOVE IT OR HATE IT?

	The state of the s
<b>U</b> _	
9	none b one C two or more
0	one C two or more
9	
b	Maybe an hour or two – if I turn it on.
2	Four or five hours. Most of the evening.
*:	I never turn it off.
0_	
a	Maybe once a day, maybe less.
b	Two or three times a day.
C	I check it all the time on my phone.
•	and on my priorie.
<b>U</b>	
8	0-10 b 10-30 C 30-100
A.	
а	The most basic pay-as-you-go phone.
b	An OK phone with quite a good camera. It does
	everything I need it to do.
C	The very best, latest model.
(A)	
a	What do you mean? Phoning people, of course!
b	I use the camera, I listen to music, and I sometimes
	play games.
€	Apart from the camera, I use the diary, Facebook,
	maps – all kinds of things. I can't list them all.
7	
a	Yes, I've deleted files on my computer by accident.
b 📗	Yes. I sent an email to the wrong person once.
0	No, of course not.
0	
8	FOR STATE AS A STATE OF THE STA
a _	I ask someone to show me the very basic things.
n L	I read the instructions and learn to do a few things. I'm not interested in the complicated things.
0	I just start playing about with it and teach myself.
	To find out more detailed things, I watch videos or look at the instructions or their website:
	IOOK AT THE HIST MC LOTES WIT LIVER WEDSITE.
9	
а	Get angry, shout and jump up and down – until someone tells me I need to plug it in.
b 🗌	Check it's plugged in and, if it is, call someone to repair it.
0	Check everything is plugged in. Turn it off and on
	again – and if it still doesn't work, I repair it myself.
n n	
a	Hardly ever. Why do I need it when my old
- T	things work?
	Sometimes, Some things are better, and I change when my old things break.
c 🗌	All the time. I like to have all the latest things.

# IT'LL SOLVE ALL OUR PROBLEMS

## VOCABULARY What technology does

- 1 Match 1-4 with a-d and 5-8 with e-h.
  - 1 It allows you to keep
  - 2 It allows you to develop
  - 3 It allows you to check
  - 4 It allows you to produce
  - a electricity at home.
  - b your own apps quickly and easily.
  - c all your files in one safe place.
  - d your heart rate easily.
  - 5 It allows you to create
  - 6 It allows you to solve
  - 7 It allows you to control
  - 8 It allows you to save
  - e a lot of energy because it's so efficient.
  - f tests for the vocabulary you've learned.
  - g problems with the computer quickly.
  - h everything in your house from your phone.
- Work in pairs. Discuss what you think each sentence in Exercise 1 might refer to.
  - a a mobile app or computer software
  - b a machine or some other piece of technology

#### READING

- 3 Work in pairs. You are going to read an article about technology. First, discuss these questions.
  - 1 What do you think are the biggest problems in the world now?
  - 2 Look at the title of the article on page 139. Do you think the writer is optimistic about the future, or not?
  - 3 Look at the photos in the article. What do you think the technology is? What problems do you think it will solve?
- 4 Now read the article and find out what the writer thinks.
- Work in pairs. Discuss why the writer mentions these things. Then read the article again to check your ideas.
  - 1 the economy
  - 2 Morocco
  - 3 paint
  - 4 offices
  - 5 LED lights
  - 6 a cupboard
  - 7 chemicals

- 6 Work in pairs. Discuss if you agree or disagree with these statements.
  - I'm also excited about the future and the possibilities of technology.

There

there

thes

the

MC

bu

ele

co

Pla

rec

Pil

LE

oth

Sp:

ne

on

are

ne

SPI

- I feel better about the future after reading about this technology.
- This technology might work well, but it won't solve the problem of unemployment.
- We should help more people install solar power in our country.
- · I wouldn't want to eat food from a pink farm.
- I don't think these are the most important developments in technology now.

### GRAMMAR

#### Adverbs

Adverbs can describe verbs – how we do things. The most common one is well (= good).

This technology works really well.

- A: How well do you speak English?
- B: Not very well.
- 7 Work in pairs. Ask each other these questions. Use the answers below.
  - 1 How well do you speak English?
  - 2 How well do you know your country?
  - 3 How well can you draw?
  - 4 How well can you use presentation software?
  - 5 How well did you do in your last test / exam?
  - 6 How well are your local football team doing?

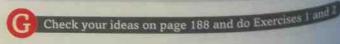
Really well. Not very well.

Quite well. Not very well but better than before

- Work in pairs. Read the sentences and underline the adverbs and the verbs they describe. Then complete the rules in the box below.
  - 1 The economy's doing quite badly, but our company is growing.
  - 2 I had a problem, but the company solved it very quickly.
  - 3 I have an app that allows me to check my heart rate easily.
  - 4 Things in the digital world are changing very fast

To make most descriptive adverbs, we add an adjective. A few have the same form as the adjective for example 2

We can modify descriptive adverbs with *quite* and <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the same way as adjectives.



# ECHNOLOGY CAN SAVE US

eare lots of problems in the world: in many places the economy's doing badly; are too many people and the world doesn't produce enough jobs, food, or for all of them. It's easy to get depressed with all the bad news we hear, but I tworry. In fact, I'm excited about the future, because I think technology will solve problems. Here are just two amazing things that are already happening.

## RECTRICITY-PRODUCING HOMES

20

tien

his

W.

st

st.

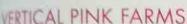
ine 1

ny

ite

5

1% of the world's electricity comes from solar power at moment, but this is changing fast. Many countries, such as wocco, are building huge solar farms, and some companies ne developing very, very small solar cells for homes and They have created some 'nano-cells' successfully, the cells aren't very efficient and don't produce enough actricity yet. However, when they work more efficiently, the sino-cells could be used in windows and in paint to put on he outside of houses. Then, millions and millions of homes become electricity producers and we'll have enough energy for all!



Funts need light to grow, but it's actually ad and blue light that they need most. Pinkfarms' use red and blue LED lights that allow the plants to grow very quickly. ID lights are bright, last longer than other lights and don't get too hot, so the arms can work all year. The farms save pace too, because the plants don't need earth and so they can be grown m shelves. And because conditions are always perfect, the farmer doesn't need to use chemicals to kill insects and diseases. Maybe one day, homes will have pink gardens: we won't just esp food in a cupboard, we'll grow therel



## SPEAKING

- Think of a website, app or piece of software for each category below. Then work in groups and share your ideas.
  - I Tuse it all the time.
  - I Ive recently found / started using it.
  - I It's good fun.
  - 4 I've tried it, but I don't like it.
  - I lused it a lot in the past, but now don't.
  - § It's good for learning English.

## SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- ▶ 111 Listen and repeat the sounds for the letter 'a': /a:/, /æ/, /ɪ/, /ei/, /eə/, /ɒ/, /ə/, /əː/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- ▶ 112 Work in groups. Listen to eight sentences using these words. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

various installed washing change allows language hard app

For further revision, see Exercises 1-3 on page 189.

Pink farms could feed the world.





## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- describe different events in relationships
- give news about relationships
- explain when and where you met people
- make promises

## WORDS FOR UNIT 16

1 Work in pairs. Match the phrases to the photos. Which two phrases do not match a photo?

be in love Don't slip! go to a nightclub I don't approve I promise I will make an appointment negotiate the price remove the paint

celebrate their anniversary encourage each other hold the baby I'm jealous! knock at the door musical instruments plant some flowers protect your head

- 2 Listen. Check your answers. Listen again. Repeat
- 3 Work in pairs. Test each other. Cover the words.

Student A: point to a photo.

Student B: say the words.

Choose five of the photos. Write one more word or phrase to go with each photo. Then work in pairs and say your words or phrases. Can your partner guess the photo?





## **VOCABULARY** Love and marriage

- Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - 1 What's the difference between a girlfriend, a wife and a partner?
  - 2 What's the equivalent for men?

We often say partner instead of girlfriend / boyfriend when the couple are older or have been together a long time. We can also use it when we don't know if a couple are married or not.

Work in pairs. Discuss which pairs of words in the box only refer to married couples, which refer to unmarried couples and which can refer to both.

> married + wedding a date + asked me out saved + move anniversary + together

broken up + getting on divorced + jealous in-laws + approve pregnant + baby

3	Complete the sentences with the pairs of words
	in Exercise 2.

res

We

Co

aga Con

28

5 Di

Conve

1	We're going to have a party for my parents' wedding on Saturday. They've been
	25 years.
	My daughter is six months She's due to have her on Christmas Day!
	We're getting next summer. Would you like to come to the
	Sorry I can't go with you. I have on Friday This boy at school and I've liked him for ages.
	I'm pleased they're going to get Inevel liked him. He was very and controlled what she did.
6	what she did.  We lived with my in-laws while we
7	Sorry, but I'm a bit upset. I've with Tonil To be honest, we weren't very well. We argued quite a lot and now he's met someone else argued they didn't
	what and the

of our marriage at first.

8 I get on with my\_

\_ now, although they didn't

Choose three or four sentences from Exercise 3 and imagine you are talking to the people who said them. Write what you would say in response.

For example:

- We're going to have a party for my parents'
  wedding anniversary on Saturday. They've been
  together for 25 years.
- B: That's nice. Where are you going to have it?
- Work in pairs. Read out your conversations from Exercise 4 together. Try to continue each conversation.

## LISTENING

- Listen to four short conversations where someone gives news about a relationship. Correct the wrong piece of information in each sentence below.
  - owen has broken up with his girlfriend after around three months.
  - 2 Her brother Gerrard Is going to get married to one of her friends.
  - 3 Fiona and Kleran are getting divorced because Kleran met someone else.
  - 4 She's going on a date with a guy from work. They're going to do karaoke.
- Choose the correct option. Then listen again and check your answers.

#### Conversation 1

- 1 How long are they I have they been together?
- 2 She's very well-looking / good-looking.

#### Conversation 2

- 3 A: When's the wedding?
  - B: Next May sometimes / sometime.
- 4 What's / What does his partner like?

#### Conversation 3

- 5 Did I tell / say you Fiona and Kieran are going to get divorced?
- 6 What a shame / mistake. They're both such nice people.

#### Conversation 4

- 7 He sees / seems very nice. He's quite quiet, but he's funny.
- 8 He's quite high / tall and he has lovely eyes.

## Work in groups, Discuss these questions.

- Do you know anyone who moved in with a partner / got married after only being together a short time?
- Does anyone you know have a partner you don't like?
- What divorces have you heard of in the news recently? What was the cause?
- Do you think karaoke is a good thing for a first date? Why? / Why not? What might be better?

## **DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

## Did I tell you ...?

We often introduce news we want to give by asking Did I tell you ...? The news might be about the future, past or present, so we use different tenses.

Did I tell you my brother Gerrard is going to get married? (future)

Did I tell you Fiona and Kleran have got divorced? (present perfect)

Did I tell you I saw Maria and Colin last weekend? (past simple)

Did I tell you my sister's pregnant? (present)

- 9 Complete the Did I tell you ...? questions using the correct tense and the verb in brackets.
  - A: Did I tell you Mena and me \_\_\_\_\_\_ travelling next year? (go)
    - B: Really? That's exciting. How long are you going to go for?
  - 2 A: Did I tell you Rebecca \_\_\_\_\_\_ a new boyfriend? (have)
    - B: No. Have you met him yet?
  - 3 A: Did I tell you I \_\_\_\_\_\_ Martin's parents last week? (meet)
    - B: No. How did it go?
  - 4 A: Did I tell you Lucia and Marc \_\_\_\_\_\_? (break up)
    - B: No, but it doesn't surprise me. When did that happen?
  - 5 A: Did I tell you we \_\_\_\_\_\_ finally \_\_\_\_\_ a flat? (find)
    - B: No. That's great! Where is it?
  - 6 A: Did I tell you we \_\_\_\_\_\_ a party for our anniversary? (have)
    - B: No! Is that an invitation?
- 10 Work in pairs. Practise reading out the dialogues in Exercise 9. In each dialogue, answer the second question.

### CONVERSATION PRACTICE

- 11 Write a piece of news about a relationship starting Did I tell you ...? Your news can be true or invented. Look at the audio script for Track 114 on page 213 if you need to, and underline the questions the people use to continue the conversations.
- Have conversations with other students in the class. Tell them your piece of news, starting Did I tell you ...? They should ask questions to continue the conversation.
- 29 To watch the video and do the activities, see the DVD-ROM.



#### **SPEAKING**

- 1 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - What do you think love at first sight means?
  - Have you ever heard any stories about love at first sight? Do you believe them?
  - Do you think it's possible to fall in love with things or places – as well as people – at first sight?
  - Can you give any examples?

#### LISTENING

Work in pairs. Look at the photos. Discuss how each photo might be connected to the idea of love at first sight.

For example:

Maybe two people met in this house and when they met it was love at first sight.

3 Listen to three people talking about their experiences of love at first sight. Match each person to a photo and check your ideas from Exercise 2.

- 4 ► Listen again. Tick (✔) the sentences that are true.
  - 1 a They needed to move quickly because they planned to start a family.
    - b They didn't have an appointment to visit the house they bought.
    - c They tried to negotiate a better price
  - 2 a His first guitar was a present.
    - b His uncle was a very important person in his life
    - c He now plays music for a living.
  - 3 a Second Life is an online dating company.
    - b The speaker met her future husband in a nightclub.
    - c The speaker isn't actually married yet.

## 5 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

- Where would your dream house be? What would it be like?
- Can you play any musical instruments? How well?
- · Which people have had a big influence on you?
- Have you heard of Second Life before?
- What do you think is good / bad about it?



## **GRAMMAR** Past continuous

- Look at these sentences from the listening.
  Underline one example of the past continuous and one example of the past simple in each sentence. Then complete the rules in the Grammar box below.
  - I was working in a Second Life nightclub when one night. I met my future husband.
  - We were driving home from another appointment when we suddenly saw it – the house of our dreams!
  - 3 We weren't getting on very well, so I started spending a lot of time online.

To make the past continuous, we use wo	5/1+
out) + the -ing form of the verb.	and the last

We often use the past continuous and the past simple in to show one action started and was in progress at the time that a past a action happened.

o link the two actions together, we often use the words

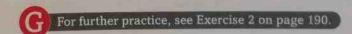
Check your ideas on page 189 and do Exercise 1.

7 Complete the sentences with the correct past continuous form of the verbs in the box.

	do	have	stay	walk
L	ly	listen	take	watch
1	We in and s	dinner at at the next	in a restaura table.	nt when she came
2	got in th	in a hotel e same lift as	in Singapore me.	when one day he
3		the under		ss town when she
4		to Vien		me friends when
5		through an a table.	street marke	et one day when I
6		some sho		n when I saw it in it sight!
7		TV one ni		advert for it came izing.
8		to the rad and I just fell		hen this song it.

#### **PRONUNCIATION**

- Work in pairs. Practise reading out the sentences below. The stressed sounds are in bold. Note that in positive past continuous sentences, was and were aren't usually stressed. Instead, we use the weak forms /wəz/ and /wə/. In negative past continuous sentences, was and were are stressed.
  - 1 I was doing some shopping when I met an old friend.
  - 2 She was running for the bus when she fell.
  - 3 They were working in Greece when it happened.
  - 4 I wasn't enjoying it, so I left.
  - 5 She wasn't feeling very well, so she went home.
  - 6 We weren't getting on, so we broke up.
- 9 Listen and check. Repeat the sentences.



## SPEAKING

- 10 Choose one of these topics to talk about. Spend two minutes planning what to say. Describe what happened and say where the people were and what they were doing. Try to use the past continuous.
  - · something you saw or heard and fell in love with
  - · any famous people you have met / seen
  - · how and when you first met your best friends
  - how and when some couples you know first met
- 11 Work in groups. Share your ideas.

# I PROMISE

## SPEAKING

- Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - Which of these ideas do you prefer? Why?
    - a Promise little, do a lot
    - b It's better to break a promise than never to make one
  - Do you ever make promises? Who to?
  - What's the last promise you made? For example
     I promised to take my son to the cinema.

## GRAMMAR

## will / won't for promises

To make promises, we usually use will / won't. We sometimes add / promise.

- A: Dad, can we go to the cinema today?
- B. Sony, I'm too busy. I'll take you next week, I promise.
- Work in pairs. Make promises using will / won't and these ideas.
  - 1 Promise to call later.
  - 2 Promise not to tell anyone
  - 3 Promise to try harder.
  - 4 Promise not to be late.
  - 5 Promise not to make a mess.

We often promise something by using will / won't as a short response.

A: Call me later.

A: Don't be late.

B: I WILL

B: I won't.

- 3 Work in pairs. Take turns to say and respond to the sentences. Respond using I will. / I won't.
  - 1 Don't start before I get back.
  - You need to pay me back tomorrow.
  - 3 Remember to go to the bank.
  - 4 Don't forget to call your grandmother to thank her.
  - 5 Be careful.
  - 8 I don't want you to miss the train.

For further practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 190.

## READING

- You are going to read some poems based on promises. First, discuss these questions.
  - · Who are the most famous poets in your country?
  - Did you study them at school? Did you like them?
  - Do you read poems now? By which poets?
  - · Have you ever written a poem? When? What about?

5 Match the words in the box with the meaning (1-8). Use a dictionary to help you.

double fade remain trust encourage let go trouble west

- 1 stop holding something
- 2 two times
- 3 help someone do well by saying positive things
- 4 become less strong (of a colour, sound or memory
- 5 plants / flowers that you don't want in your garde-

[1]

BL

Le

A

remove

- 6 stay
- 7 believe someone is honest
- 8 problems or difficulties
- 6 Read the poems and match them to these titles. Then work in groups and check your ideas.

In memory Breaking up

New born A threat kept

- 7 Decide who is making the promises in each poem and who to.
- 8 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - · Which poem did you like most?
  - Were there any lines you didn't understand? Can your partners explain them?

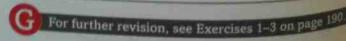
## **SPEAKING**

- 9 Work in pairs. Think of promises (or threats) that these people might make.
  - 1 a couple who are in love
  - 2 a child to a parent
  - 3 a student to a teacher
  - 4 a teacher
  - 5 a boss
  - 6 a politician
- Now choose one of the people in Exercise 9-or use your own ideas and write a short poem.
- 11 Read out your poems and vote for the best one

## SOUNDS AND VOCABULARY REVIEW

- 12 Listen and repeat the sounds for the letter 'o': /au/, /a/, /ai/, /b/, /u/, /u:/, /au/, /a/. Are any of them difficult for you to hear or say?
- using these words. Together, try to write them down. Then listen again and finish writing them.

born flowers knock control hold looking



Pyon

g post

em to the ck your ite eaking up breat ken

mises in a

e questim

ises or the

ARYE

1

This I promise.

I'll try to be a person you want to love.

I'll try to encourage and not to complain –

Try to ask, not to tell.

I'll protect you and be there to hold you, But I promise I'll let go –

Let you grow.



I'll look after your garden.

I'll remove the weeds that may cover it.

I'll plant new flowers when others die.

won't let it fade.

I'll keep it alive.

And you'll remain -

In my heart.



I'm sorry.

How could you?

I'll be better; I'll be stronger.

How can I know?

I'll be here; I won't slip and fall.

How can I trust you?

Because I'll love you.

And you didn't before?

4

I'll pay you back.

I've asked before.

I'll pay you double.

I've given you chances,

said there'd be trouble.

I'll do what you want.

I've waited,

but I'll wait no more.



- Work in groups. Discuss the questions.
- Can you think of three kinds of business that do well when the weather is hot and sunny?
- Can you think of three kinds of business that do well when it's cold and it snows?
- What do you think the photo above shows?
- · Why do you think people use machines like this?
- 2 Watch the first part of the video (0.00–1.25). Answer these questions.
  - 1 Where does Dan Raedeke live?
  - 2 What business does he run?
  - 3 How can weather be a problem for him?
  - 4 What did he study?
- 3 Watch the next part of the video (1.26–2.30). Complete the summary below.

	naking the snow has to watch the he air temperature and the direction of the
2	Snow guns are always quite tall to allow the
water to 3	before it hits the ground. Real snov
is drier, softe made snow <sup>5</sup>	r and is 4 for skiing, but man-
Dan Raedek	e's newest machines are called water They can produce a lot of snow 7
The snow is	very 8 It's almost as good as

The snow is very s.\_\_\_\_\_\_ . It's almost as good as snow from the sky. These machines can cover a trail in one s.\_\_\_\_\_ and they use them on so of the trails on Wild Mountain.

- Watch the final part of the video (2.31–4.10). Choose the correct option.
  - 1 Six / Sixteen / Sixty pumps control the water that go through all the pipes.

21

3 V

41

3

5 W

61

推自

- 2 If a pipe freezes, it's useless for the next day I for a week or two I for the rest of the winter.
- 3 The reservoir on top of the mountain provides 3,000 gallons of water a minute / an hour / a day.
- 4 Dan Raedeke sometimes / often / always spends all day and most of the night checking the system.
- 5 If there's not enough / the right amount of / too much water, the snow gets soft.
- 5 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.
  - Have you ever been skiing? If yes, when? Where?
     Did you enjoy it?
  - If no, would you like to? Why? / Why not?
  - What other things do you like to do when it snows?
  - Would you like to have a business like Dan Raedeke's? Why? / Why not?
  - What are your five most important machines?

## UNDERSTANDING FAST SPEECH

Read and listen to this extract from the video said fast, then slow. Stressed sounds are in CAPITALS

they make VEry SOFT snow, and it's ALmost, ALmost as GOOD as SNOW from the SKY, and in ONE NIGHT we can Cover this enTIRE TRAIL. They're GREAT.

7 You try! Practise saying the extract with the same stressed sounds.

# **GRAMMAR** one word). A: What message too 2 B: Of course! the verb be. of the video control the water company. 4 They \_ s for the next

rrect option

f the winter. mountain provin

an hour latto often / always st hecking the sys

right amount of

questions. ? If yes, when? Ho

ny? / Why Rot? ike to do when! usiness like Dar

iportant machin

ST SPEECH this extract for

he extract will

REVIEW 8

Complete the conversation with one word in each space. Contractions (won't, weren't, etc. are

you doing last night? I called you. but you didn't answer

B: Yeah, sorry. My phone was turned off and I saw your \_\_\_\_\_to call.

A: Don't worry, 1 3 \_ doing anything special. I just thought you might like to go out.

B: Actually, I was with Simon. He asked me to marry

A Really! "\_\_\_\_\_\_\_you say yes?

A: That's great news. When are 5 thinking of having the wedding?

thinking of August next year, but I let you know! Obviously, you're invited!

A: Great, I promise I'll 8 there.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of

thinking of going to the cinema later.

2 I broke my leg when I \_\_\_\_\_ playing football.

3 We met when we \_\_\_\_\_ working for a local

\_ thinking of moving house. They want somewhere smaller.

you thinking of doing this evening?

6 I saw Mariah Carey once when she \_ coming out of a hotel.

Add the adverb form of the adjective in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.

I I can't run very because I have a bad leg. (quick)

2 He works too. (hard)

3 How can you swim? (good)

4 I didn't do in my exam. (bad)

tell

\_ news.

5 We arrived so that we could get a seat. (early)

6 It only worked for a while. (successful)

Listen and complete the sentences with one word in each space. Contractions (I'm, don't, etc.) are one word.

1	We metstudying	Germany.	
2	2.009	Commency	asking
	marry n	ne.	
3		do	without talking
	-	first.	
4	I saw		
	New Yo	rk.	
-5	He crashed		

\_when\_

Work in pairs. Compare your ideas. Listen again and check.

## **VOCABULARY**

Complete the description with the words in the box.

allows	creates	fast fit	help improve	rate
l like keep	ing '	and I re	ecently got a	new
3	for my phon			
how far I'v	e run and hov	v <sup>4</sup>	I've dor	ne it. I also
have a spe	cial watch the	at 5	me to d	check my
heart 6	and ho	w much	7	I'm using
when I'm c	loing exercise	. Then th	ne app 8	
all these d	etails on the p	phone an	d <sup>9</sup>	_ 0
0	e of activities It's amazing		me how I ca	n/

Put the words into three groups - computers, the internet or love.

anniversary	download	laptop	screen
battery	jealous	link	search
button	in-laws	plug	tablet
date	keyboard	pregnant	website

Match the verbs in the box to the groups of words they go with in 1-8.

				_
produce	delete	develop	join	
knock	hold	keep	send	

1 ~ an email / ~ a package / ~ me the link

2 ~ the file / ~ my old emails / ~ it by mistake

3 ~ electricity / ~ apple juice / ~ energy

4 ~ an app / ~ your ideas / ~ it successfully

5 ~ on the door / ~ hard / ~ loudly

6 ~ my hand / ~ the door open / ~ the baby

7 ~ a gym / ~ a chat group / ~ the army

8 ~ it safely / ~ him alive / ~ it in a cupboard

## Choose the correct option.

1 The guy promised / threatened to shoot us if we didn't give him the money, but we persuaded him to let go I fall of the gun.

2 I don't trust / honest him. He's broken / damaged his promises too many times.

3 We often argued I jumped about who should do the washing-up, so we bought a dishwasher I washing

4 I tried to turn / make on the computer, but nothing happened. Then I saw someone had pulled the plug / keyboard out.

5 I didn't read the instructions / rules, so I put / pressed the wrong button and it stopped working.

## 1 WRITING Forms

## **VOCABULARY** Common questions

- Complete the conversation below with the questions in the box.
  - · What's your surname?
  - · Do you have a middle name?
  - · Where do you live?
  - · What's your email address?
  - · What's your first name?
  - · What's your telephone number?
  - · Where are you from?
  - · When were you born?

A:	I need to	ask	you some	questions	so we	car
	complete	e this	form.			

H OK	
D. UK.	

A:	Ri	a	ht	1
	H20	291	1 1 242	

B: David.

A: And 2\_

B: Abbott - that's a-double b-o-double t.

A: OK. I've got it. And 3\_

B: Yes, it's Sebastian.

A: OK and 4\_

B: Canada. I'm Canadian.

A: Oh, OK. Right. And 5

B: In Dublin. 25 Cook Street.

A: And 6\_

B: It's 07791-773-119.

A: And 7\_

B: It's david abbott at shotmail dot com.

A: OK - nearly finished. One more question: 8,

B: 1987. October the fourth.

A: OK. Great. That's everything. Thanks.

Work in pairs. Take turns to ask and answer the eight questions in the conversation above.

## **VOCABULARY** Nationalities

me nationality se them to de

Heye Mexican live with two

Iwatch a lot o

Work in P

A: Is that th

B: No. The

Work in §

can you

countrie

Do you

If yes, w . What do from ea . Do you country

photos. For examp

Complete the table.

Country	Nationality
	Canadian
the United States	
Ireland	
India	
	Scottish
England	
	Australian
China	
	Thai
	Japanese
France	
Germany	
	Italian
	Polish
Russia	
	Spanish
Brazil	
	Mexican
Turkey	
	Egyptian

## **WRITING** Completing forms

Complete the form for the person in the conversation in Exercise 1. The first answer is given.

SURNAME FIRST NAME MIDDLE NAME	Abbott	DATE OF BIRTHADDRESS
GENDER NATIONALITY	Male Female	TELEPHONE NUMBER EMAIL ADDRESS

nescribity words in Exercise 4 are adjectives. We can see hem to describe food, people, etc.

Mexican food

we with two Australian women and a Polish man.

Work in pairs. Discuss what you can see in the

For example:

A is that the Spanish football team?

B. No. They wear red.

## Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

- Can you think of famous people from each of the countries in Exercise 4?
- Do you have any friends from any of these countries? fyes, who?
- . What do you know about the different kinds of food from each country?
- . Do you know any other famous things from each country?

## PRACTICE

7 Complete the form with your own information.

SURNAME

FIRST NAME

MIDDLE NAME

GENDER Male Female

NATIONALITY

DATE OF BIRTH

ADDRESS

TELEPHONE NUMBER

EMAIL ADDRESS

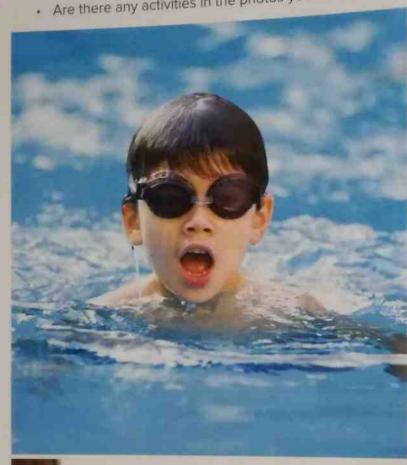


# 2 WRITING Pen friends

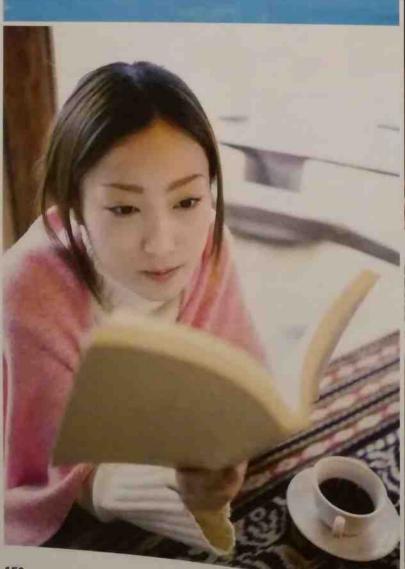
## SPEAKING

- Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - Which people in the photos like doing the same things as you?
  - How often do you do these things?

  - Are there any activities in the photos you really don't like doing? Why not?











152

#### WRITING complete the internet profile with the words in the box. first full prothers parents student meeting

playing

usually

evenings

foreign



M
My name's Tilu (pronounced Tee-you). Well, that's my name is Tilu upping, but people 3 just call me T! I'm from Estonia, in the north of Europe – it's next to aussia and above Latvia – and I want to write to someone in a 4 country. It's a good way to practise my English.
lallinn University. I'm studying Medicine. I want be a doctor in the future. I also work in a shop a week. I enjoy it because I like people and the money's OK.
tennis and reading.
but my 10 say I'm too young -
way, if you want to write to someone from the try mel Tell me about yourself.

Work in pairs. Discuss how you are similar to Tiiu and how you are different.

For example:

She likes swimming, and I like it too. She lives with her parents, but I live on my own.

## KEY WORDS FOR WRITING

And is a linking word. We use and to join words and phrases together.

I live with my mum and dad. I live with my three brothers.

= I live with my mum and dad and Hive with my three brothers.

Note that here we don't need to repeat I live with

When more than two words or phrases are connected, we only use and between the last two

I like swimming. I like playing tennis. I like reading.

= I like swimming, Hike playing tennis and reading

Note that here we don't need to repeat I the

- 4 Connect these sentences using and. Don't repeat any words that you don't need to repeat.
  - 1 I play volleyball. I play golf.
  - 2 Bangkok is really crowded. It's polluted
  - 3 I like reading. I like learning languages. I like computers.



- 4 My brother lives in Dubai. My sister lives in Istanbul.
- 5. I live with my mum and dad. I live with my sister. I live with my aunt. I live with my grandfather.

## PRACTICE

- Write a reply to Tiiu. Use some of phrases in the box and tell her:
  - · where you are from and where you live.
  - what you do.
  - what you like doing.
  - · who you live with.
    - My full name is \_\_\_\_\_\_, but people usually call me
  - I'm from \_\_\_\_\_ and I live in \_\_\_
  - I live with \_\_\_\_\_/I live on my own.
  - I like \_\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_

# 3 WRITING Cards

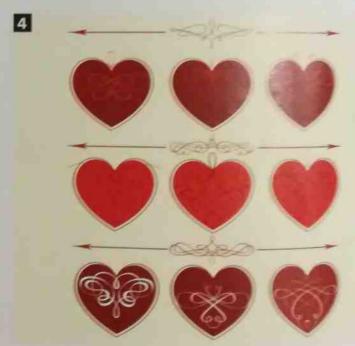
## SPEAKING

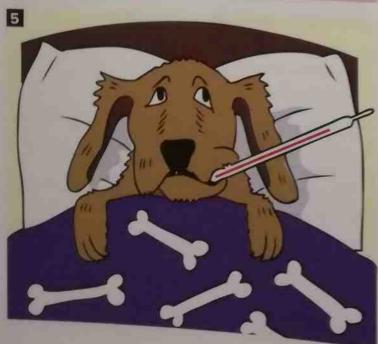
- 1 Match the cards in the box to the pictures.
  - a birthday card a get well soon card
- a Valentine card a Mother's Day card
- a Christmas card a wedding card













Beginn
to show in
came. For
Dear Valch
peer Tom

Best wish All the be

ceur first na

Lots of lov Love,

3 Cover cards

> Happy Thope

Trimi

Dear M Miguel Googra

Lots of

Deor A

I hope All the Supe Work in groups. Discuss these questions.

po you ever send cards or e-cards? Who to? When?

, can you remember the last card you sent?

can you remember the last card you received?

What kind of thing is good to write in the different winds of cards in the box?

## **VOCABULARY**

## Beginning and ending cards

a show who a card is for, we usually write Dear + first name. For example:

Dear Yolchi,

Dear Tom and Susanna,

we usually finish with one of these expressions and then our first name.

Regards,

(for people we don't know very well)

Best wishes,

(for friends)

All the best.

lots of love.

(for family members and old friends)

Love,

Cover the information box above. Complete the cards with one word in each space.

Sally,

Happy birthday!

hope you have a great day.

wishes,

Trini



Dear Maria 3\_

Congratulations on your new baby boy.

Thope you are all well.



Dear Agran,

Good luck with your new job.

hope everything goes well.

All the 5



# KEY WORDS FOR WRITING

## hope

We use hope to show what we want to be true now or what we want to happen in the future.

I hope you are all well.

(= now / at the moment)

I hope everything goes well.

(= in the future)

When we use hope to talk about the future, we usually use a verb in the present simple form after it.

## Match the sentences with the follow-up

- 1 Sorry to hear you were ill.
- 2 Sorry to hear about your computer.
- 3 Good luck with your exams next week.
- 4 Good luck with your interview.
- 5 Happy birthday.
- 6 Happy Christmas and New Year.
- a I hope you have a fantastic day.
- b I hope you get the job.
- c I hope it isn't too expensive to replace.
- d I hope you're feeling better now.
- e I hope you enjoy your holiday.
- f I hope you pass them all.

## Work in pairs. Discuss why people hope the things in the sentences below. There is an example for the first sentence.

- 1 I hope it doesn't rain.
- A: Maybe the person wants to go to the beach.
- B: Yes, or maybe they want to play football in the park.
- 2 I hope it's open tonight.
- 3 I hope she got home OK.
- 4 I hope you like it.
- 5 I hope they lose!
- 6 I hope it doesn't take too long.
- Think of two things you hope are true or that you hope happen in the future. Then tell your partner your ideas.

## PRACTICE

Write three cards to different people. They can be birthday cards, cards wishing someone good luck, wedding cards, etc. Use some language from these pages.

# 4 WRITING Making arrangements

## SPEAKING

- 1 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - Where are the most popular meeting places in your town / city?
  - Where do you usually meet your friends?
  - Do you usually arrive before, at or after the time you agree to meet? Why?
  - What are good meeting places for these different kinds of people:
    - parents with children?
    - teenagers?
    - older people?
    - people going on a date?

## WRITING

2 Complete the email with the words in the box.

four	me	that	what	where

Complete Mel's reply with the words in a

			- the h	
can	easy	from	on	- 50
				Hear

emma2001jenkins@shoemail.qb Subject Re: Tomorrow

Hi Emma,

I don't finish work until about five tomorrow, Maybe we can meet somewhere 1\_\_\_\_\_ There's a café near there called Café Blue, It's quite nice. They do good food there if you want to have something to eat.

Clarendon Street, which is off Bedford Road. When you come out of the station, turn right and walk down Bedford Road. Clarendon Street is the first on the left. The café is two minutes' walk there. It's 4\_\_\_\_\_ to find. It's a big place with chairs and tables outside. You 5 always phone me on your mobile if you can't find it



## GRAMMAR

b

## Present simple future

Match the names o

to a-d on the map. compare your ideas

We use the present sir future - trains, planes,

My class finishes at fo I don't finish work unt

- Complete the se form of the verb
  - 1 What time \_ (finish)
  - 2 What time \_
  - \_ WOI meet in the mo
  - 4 I don't want to i 11.30. (leave)
  - The shop \_ half past nine. (
  - 6 My train\_ (arrive)
  - The café \_ before then. (cl
  - 8 I think the film

## Work in pairs. I

- What time doe
- When is your n start and finish
- What time do y

Match the names of the places from Mel's email march in the map. Then work in pairs and ompare your ideas. d C а

## GRAMMAR

box.

ar

## Present simple to talk about the

leuse the present simple to talk about timetables in the dure - trains, planes, buses, classes, work, films, etc.

ly class finishes at four.

con't finish work until about five tomorrow.

Complete the sentences	with the	present	simple
form of the verbs in bra	ckets.		

1 What time. work tomorrow? you. (finish)

your flight on Sunday? (be)

work until twelve tomorrow, so we can meet in the morning. (not / start)

4 I don't want to miss the last bus, It \_ 11.30. (leave)

5 The shop until ten, so let's meet at around half past nine. (not / open)

6 My train \_\_ at eight. We can meet after that. (arrive)

7 The café at eight, so we need to get there before then, (close)

8 I think the film \_ \_\_\_\_ at about ten. (end)

# Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

What time does your class finish today?

When is your next English class? What time does it

What time do you start work / school tomorrow?

## KEY WORDS FOR WRITING

## when

We use when to join two actions in a sentence. The when part of the sentence happens first.

When you come out of the station, turn right and walk

(= First, come out of the station. Second, turn right and walk down Bedford Road.)

Call me when you're ready.

(= First, be ready. Second, call me.)

Note that we use the present simple after when to talk about the future.

When I have my next holiday, I'm going to watch every episode of Breaking Bad.

- Decide which action happens first in each pair (1-5). Then write a sentence and connect the ideas with when.
  - 1 you can see the hotel / you come out of the station
  - 2 you get to the end of Main Street / turn right
  - 3 take a bus to the centre of town / you come out of the airport
  - 4 call me / you get to the station
  - 5 I'm going to go out and celebrate / I finish my exams
- Work in pairs. Give directions from where you are now to where you live - or another place you know well.

For example:

When you leave this building, take the 29 bus. Stay on the bus for about half an hour. When you get to St Ann's Road, get off the bus. Walk down Green Lanes. When you get to Seymour Road, turn left. I live there.

Work in groups. Take turns to complete each sentence in different ways. Use going to. How many different sentences can you make?

1	When I have my next holiday,
2	When my English is really good,

3 When I become President, \_\_

## PRACTICE

Write your own reply to Emma's email in Exercise 2. Arrange what time to meet - and where. Use Mel's email to help you.

# 5 WRITING Visiting friends

## **SPEAKING**

- 1 Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - Do you have any friends or relatives in other towns, cities or countries?
  - Where do they live? What do they do there?
  - Have you ever visited them? If yes, when? How long for? Did you have a good time?
  - Have they ever visited you? If yes, when? How long for? Did you take them anywhere special?

## **VOCABULARY** Places to visit

2 Match the words in the box to the photos.

beach	church	island	mosque	waterfall
castle	gallery	lake	tower	

- 3 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
  - Which of the places in the box do you have near where you live?
  - Do you ever visit these places? How often?
  - Which places do you recommend the most? Why?

## WRITING 1

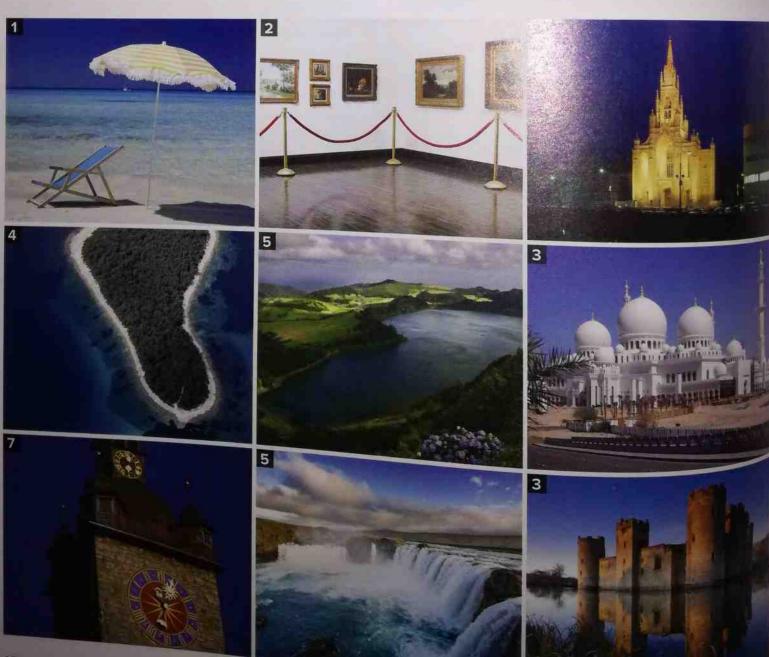
4 Complete the email with the words in the box.

can like planning when where

To jackcracker@shoemail.gb
Subject Visiting the UK!

I'm 1 \_\_\_\_\_ to come to the UK in the summer. I'd
to visit you in Nottingham, if possible.
you send me an email to tell me if and
I can visit? Also, 5 \_\_\_\_\_ else do you
think I should go when I'm in England? I'm going to
stay for about three weeks.

Best,
Giorgio



Hi FI
I'm F
I'd lil
senc
visit
I'm ii
three

Bes'

Tany

the

Wr

WRIT

7 Bel

ci

Hi T Tha you to c at n big, You wha

in h the go i lake Any clea

sho

Bes Fran

WI All

Look at t	his email. as in Gio	Underline everything that is rgio's email.
	To Subject	f.cremers@shoemail.gb Visiting Germany!
d like to vi	email to le where else lany? I'm or	o Germany on holiday in April. rankfurt, if possible. Can you et me know if and when I can do you think I should go when ally going to stay for about
gest, Tanya		
Write an Use langu	email to a	friend in another country. the two emails above.
WRITING	2	
naloveric	a reply to	one of the emails from

## Writing 1. Complete it with the words in the box. your plans vour email a spare room the weather cities the countryside

	То	t.tucker@shoemail.go
	Subject	Re: Visiting Germany
Hi Tanya,		
you again. I to come to at my flat. I	'm really pl Germany in have <sup>2</sup>	It was really nice to hear from eased to hear you're planning April. If you like, you can stay
should go to things to do in history. If the Allgäu, i go if 3 akes, and s	ant to do. If D Berlin. It's O there. It's O you prefer In the south I some amazi	es to visit. Well, it depends you like 3, you great, and there are lots of also good if you're interested 4, you should go to a. It's a really lovely place to There are lots of rivers and ng old castles.
clearer. I'm	the most	gain when 6 are ng forward to seeing you
Anyway we	ome amazi	ng old castles.

Which place sounds better to you - Berlin or the Allgau? Why?

# KEY WORDS FOR WRITING

if

We often make suggestions using If you ..., you should ... . If you like cities, you should go to Berlin.

If you prefer the countryside, you should go to the Allgau.

- Match the two parts of the sentences.
  - 1 If you like tennis,
  - 2 If you like the countryside,
  - 3 If you like the sea,
  - 4 If you like shopping,
  - 5 If you're interested in history,
  - a you should go to the Komensky Museum.
  - b you should go to Wangfujing Street. That's where the big department stores are.
  - c you should go to Albufeira. It has some great beaches.
  - d you should watch some games at Wimbledon.
  - e you should go to Brittany. It's really beautiful.
- Write three similar sentences about your own 10 country.

If you	, you should	
If you	, you should	
If you	, you should	

We use lots of other expressions with if.

I'm afraid the room's not very big, but you can sleep there, if that's OK with you.

Complete the if-expressions with the words in the box.

	like	Hecessary	22111		ä
1	You (	can stay at our h	iouse, if visit you	you when I'm in Londor	1,
				n pay someone, if	
4	 Takir	ng a boat down	the rive	's great if the	
5	I'm g	oing to arrive at	-	ouse at around six with you.	

Translate the five expressions with if Exercise 11 into your language. 12

PRACTICE

Write to a foreign friend who is planning to visit your country. Before you write, underline any language in Frank's email that you want to use.

weather

possible

# 6 WRITING Describing food

## **SPEAKING**

- 1 Work in groups. Discuss the questions. Use some of the expressions in bold in the box below.
  - What do you know about each of the different kinds of food in the photos?
  - Which have you tried? Where did you have it? Did you like it?
  - What other different kinds of food have you tried? When? Where? What did you have?

I think it's a Japanese dish.

It's called tagine.

It's made from beetroot.

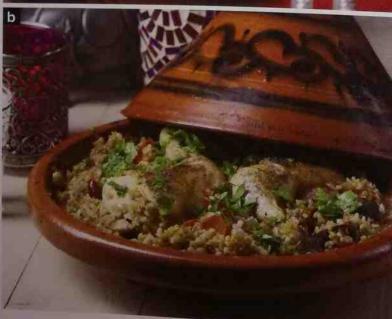
It's quite spicy.

It looks really nice.

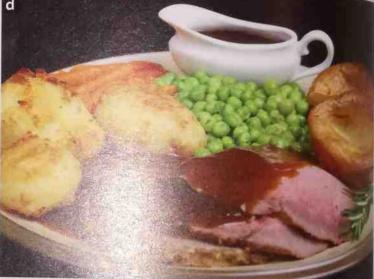
I cook it sometimes.

I had it when I was in England.













WRIT 2 CO

Ho Ho me it's the arc bee like ust

We the ice Oh ma 7\_it w Any col

W

Hé

.

KEY

too Too H

S

V

## RITING complete the email with the words in the box.

pork heard share red pasta typical healthy

> pshaw@shoemail.gb Food! Subject

Hagain,

How're you? I hope you're well. You asked me about Argentinean food. Well, let me tell you pout it. In Argentina, we eat a lot of 2 some people say we eat too much meat and ns not very 3\_\_\_\_\_, but I love it. I think we have he best beef in the world. Our cows are free to run ground in the countryside! We usually 4 peef on a barbecue, and we cook lots of other meat ike this too - lamb, 5\_ \_ and chicken. We usually eat the meat with salad or chips.

we also eat a lot of pizza and 6\_ because here are lots of Italians living here. We have great ce cream, too!

On I nearly forgot, we have a special drink called note, which is very important here too. Have you of it? It's a kind of tea and we r with friends. It's very nice.

Anyway, write and tell me about the food in your country.

All the best,

## Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

- · Have you ever tried Argentinean beef or any other Argentinean food?
- From Héctor's email, do you think Argentinean food sounds good? Why? / Why not?
- · What sounds best to you?
- Have you ever heard of mate?
- What kinds of food / drinks do you usually share with friends?

## EY WORDS FOR WRITING

o has two main uses:

Before adjectives, adverbs or much I many to show Something is bad because it's more than we want.

Some people say we eat too much meat.

don't like Indian food. It's too spicy.

At the end of a sentence or clause to mean also.

We have great ice cream too!

We cook lots of other meat like this too - lamb, pork,

- Read the explanation box and decide if too has meaning a or meaning b in each of these
  - 1 I mainly eat vegetarian food, but I eat some seafood
  - 2 I think people use too much salt in their food here.
  - 3 Baklava is a typical dessert in Turkey but I find it a bit
  - 4 I love cooking. I make a lot of nice pasta dishes and I
  - 5 There are a lot of Chinese restaurants in the city and there are quite a few other Asian places too - Thai, Indian, Korean.
- Put too in the correct place in these sentences.
  - 1 I tasted the soup but it was hot and I burnt my mouth!
  - 2 We have the best beef in the world and the lamb we produce is really good.
  - 3 I make dinner at home most days, but my husband and son cook.
  - 4 I don't eat out round here because the restaurants are expensive.
  - 5 He drinks a lot of cola and he eats many sweets. It's not healthy.

## PRACTICE

- Choose the words that are true for you and your country.
  - 1 We eat a lot of I don't eat much red meat.
  - 2 We usually grill / fry / roast meat.
  - 3 We eat a lot of I don't eat much fish and seafood.
  - 4 We eat a lot of I don't eat much fresh fruit and vegetables.
  - 5 We eat quite a lot of potatoes / pasta / rice.
  - 6 The food here is quite / isn't very spicy.
  - 7 I think I I don't think we eat very healthily.
  - 8 I think / I don't think our food is the best food in the world!
- Now write an email to Héctor in Argentina. Tell him about the food in your country. Use language from Exercise 6 and from Héctor's email. Start like this:

Hi, how're you? Thanks for your last email. It was really interesting. So let me tell you about the food in ....

# 7 WRITING Describing photos

## SPEAKING

- Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
  - Do you like taking photos? Are you good at it?
  - · What do you take photos of?
  - Do you share photos on the internet? On which websites?
  - Do you often look at other people's photos?
  - Do you like seeing photos of yourself? Why? / Why
  - Have you got any photos on your mobile phone?

## WRITING

You are going to read two descriptions of the photos on this page. First, look at the photos. Which words in the box do you think go with each photo?

forest her tail protected cute cheer up wolves

Now read the texts and see if you were right.

This is a photo of me with my new cat, Twinky. I've been ill, so my parents bought her to cheer me up. And it worked! She looks so cute and she's really funny especially when she chases her tail! She makes me laugh. She's seven months old now and she runs around and plays all the time. I love her. I'm feeling a lot better now, so I might go back to school next week or the week after.

his is a photo of me and my friends walking in Great Bear Forest. It's near where I live in Vancouver, so we often go there - sometimes just for the day and sometimes longer. As you can see, the scenery is amazing with the mountains and rivers and trees. The area is protected because some of the trees are 1,000 years old and there are animals like bears and wolves - oh, and there are salmon too. It's sunny sometimes, but the day we took this photo, it rained all day. We decided to walk across the river because we were already so wet! Luckily, it was also a warm day, so we didn't get cold. I know I don't look happy, but we really





GR

Li

Lin

ad

Sh

Iki

Ot

## Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

- Which photo do you like best? Why?
- Do the photos and text:
  - make you want to have a cat? Why? / Why not?
  - make you want to go to Great Bear Forest? Why? Why not?
- Has anyone ever bought you something to cheef you up? What? Why were you sad in the first place.
- Have you ever been for a walk in the rain? Where! Why did you go?

had a good time!

2

# EY WORDS FOR WRITING

We use so to link a reason to an action.

action

we been III, so my parents bought her to cheer me up.

We also use so to mean very.

she looks so cute.

## Find an example of each use of so in text 2.

## put so in the correct place in the sentences.

- 1 Ilook strange in this photo.
- 2 It was his birthday I made him a cake.
- 3 It rained a lot we spent most of the holiday indoors.
- 4 I was happy when I opened the present.
- 5 You can't see her very well in the photo because it was dark.
- 6 We missed our plane we had to wait in the airport for six hours.

## Rewrite these sentences with so.

- 1 You look very young there!
- 2 We didn't go because it snowed.
- 3 Itook a photo because I wanted to show you my
- 4 You look very bored. Were you?

## RAMMAR

## linking verbs

rking verbs like be and look can be followed by an lective.

ne looks so cute.

frow! don't look happy, but we had a good time.

ther linking verbs are: get, feel, seem, sound and taste.

## Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb and the adjective in brackets.

I hate this photo. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ in it. (look / stupid)

- <sup>2</sup> This is a photo of me when I was trying the local tea \_\_\_ (taste / horrible)
- I didn't have a jersey with me, so I \_\_\_\_\_. (get / really cold)
- I didn't speak to her very much, but she \_\_ (seem / nice).
- This is a photo of the band I went to see. It's a shame you can't hear their music – they \_\_\_\_\_. (sound /
- You can see my brother at the back of the photo. It's the man who \_\_\_\_\_ (look / bored)

## PRACTICE

- You are going to write about a photo. Work in pairs. Choose one of the photos on this page or one of your own. Talk about:
  - where the photo was taken.
  - · who the people are.
  - what they are doing.
  - · the weather.
  - · how they look, feel, etc.
  - anything that happened before or after the photo
- 10 Write a short description of between 40 and







## 8 WRITING Messages

## SPEAKING

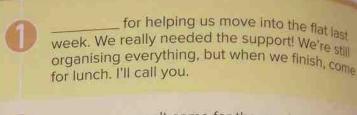
- 1 Work in pairs. Discuss how you share news about yourself and give messages.
  - Which of these are most common / least common for you?
    - post a public update on social media (Facebook, Twitter, etc.)
    - send a private message through social media
    - send a text
    - send an email
    - write a note / a letter / a card
    - phone and speak to someone
    - wait to speak face-to-face
  - Does the way you share news depend on the kind of news / message?
  - Have you shared any news or written any messages recently? What about?

## WRITING

2 Read the different messages. Complete the texts with one word in each space.

Thanks	Very sadly	Back	In fact
Lovely	Great news	Sorry	Listen

Work in pairs. How would you give each message? Use the ideas in Exercise 1.



- can't come for the meal. Not feeling well. Will call you next week. Hope you all have a nice time. xxx

I can't come to the cinema with you tonight. I have too much work to do. \_\_\_\_\_\_, I don't think we should continue seeing each other. It's not you – it's me. I'm not ready for a serious relationship. I have too many other things to think about.

\_\_\_\_ about your new job.
Congratulations. Want to meet for a drink sometime soon to celebrate?

to see you at the weekend. Really enjoyed it. Send us the photos you took when you get the chance. Thanks. N.

Hi Andrew. I'm sorry I haven't been in contact for a long time. \_\_\_\_\_\_, my father died three months ago. As you can imagine, it was a big shock and it's been very difficult for me. I am very slowly trying to get back to my normal life. It would be really great to hear from you. Love J xx

Gone to town. \_\_\_\_\_ about 8.

Text me if you want anything from the shops.

Bill. \_\_\_\_\_\_, I'm going to be in Boston next Tuesday. Could I come and stay with you? I have some work there. I'll be with you for three days. I really hope I can!

Shorte We often v grammar v pronouns referring auxiliary articles (c Sorry - ca (= I'm sorr Want to m = Do you We also o ..? if we k Send us t (= Could y Look a use no you th

GRAMIN

5 Write forms

6 Write

1 Can pack

2 I had back

3 I'm g

RAMMAR

nortening messages

offen write messages in note form by leaving out some mmar words:

voncuns (l, it, you, etc.) if it is obvious who we are

pallery verbs (am. have, etc.), if the time is obvious

vicies (a / the)

can't come to the meal.

I'm sorry. I can't come to the meal.)

not to meet for a drink sometime soon?

po you want to meet for a drink sometime soon?)

walso often use imperatives instead of can / could you live know the person well.

and us the photos you took.

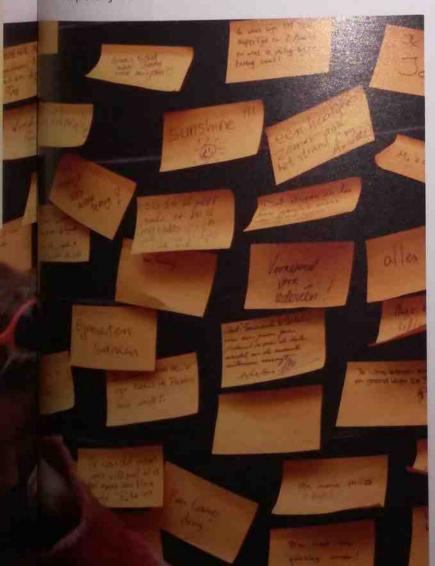
could you send us the photos you took?)

Look at the messages in Exercise 2. Which ones use note form and which ones don't? Why do you think that is?

Write the full grammatical messages where note forms are used.

Write these messages in note form.

- 1 Can you go to the shops? We need some milk and a packet of pasta.
- 2 I had to go out. Your dinner is in the fridge. I'll be back at eleven.
- 3 I'm going to be late. There's a lot of traffic I'il hopefully be there at 9.30.



# KEY WORDS FOR WRITING

## prepositions

We often use specific prepositions with certain words or

Thanks for helping us.

You must come for lunch.

Great news about your job.

Lovely to see you at the weekend.

I'm sorry I haven't been in contact for a long time.

## Choose the correct preposition.

- 1 That's awful news about / with your dad. I'm so sorry.
- 2 Thanks to everyone about I for all your messages of support. They were really helpful.
- 3 Sorry I haven't been for I in contact recently. I've been very busy
- 4 Do you want to meet about / for a drink later tonight?
- 5 I was thinking about I on you yesterday. I hope the exam went well.
- 6 We're all ready for I of your visit and really looking forward at / to seeing you.
- 7 Would you like to come at / for dinner at / on the weekend?
- 8 Gone to / for the gym. Will be back at / on 6.

8 Complete each sentence in two way	two ways.	ence in	senter	each	Complete	8
-------------------------------------	-----------	---------	--------	------	----------	---

1	Thanks	
2	Great news	
3	Would you like	to come
4	Gone	Will be back

## PRACTICE

4 Gone

- Work in pairs. Write two messages to your partner. Choose from the ideas below. Use language from these pages.
  - Share some good news.
  - Share some bad news.
  - Thank them for something.
  - Say sorry for something.
  - Invite them to do something.
  - Offer to do something.
  - Ask them to do something.
- Exchange your messages. Write a reply. 10

# GRAMMAR REFERENCE

## 1 PEOPLE AND PLACES

Hello. I'm Bruce. (= I am)

You're late! (= You are)

He's a doctor. (= He is)

She's 21. (= She is)

It's cold today. (= It is)

We're from Venezuela. (= We are)

They're our friends. (= They are)

In normal spoken English, we usually use the short forms.

#### Negatives

I'm not hungry. (= I am not)

You're not in the right class. (= You are not)

He's not French. (= He is not)

She's not very interesting. (= She is not)

It's not cheap. (= It is not)

We're not happy about it. (= We are not)

They're not married. (= They are not)

#### DID YOU KNOW?

We also use the negative short forms isn't and aren't. Choose the one you like!

My dad isn't from here. They aren't married.

#### Questions

Where am I on the map? Am I next?

How are you? Are you OK? Where is he from? Is he happy here? Who is she? Is she ill today? Is it cold outside? What time is it? Why are we here? Are we late? What are their names? Are they good?

#### Exercise 1

## Complete the conversation with the correct form of be.

I: Hi. Come in. Sit down. How 1\_ M: Fine. I: I'm Ivy. What 2\_ \_ your name?

M: Miguel Hernandez.

I And where 3\_\_\_\_ \_ you from, Miguel? Spain?

\_ from Mexico. M: No. 14

I: Which part?

M: Chihuahua. It 5\_\_ \_ a city in the north.

\_\_\_\_it nice?

M: Yeah. Some things 7\_ \_ nice.

\_\_ it hot?

not. In June, it's very hot. 30, 35. M: Now? No. it 9\_

I: OK. And what do you do?

M: Oh, I'm police.

I: Really? You 10 \_\_\_\_\_ a police officer?

M. Yes.

#### DID YOU KNOW?

When we answer Are you / Is it ...? questions, we usually only say yes or no. Sometimes we add I am I it is, etc.

A: Are you from here?

B: Yes. I am. / No, I'm not.

A: Is it cold outside?

B: Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.

There is more practice on this in Unit 7

## Exercise 2

## Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 teacher/a/French/I'm/.
- 2 where / from / you / are / ?
- 3 it/time/is/what/?
- 4 not/sure/l'm/.
- 5 the / they / airport / are / at /.
- 6 big/it/is/a/not/place/.
- 7 are / grandparents / old / how / your /?
- 8 winter/it/is/cold/in/?

## PRESENT SIMPLE

## I / you / we / they

The present simple form is the same as the infinitive.

I go swimming every day.

You drink a lot of coffee!

We live in the north of the country.

They work at the University of Salamanca.

## it / he / she

Add -s to the infinitive form.

It rains a lot in the winter. He likes swimming.

She wants to be a doctor.

Look at these spelling changes for he / she / it forms.

do - does try - tries have - has

cry - cries 90 - goes

## Negatives

I/you/we/they don't + infinitive

I don't like the town very much. (= do not)

You don't know my Jown, I'm sure.

We don't go there a lot.

They don't visit us very often.

he / she / it + doesn't + infinitive

He doesn't have any brothers or sisters. (= does not)

She doesn't feel safe.

It doesn't snow here.

#### Questions

Do + 1 / you / we / they + infinitive

Where do I go now?

Where do you live?

How do we go there?

Do they have any children?

Does + she / it / he / they + infinitive

Where does she work?

When does it start? What does he do?

## Exercise 1

## Choose the correct option.

- 1 She work / works for a big company.
- 2 Does he like / likes his job?
- 3 We get up / gets up at five every morning.
- 4 What time do you / he finish work?
- 5 Where do / does your grandparents live?
- 6 He's 40 and he live / lives with his mum.
- 7 I doesn't / don't like football.
- 8 My brother have / has three children.
- 9 It don't / doesn't rain a lot there.
- 10 How many cars do he / they have?

Exercise 2 Complete t Where \_

when -

3 How man 4 What mu

5 What \_\_\_ 6 Why —

DID YOU K When we a only say ye sometimes A: Do you e B: Yes, I do

A: Does he B: Yes, he There is m

Exercise 3 Complete or doesn't 1 A: What

B: I'm a

2 A: What B: 1\_\_\_\_

3 A: Whe B: She .

4 A: Whe B: Halif

B: No, 1

6 A: We\_ work

B: So w 7 A:\_

B: Yes,

THERE With sin

There

With plu

There

Are

sentence You will It and Unit

Exercise 1 plete the questions. Choose the correct option. your parents live? There's / There are a cinema in the town. she finish work? 2 It's nice. There's / There are a lot of trees and parks. you like? 3 There's / There are a lot of hotels near the station. mat music \_\_\_\_\_ you like? 4 There's / There are a beautiful river near here, I sometimes they like him? He's awfull 5 It's not a bad place to live. There's / There are a nice feel YOU KNOW? answer Do you / Does she ...? questions, we usually 6 It's a nice city, but there's / there are a lot of cars! There's / There are some nice shops and restaurants near metimes we add / do / you don't / she doesn't, etc. 8 It's OK. There's / There are a nice beach and there's / τογου enjoy your job? & Ido. I No. I don't. thes he work with you? Exercise 2 ns, he does. / No, he doesn't. Correct the mistake in each sentence. ye is more practice on this in Unit 7. 1 Not there are any jobs here. 2 Have a lovely river in the town. implete the questions and answers with do, does, don't 3 There are a lot expensive houses in this area. 4 There aren't good shops here. doesn't. 5 Is a nice place to eat near here? \_\_\_ you do? A What 6 There is not cheap hotels in the centre. B. I'm a cleaner. he do? A What \_\_\_\_\_ REVISION 81\_\_\_\_know. A Where \_\_\_\_ \_your mother work? Exercise 1 8 She \_\_\_\_\_ have a job at the moment. Rewrite the sentences as negatives. your parents live? A Where \_\_\_ 1 I like French food. \_\_ a Hallfax. 2 I'm hungry. k\_\_\_\_\_you enjoy working there? 3 She works here. \_ 4 They're from this country. \_ \_ live near my office, so I take the agin to 5 I work at the weekends. \_ work. 6 He's in the office today. \_\_ a So what time \_\_ \_\_ you leave home? 7 They live together. \_\_ \_\_\_ they have any kids? 8 It's cold today. B Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_. Two, I think. 9 There are some shops in the village. \_ 10 There's a hotel near the airport. \_\_ HERE IS ... / THERE ARE ... Exercise 2 Ath singular nouns Complete the sentences with the present simple form of the verbs. Use short forms where possible. cinema. \_\_\_\_\_ sport. (not / like) 2 There \_\_\_\_\_ any nice shops near there. (not / be) great museum. a / an old church near here. 3 What time \_\_\_\_ \_\_you usually \_\_\_\_\_\_ your house in the morning? (leave) isn't park near here. 4 There \_\_\_\_\_ a bank in the village. (not / be) 5 We \_\_\_\_\_ English. We \_\_\_\_\_ Scottish. (not / be, café near here? there a / an airport? be) \_\_\_\_ there a post office near here? (be) ith plural nouns 7 My father \_\_\_\_\_ a new job. (have) 8 \_\_\_\_\_ they open today? (be) two cinemas. 9 I'm sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_\_. (not / understand) some parks near here. 10 Where \_\_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_? (live) a lot of shops in town. Complete the sentences with one word in each space. gren't any places for kids. a lot of shops. 1 Where \_\_\_\_\_\_you from? there shops near here? 2 Where \_\_\_\_\_ you work? any 3 My sister \_\_\_\_\_ two children. people there? e ony in questions and negatives, but some in positive \_ 26 and my sister \_ 5 It's a nice house, but it \_\_\_\_\_ have a garden. 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ like shopping, but my wife loves it! learn more about there is I there are in Unit 2, Unit 3 \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher. He \_ 7 My boyfriend \_\_ school in Graz.

\_\_\_your mother work?

## **2 FREE TIME**

#### VERB PATTERNS

A Some verbs are often followed by -ing.

I love playing tennis.

He really likes swimming.

I enjoy working on my own.

I hate living in the city.

Notice the spelling changes.

chat - chatting dance - dancing run - running have - having swim - swimming live - living

B Some verbs are often followed by to + verb.

I don't want to live in an old building.

I want to learn to drive.

I need to go now.

Try to use the words you learn.

#### DID YOU KNOW?

These verbs can also be followed by nouns.

I love Mexico.

I don't like the traffic in my city.

Do you want a drink?

Try the food. It's great.

## Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

-1	I don't like <u>Swimin</u>	much. (swim)
2	Do you want	later? (go out)
3	I try ru	nning every day. (go)
4	I hate	and I'm very bad at it. (dance)
5	How do you learn	a teacher? (be)
6	They really enjoy	music together. (play)
	My dad loves	
8	We need	where to have lunch. (decide)

#### DID YOU KNOW?

We also use -ing forms after prepositions such as at. He's really good at learning languages. I'm really bad at remembering names.

Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 My brother really likes read.
- 2 I hate sing. I'm really bad at it.
- 3 My parents want have more free time.
- 4 I don't really enjoy to work in an office.
- 5 I always try go to bed before eleven.
- 6 I need finishing my homework before I go out.
- 7 I'm not very good at play the guitar.
- 8 She's bad at draw, but she enjoys doing it.

## ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

l We They	100%		have a coffee after lunch
He She		sometimes occasionally hardly ever never	has a coffee after lunch,

## Negatives

We use usually and often in negative sentences. I don't usually drink coffee after six in the evening. I don't often go out. I I don't go out very often.

## Questions

Look at the adverbs we use to ask questions about frequency.

A: Where do you usually go out at night?

B: I normally go into town, but I sometimes go to the beach

A: What do you normally do at the weekend?

B: I usually go to the countryside with my family.

We use ever to ask about habits. It means at any time.

A: Do you ever go to the theatre?

B: No, never.

A: Do you ever go swimming?

B: Occasionally, but not very often.

#### Exercise 1

Choose the best adverb.

- 1 Lusually read novels, but I sometimes / normally read history books.
- 2 I don't earn muca money, so I hardly ever I sometimes go out for dinner.
- 3 I really like football, but I never I often go and watch matches at the stadium.
- 4 My mum usually / always finishes work at six, but she sometimes works late - until eight or nine.
- 5 I never I occasionally drink coffee. I hate the taste and think it's bad for your health.
- 6 Hove cooking. I always / occasionally make dinner for my family.

### Exercise 2

Put the adverb in the correct place in each sentence.

- 1 I sleep until twelve on Sunday mornings. (often)
- 2 My parents do sport. (hardly ever)
- 3 I don't go shopping. (very often)
- 4 I decide what to do in my family. (never)
- 5 A: Do you go out dancing? (ever) B: Yes, sometimes. With friends.
- 6 A: What time do you get up? (usually)
  - B: At seven o'clock during the week.

COUN Counta

10 10

10 TH 10 TH

TI

TI

Al D

Uncoul TI Tt

10

It'

TI D D

Some o fish, foc Exerci:

Choose 1 Doy

2 Doy 3 A: Is

B: It's th

4 A: D B: No

5 A: D B: Ye 6 A: D

B: Ye DID YO Liquids

about d

#### UNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS mble nouns pencil. office. an work in new pens. some cafés near here. a lot of there are dictionary. won't need airport near here. there isn't an they don't have kids. any places to sit. many mere oren't a lot of shops. mere aren't sister? 70 you have places to eat near here? any Are there chips? Do you want some

## untable nouns

There's	some a lot of	nice countryside near here. traffic today.
Idon't have Its not There Isn't	any much a lot of	money. homework. traffic.
Do you have Do you want	any some	paper? water?

eather words which are often uncountable: food, fruit, help, news, time, paper, water

#### meise 1

we the correct option.

lo you have some / a dictionary?

loyou need a / some help?

Isita good place to live?

Is great. There are a lot of I any parks and trees, and liere's not much / many traffic.

Do you want to take any / a break?

No We don't have much / some time.

Do you have any / a paper?

Yes. How much / many do you want?

Do you want a / any fruit?

Yes, please. Do you have an I any oranges?

## YOU KNOW?

ds are usually uncountable, but in cafés, etc. we talk drinks as countable.





## one and some

When we answer questions about nouns, we don't usually say the noun again. Instead, we replace singular nouns with one – and plural / uncountable nouns with some.

B: Yes - there's one on the next road. A: Do you have any tissues?

B: Yes – there are some on the table there.

## Exercise 2

## Complete the answers with one

A:	DO VOUL		T. WAA	one
-	Do you have	a	Den?	
B:	I think thous		E-CIT	

nk there's \_\_\_\_ on the table.

2 A: Do you have any money with you? B: Yeah, I have \_

. How much do you need? 3 A: Does Jessica want a cup of coffee?

B: No, she has \_ already.

4 A: Do you have any water?

B: No, sorry. I think Gary has . 5 A: Do you have any tissues?

B: No, but you can get \_ from the bathroom.

Don't worry if you are still not sure about this grammar. There are lots more examples in the book and there's more practice in Unit 3, Unit 6 and Unit 10.

## REVISION

#### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with these pairs of words. You might need to change the order.

want + very often often + like love + usually hate + always hate + never hardly ever + need

1	doing sport. I	do something –
	swimming or running or tennis -	every day.
123		

2 I'm not very fit because I\_ do any exercise. I \_ to join a gym or something.

to have more free time. I don't go out

cook dinner for my parents. I\_\_\_ 4 1\_ it.

getting up early. I \_\_ get up before eleven at the weekends.

get to school early. \_ being late. I \_\_\_ 6 1\_\_\_

## Exercise 2

## Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 new/like/I/meeting/people/.

2 I/to/game/buy/a/want/computer/.

3 to / do / you / music / listening / like /?

4 go / I / cinema / to / the / hardly / ever / .

5 chat/sometimes/on/I/internet/the/. 6 | / Wednesdays / play / on / tennis / usually / .

get / usually / what / time / you / home / do /?

8 you / dancing / go / do / out / ever /?

## Exercise 3

## Write questions with a / an / any.

1 you / have / white paper?

2 he / have / job / at the moment?

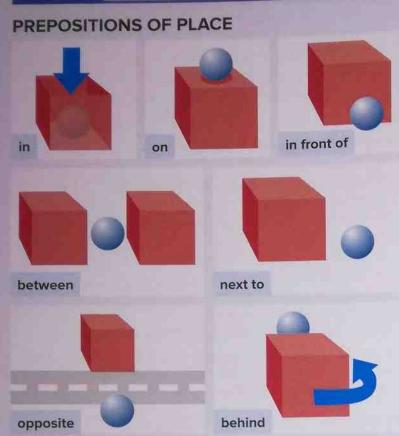
3 you / want / tissue?

4 you / need / alarm clock?

5 you / have / scissors?

6 you / need / help?

## 3 HOME



Many languages do not have different words for in and on or to and at. A good way to learn these is by learning phrases.

It's on the right. It's on the left. There's a café on the corner of Fairfax Road. I live on this street / on Broad Road.

He's in his bedroom playing computer games. Let's sit in the kitchen.

I work in a department store.

There's a bus stop in front of the hotel.

It's at the end of the road. He's not here. He's at work.

Wait at the bus stop.

There's a bookshop next to the school.

#### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with one word in each space.

1	There's a big car park	ζ	_ the end of this road
	He spends a lot of tin		his room.
3	My house is number	53. It's	the left.
4	There's a new superr Station Road and Que		
5	My sister lives	the ne	ext street.
6	My office is	_ to the bi	g bank in town.
	There's a good café		
- 6	Thora are late of place	and the same	WARR

here are lots of places to eat \_\_ two restaurants - a fast food place on one side and a French place on the other.

10 There's a bank with a cash machine \_ Blackstock Road -\_ \_ the right.

#### DID YOU KNOW?

We often say I'll meet you when arranging where to meet. A: I'll meet you in the restaurant at nine. B: OK.

## Exercise 2

Exercise 2
Write sentences beginning I'll meet you using the pictures and your own ideas.













## PRONOUNS, POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND 'S

Subject	Object	Possessive
T	me	my book
you	you	your book
he	him	his book
she	her	her book
it		its food
we		our book
they	tem	their book

## Possessive adjective + noun

her family his car their problem

Do you like my jacket? It's new. Our house is very near here.

## Name or noun + 's + noun

Maria's family	NOT	the family of Maria
my dad's car	NOT	the car of my dad
the school's problem	NOT	the problem of the school

## Plural noun + '+ noun

my friends' house his parents' wedding

#### Exercise 1

## Choose the correct option.

- 1 You / Your house is really nice.
- 2 Their / Them house is next to the sea.
- 3 She / Her shares a flat with a friend.
- 4 Come and visit we / us soon.
- 5 My parents' car / My car's parents is very old.
- 6 I really like Andrew's flat. Its / It's really big.
- 7 The woman in the photo is my aunt. She's my mum's mums' sister.
- 8 They / them are late. Can you drive they / them to the station?

DID YOU K We can use A is this yo B No. it's K A Is that y B. No it's n

Exercise 2 Correct th 1 Where 2 My dad 3 What's

4 The sis 5 It's not

6 Idon't CANIC can and c can and c If some

> YOU CO He / st Ifsome I can't He / S We / T

I can d

To ask Can I: Can y Look at t

> Yeah, o Sure.

Go ahe

Exercis Write qu words in

1 A: I C B: Ye 2 A: In

B: I'm 3 A: 1 C

B: Ye 4 A: Di

B: SL 5 A: I'm B: Ye

6 A: In B: No TYOU KNOW?

can use a noun or name + 's / s' without a noun.

athis your book?

Kenji's (= Kenji's book)

sthat your car? No it's my parents'. (= my parents' car)

es

freet the mistakes in the underlined phrases.

where do yours parents live?

wdads' part of the family are from Malta.

what's they address?

the sister of my boyfriend lives with us.

is not my money; it's of Andrew.

idon't like the government ideas.

AN / CAN'T

mand can't have the same form for all persons. an and can't are followed by the infinitive.

something is possible, use can.

can drive you to the station.

You can sit where you want.

He I she can start tomorrow.

resomething is not possible, use can't.

can't do the exercise.

He | She can't hear it.

We I They can't come to the class.

To ask (someone) to do something, use can (1 / you).

Can I stay here?

Can you open the window?

ackat these common answers to questions with con-

ŧ.	
eah, of course.	No. Sorry.
Sire.	I'm afraid not.
Go ahead.	Sorry, you / I can't.

#### rercise 1

file questions with Can I ...? or Can you ...? and the ords in brackets.

All can't see the TV. (move)

8 Yeah, of course. There. Is that better?

A I need to do some shopping. (take me in the car)

8 I'm afraid not, I'm busy.

A I can't speak now. (phone you later)

B Yes, of course. Call me after six.

4 Dinner's ready. (set the table)

B: Sure.

2/

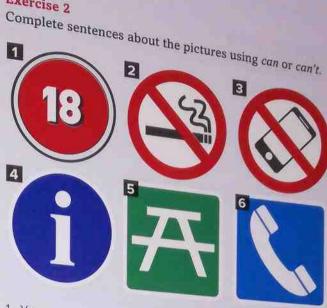
A I'm hot. (open the window)

a. Yes, of course. Go ahead.

I need to eat something. (make a sandwich)

No, I'm afraid not. I don't have any bread. Sorry.

## Exercise 2



1	You	Works to
2	YOU	watch it. You're only sixteen. smoke in here.
3	Sorry, but you	use your mobile phone in here.
4	You _	use your mobile phone in here.
5	TA F	TOUTIER IN AG AVA- II
6	You	eat over there. They have a picnic area.  use this telephone if you want to.

#### REVISION

#### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with one word in each space

1	1 A: Is a post office near here?			
	B: Yes, there	's at t	he end of the road,	
2	A: Is there a		the village?	
	B: No, but th the shop.	ere's a pub	this road,	to
3	A: Where's t	ne bus stop to go	to town?	
	B·	's just there - in	of the café	

## Exercise 2

Complete the second sentence using 's, s' or a possessive The first two are done for you.

a	iject.	ive.	I IIC I	HOLL		ME 50	- 4	
							(221/	car.
200	THE		holor	ac to	me.	115	THEY.	CC11

the right.

2 My parents own it. It's my parents',

3 That jacket belongs to him. It's \_\_\_

4 The shoes belong to Steve. They're \_\_\_\_\_shoes.

5 The chairs belong to them. They're \_\_\_

6 The computer belongs to the school, it's the

computer. 7 My brothers own the flat. It's my \_\_

8 Does that book belong to you? Is that \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ house.

9 We own the house. It's \_\_\_ 10 The sofa belongs to her. It's \_\_\_\_

## Exercise 3

Choose the correct option.

B: It's on / in the table, between / opposite the dictionary 1 A: I can / can't find my notebook.

and the black book. I put it there. A: Oh right. Can / Do you pass it to me?

2 A: Who are the two boys in the photo? B: The one on / in the left is my / me son, and the other

boy is one of her / his / he friends. A: Is that your son's / sons' guitar?

B: Yes, but he can / can't play it. Grammar reference 171

## 4 HOLIDAYS

## PAST SIMPLE

De

I / He / She / It		was	late.		
You / We / They		were	were here.		
There was		a cinem a lot of	na here before. traffic.		
There were		lots of p	eople. Ients here yesterday.		

#### Regular verbs

Add -ed to the infinitive form of the verb. Add -d when the infinitive form ends in -e.

I played tennis and really loved it.

I cooked dinner and then watched TV.

I stayed with a friend. She showed me the town.

Notice these spellings.

ed .
ed
atted
pped
P

## Irregular verbs

Infinitive form	Past simple form
be	was / were
buy	bought
come	came
do	did
get	got
go	went
have	had
read	read
see	saw
spend	spent
take	took

To learn more irregular past simple forms, see page 191.

## Time phrases often used with the past simple

yesterday	yesterday morning	last night
two days ago	last week	a few weeks ago
last year	five years ago	when I was 16

#### Exercise 1

Underline the irregular past forms and write the infinitive form of the verbs at the end of the sentence. The first one is done for you.

- 1 I felt ill, so I went home. feel, go
- 2 I went shopping and got some new boots.
- 3 I was lucky. I found €20 on the pavement.
- 4 I slept badly because I drank too much coffee.
- 5 We met at school. I sat next to her in class.
- 6 I spent three years in Japan. I taught English there.
- 7 I saw her yesterday and she said hello to you.
- 8 My son made dinner for us yesterday. It wasn't great, but I ate it.
- 9 She told me she swam five miles last Saturday.

## Exercise 2 Complete the story with the past simple form of the

in brackets.
This summer, I ' (go) to the beach with some friends and we 2 (make) a fire. We 3
(sit) round the fire all night and (eat) lots of food (tell) jokes and 7
(laugh) a lot. At six in the morning, we 8 (watch)
(be) very cold afterwards! I 13 (swim) in the sea
home at nine o'clock in the morning. I <sup>14</sup> (have) breakfast and then I <sup>15</sup> (sleep) until five in the afternoon!

## PAST SIMPLE NEGATIVES

be

I / He / She / It You / We / They		wasn't	in Moscow at that time, happy about it.		
		weren't			
There wasn't  There weren't		time t	time to do it. many cars on the road.		
		many			

## Other verbs

1	go out for dinner.
You	try very hard.
He / She didn't	come yesterday.
We	go shopping.
They	want to talk about it.

#### BENDERMA

Complete the sentences with didn't, wasn't or weren't.

3	Sorry, I	hear you. Can you say it again?
2	Sorry I	clear. It was my mistake.
3	Sorry I	buy you a present.
4	Sorry there	more people at the party.
5	Sorry I	there. I was at work that night.
6	Sorry I	see you on Friday. I left early.
		do my homework. I was busy.
		anyone at the airport to meet you.
		well last week. Are you
10	Sorry I	call you vesterday. I forgot.

#### any

We use any + noun in negative sentences (and questions). There wasn't any traffic.

They didn't have any oranges. Sorry.

Did the teacher give us any homework?

We also use anyone, anywhere and anything in negative sentences and questions.

anyone = any people anywhere = any places anything = any things Add and in each outsi 2 I was 3 I didn 4 I was 5 I didn 6 We s

4 I was
5 I didi
6 We s
weel
7 I lool
8 He d
DID YO
We ofte
It was n

Replace in brace 1 The The 2 We I

3 The

We did

4 | had 5 Peo 6 We 7 My F

8 The

PAST be

> How Where What

When Who

Other

What How I Who When How

any
We often
Question
Were th
Did you
Did you
Did you
Did you

anyone, anything or anywhere in the correct place ich sentence.

mere weren't cheap hotels in the old town, so we stayed

wiside the city. only in Cairo for two days. I didn't have time to see. indicated so I didn't do last night very tired, so I didn't do last night.

gidn't go on Sunday. I just stayed at home and relaxed. stayed in the mountains. We didn't see for almost a

looked in ten different shops, but I couldn't find wine. didn't try local food. He just ate burgers all week.

## OYOU KNOW?

often use not very + adjective / adverb.

osn't very warm.

edidn't go very far.

place the words in italics using not + very + the words brackets.

The hotel was a long way from the sea.

the hotel wasn't very near the sea.

We went to bed early. (late)

The hotel was expensive. (cheap)

thad a quiet weekend. (busy)

People were unfriendly. (friendly)

We stayed a short time. (long)

My parents were annoyed. (happy)

The water in the room was cold. (hot)

## MAST SIMPLE QUESTIONS

	Was	it / he / she	CK?
Haw Where What time	was	the holiday? the hotel? the flight?	
	Were	you / they	OK?
When	were	you they?	there?

## her verbs

	Did	l you	tell you? ask him?
Mat time How long Who Where How	did	he it she we they	get home? rain for? go with? meet you before? get back?

often use any + noun, anything, anyone or anywhere in

there any nice beaches there?

You go anywhere nice for your holiday?

lou go with anyone? you buy anything nice?

Exercise 1

## Put the words in the correct order to make questions. 1 did/what/last/do/you/night/?

2 see/you/what/did/film/? 3 it/good/was/?

4 did/go/who/with/you/?

5 where / you / your / buy / shoes / did /? 6 they / very / were / expensive /?

7 get / did / you / else / anything /? 8 there/you/do/usually/go/shopping/?

# Match the answers a-h to the questions in Exercise 1.

a Four Seasons. It's a love story.

b No, not really. They were €50.

c No, I didn't have any more money.

d Yes, it was really good.

e No, I don't. That was the first time.

f I went to the cinema.

g I went on my own, actually.

h In Jenson's, the department store in town.

When we answer Were you ...? Did you ...? questions, we usually only say yes or no.

Sometimes we add I was I wasn't or I did I didn't.

A: Were you late?

B: Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.

A: Did you go out yesterday?

B: Yes, I did. I went to the park / No, I didn't. I was tired.

There is more practice on this in Unit 7.

### REVISION

#### Exercise 1

Write the past forms of the verbs.

1	work	6	stay	11	see
	meet	7	put	12	walk
	make	8	sit	13	play
			stop	14	study
	move		try	15	can
5	want	10	LIY		

Complete the pairs of sentences with a past and a present form of the verbs in the box.

	oe go	have leave	get feel	sleep
1	a	They usually _	walking in the mo	nema at the weekend. ountains yesterday. re a moment ago.
2	ab	I'm sure I	ur things there on	the table.
3	а	Can I go? I She	ill.  ill in the class an  a party for my so	d went home. n last night.
4	bas	Wea	nice day!	were on nonday
5	bas	11	lovely weath	even.
6	ba		nome at five this me	the answer.
7	ba	Put your hand	im well at school, i very well,	but last night he didn't. but last night he flight. during the flight.
8	b a b	He usually — She was reall	y tired, so she	but last night he along during the flight.

#### Exercise 3

## Write the full conversation using the notes.

- 1 A: Where / you / go / on holiday?
- 2 B: We / go / to the Czech Republic.
- 3 A: you / stay / in Prague?
- 4 B: No / we / not. We / rent / an apartment / in the mountains.
- 5 A: it / nice?
- 6 B: Yes, it / be. We / have / a great time.
- 7 A: What / you / do?
- 8 B: We / not do / much. We / read, / we / swim / in the lake / - just relax.
- 9 A: you / like / the food?
- 10 B: Yes / we / love / it! We / eat out / a lot.
- 11 A: How long / you / be / there?
- 12 B: Two weeks. We / arrive / back yesterday.

## SHOPS

## THAT / THIS / THESE / THOSE

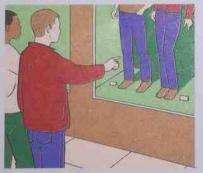




1 This apple is nice.

That cake looks good.





3 I like these ones.

4 Those jeans are expensive.

## Singular and uncountable nouns

orange is very sweet. This music is good. one is nice 's my book!

T-shirt looks good on you. That coffee was nice. one, please.

#### Plural nouns

are fine. jeans feel good. These ones are quite cheap. are my shoes! people didn't do anything. ones look OK.

## DID YOU KNOW?

After this I these, etc. we often replace the noun with one or ones.

#### Exercise 1

## Choose the correct option.

- 1 That / Those jacket's nice. Is it leather?
- 2 Do you like this / these dress?
- 3 How much is / are those jeans? The black ones at the back
- 4 These one I ones are fine for me. Thanks.
- 5 These is / are very big.
- 6 Can you pass me this / that pen on the table?
- 7 Did you know all these / those people at the party?
- 8 Here, listen to this / that song. I love it.

We use one / ones instead of a noun. We often describe the noun using an adjectives before one / ones.

I don't like the red T-shirt. I prefer the blue one.

A: Which cakes do you want? These ones?

B: No, those small ones there.

#### Exercise 2

## Replace the nouns in 1-6 with one / ones, where possible

- 1 A: Which cake do you want?
  - B: The cake with pink stuff on top.
- 2 A: Those jeans look OK, but I prefer the other jeans you tried on before.
  - B: What about these black jeans?
  - A; Yeah they're nice as well. Which jeans are cheaper?
- 3 A: How much are the apples?
  - B: The red apples are five euros a kilo and the green apples are 4.50.
- 4 A: Excuse me. You see these jumpers do you have this jumper in a medium?
  - B: No. Sorry. There are only extra large jumpers or the small size. That's why they're in the sale!

## PRESENT CONTINUOUS

The present continuous uses a form of be + -ing.

1	am		working very hard.
She / He / It	is	not	trying.
You / We / They	are		improving.

Am	1	improving at all?
Are	you / they	working hard?
Is	she / he it	getting tired? snowing?

We often use contractions — I'm / she's / they're / who's, etc. You can also use the negatives aren't and isn't.

I'm working. What's he doing?

She isn't staying. We aren't doing anything.

The shops in town aren't having any sales at the moment

Notice these spelling changes.

have - having improve - improving give - giving leave - leaving Some verbs double the final letter. get - getting stop - stopping set - setting run - running

#### at the moment

At the moment shows actions or situations are temporary and not finished, so it usually goes with the present continuous. We often also use now.

Exercise Make pi 1 Can y

When 3 you/ she /

They

5 6 Shhh

8 1/no PRESI present

7 He's

for hi I USU for th

I'm a prag with our ( like

> I doi with I dos presen

I'm I Can

if an

Exerci Choose form.

1 A: W B: l'i 2 A: D

B: Y 3 A: C

B: Y 4 A: I

B: L 5 A: V

B: N 6 A: V B: 1

A: C There with pr

REVI

Exerci Compl 1 A: V

B: 1 th A: C

B: C A: Y

B; C

ke present continuous sentences using the notes. anyou come back later? I / make / dinner. where / he / go / now? pullook for / something? che/talk/to her mother on the phone. mey/build / some apartments opposite my house. swift The baby / sleep. He's not ready. He / get / dressed. not go / outside now. It / rain. RESENT SIMPLE / PRESENT CONTINUOUS

## esent simple

or habits

back.

the !

ible.

er?

his

tc.

it.

and

usually I often I sometimes I hardly ever I never do it. or things in your life you see as permanent

m an English teacher. I work in a secondary school in

with some verbs: know, think, want, like, hate, etc. to show our opinions

like helping people to find nice clothes.

don't really know what I want to do in the future. with have for possessions

don't have a car.

## esent continuous

fan action or situation is temporary and not finished rm looking for a job at the moment. can you be quiet? I'm working!

bose the present simple or the present continuous m.

A What do you do / are you doing?

It im a manager of a shop.

\* Do your parents live / Are your parents living awar here?

1 Yes - their house is on the next street!

A Can you help me?

F Yeah, just a minute. I write I I'm writing an email.

All can't see you.

Look to your left. I sit I I'm sitting by the window.

A What do you look / are you looking for?

My mobile phone. I think I I'm thinking I left it here.

4 Where's Tommy?

He just brushes I He's just brushing his teeth. Do you want / Are you wanting a drink before we go?

A OK. Maybe some water. I am quite thirsty.

te is more practice on present continuous and differences present simple in Unit 6, Unit 8 and Unit 15.

## EVISION

plete the dialogues with one word in each space.

Where are you? the second floor. waiting for you! I'm in the café . Oh, OK. I'm\_

I bought you a coffee.

OK-Is it this \_

\_ with milk?

Yeah. And do you want one of \_ Oh - no, thanks. I'm fine. biscuits?

\_ we going now?

you want to go and look at the coats? one I'm wearing is so old! N. OK. Did you see \_\_\_\_\_ ones in the window?

## Exercise 2

Add the correct form of be in the sentences. The first one

1 What you trying to do? What are you trying to do?

2 Who Tamara talking to?

3 I looking for a job at the moment, 4 I not feeling very well.

5 you waiting for someone?

6 You making a mess. Clean the table when you finish,

7 He went into town. He doing some shopping. 8 Henry and Terry not coming, so we can start the meeting

## Exercise 3

Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 We're stay in the Grand Hotel.
- I not am working at the moment.
- 3 Who are that people over there?
- 4 What she's doing in Australia?
- 5 They're haveing a meeting. 6 Can I have that one red?

## 6 STUDYING

### MODIFIERS

Modifiers go before adjectives.

It's They're very / really good. good. quite good.

not very good.



#### Exercise 1

Add the modifier in brackets in the correct place.

- 1 It's cold in here. Can we turn on the heating? (quite)
- 2 Thanks for inviting us. We had a great time. (really)
- 3 It isn't interesting. We always do the same things. (very)
- 4 He's OK, I guess, but he's strange! (quite)
- 5 He's good at sciences. He gets A grades. (really)
- 6 My teachers were helpful, so that made the course easier. (very)

## DID YOU KNOW?

With adjectives that have a negative meaning, we can use a bit instead of quite.

It's a bit | quite expensive. It's a bit quite good.

Decide where you can use a bit instead of quite.

1 I found the course quite interesting. We did a lot of

The exam was quite long – and quite difficult. I don't think

4 I know some people enjoyed it, but I found it quite boring. 3 The college building is quite modern.

5 He's quite nice, but he's quite lazy tool

6 It's quite important for me to pass the exam.

7 It's a good course. It's quite popular. 8 She's a good teacher, but quite strange sometimes.

#### COMPARATIVES

To compare two things, use a comparative adjective + than.

He's taller than his brother.

English is easier than Russian.

Bilinguals are more creative than other people.

I think History is better than Geography.

Add -er to short adjectives (one syllable).

cheap - cheaper

hard - harder

tall - taller

Notice these spellings.

nice - nicer strange - stranger

Some adjectives double the final letter.

hot - hotter big - bigger

For adjectives ending in -y, change -y to -ier. easy – easier lazv – lazier

friendly - friendlier

more

For longer adjectives (two or more syllables) use more.

more interesting expensive more expensive popular more popular boring more boring

Irregular comparatives

good - better bad - worse far - further

#### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

1 I think English is \_\_\_\_\_\_ to learn than German. (easy)
2 My brother's a bit \_\_\_\_\_ than me. (short)

3 Basketball is \_\_\_\_\_ than football in my country. (popular)

4 I think the people in the south are \_\_\_ people in the north. (friendly)

5 The weather is \_\_\_ \_ in my country than here. It's \_\_\_\_\_ (bad, cold)

here. The programmes are much 6 The TV is \_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ (good, interesting)

\_ to pass exams now. (difficult) 7 It's \_\_\_\_\_

#### DID YOU KNOW?

We use much (= a lot) or a bit (= a little) with comparatives.

It's much better. It's a bit easier.

## Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjective in brackets.

1 My English is getting much \_\_\_\_\_

2 The climate is becoming \_\_\_\_\_ (warm)

3 The situation is getting much \_\_\_\_\_\_ (bad)

4 Apartments are becoming a bit \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (expensive)

5 The population is getting \_\_\_\_\_\_. (big)

#### REVISION

#### Exercise 1

Rewrite the sentences with an adjective in the box

+ not very.

big good warm interesting

- 1 The film's quite bad.
- 2 The class was a bit boring.
- 3 The school's quite small.
- 4 I'm guite cold.

Rewrite the sentences 5-8 with an adjective in the box + quite.

low difficult near cheap

- 5 The exam wasn't very easy.
- 6 The rent for my flat isn't very expensive.
- 7 The school I work for isn't very far from here.
- 8 He didn't get very high grades.

#### Exercise 2

Make comparisons using the verb be and a comparative form. The first one is done for you.

- 1 He/messy/me He's messier than me.
- 2 Your class / a high level / mine
- 3 You / good at sciences / me
- 4 Chinese / useful / French
- 5 My daughter / tall / my son
- 6 My dad / tidy / my mum
- 7 This year / difficult / last year
- 8 My exam results / bad / yours

## Exercise

Complete the conversation with one word in each space.

A: How's your course going? You said you found it \_\_\_\_ hard last year.

B: It 2\_\_\_\_ getting easier, It's still a 3\_ but my teachers are much better 4\_\_\_\_\_ last year. Last year, the teachers weren't 5\_\_\_\_\_\_ patient, but this year they are <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_helpful.

7 PEO

AUXILIA We can us avoid repe

Are you

Is he sta Do you li

pid you

can you

We can al but and si My brothe I can drive I'm quite Ispeak Fi

Exercise Choose t

1 A: Can B: I'm :

2 A: Did B: Yes

3 A: Do B: I dic

4 A: Are B: No.

5 A: Do B: My

last 6 Istave

7 Thank

8 If he c

We can a reply to s

A: I'm su B: They

A: He jus

B: He do

feelin

Exercise Complet can.

1 A: I'm B: He

2 A: She B: She

3 A: I'm B: No

4 A: We B: We

5 A: The B: No

6 A: YOU B; Yes

afte

X

ve

ce.

ilt,

ast

ear

# HAVE TO / DON'T HAVE TO

Have to / has to shows it's necessary to do something. We have a dishwasher and I have to fill it and empty it. My son Travis brings the kids to my house three days a week

Don't have to / doesn't have to shows it's not necessary to do

My friends don't have to do jobs in the home. I'm happy that she has a job and doesn't have to stay at

Make questions like this:

Do you / / / we have to do it?

Does she / he have to go?

## Exercise 1

## Choose the correct option.

- 1 I can't come to the cinema with you. I have to I don't have to pick up my little brother from school.
- It's your dog, so you have to I don't have to feed it and
- 3 My dad sometimes has to / doesn't have to work really
- 4 I set the table this morning. You have to I don't have to do
- 5 Tell Simon he has to I doesn't have to pick me up. I already
- I'm afraid I can't repair it. You have to I don't have to take it to a shop.
- 7 We have to / don't have to play computer games if you don't want to. We can do something else.
- 8 He's very ill. He has to / doesn't have to go to hospital.
- 9 I love spending time with my sister's kids. I tell them stories and we sing I have to sing songs together. It's fun.
- 10 It's good that we eat together as a family. We chat and have to tell / tell jokes to each other. It's nice.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of have to or don't have to and the verbs in the box.

	do	go	leave	wait	work
1	It's lat	e. l	now. I d	on't want to	o miss my bus.
	45 W -	- Washington	l	for me.	to cave it's hard
3	Му ѕо	n	a lot of ho	mework. r	he says it's hard.
4	Tomor	row is a p	ublic nolluay	, Dut our 4	
5	She_		to school tor	norrow. It's	a public holiday.

## REVISION

- A Match the questions (1-6) to the answers (a-f).
- 1 Is your cousin working here?
- 2 Were you angry about it?
- 3 Are they very similar?
- 4 Can you speak French?
- 5 Does she have a boyfriend at the moment?
- 6 Did she have a good time?
- a No, she doesn't.
- b No, I can't.
- c Yes, she is.
- d Yes, she did.
- e No, they aren't really.
- B Now write opposite answers for questions 1-6.

#### Exercise 2

Replace the words in italics with do, does or did. The first one is done for you.

- 1 I studied marketing at university and my brother did studied marketing too.
- 2 My father doesn't like sweet things, but I like sweet things.
- 3 We don't usually eat together during the week, but we always eat together on Sunday.
- 4 I didn't write any notes, but Juan wrote some notes.
- 5 I don't have any money, but my sister has some money.
- 6 You went to Hill School! I went to Hill School too!

#### Exercise 3

Write the second sentence using the words in brackets and the correct form of have to or don't have to.

- 1 Sorry, I can't talk now. (I / go.)
- 2 Johan says sorry he can't come. (He / work late.)
- 3 Is it an important exam? (you / pass it?)
- 4 She's lucky. (She / travel far to get to work.)
- 5 I'm bored. (we / stay?)
- 6 We can stay quite late. (We / get up early tomorrow.)

## 8 PLANS

### **GOING TO**

We use the present form of the verb be + going to + infinitive to talk about the future – especially the plans we have.

1	am		start work this week.
You We They	are	(not) going to	work with me. stay in a hotel. arrive tomorrow night.
He She It	is		finish school this year. study Fashion. take a very long time.

We usually use contractions -l'm, you're, she's, it's, we're, they're, etc. You can also use the negatives aren't / isn't.

### Questions

Am I		see you later?	
Are you Are we Are they	going to	stay here? eat later? meet us?	
Is he Is she Is it		come with us? get a taxi there? be expensive?	

## Exercise 1

Match the questions (1-6) to the answers (a-f).

- 1 What are you going to do later?
- 2 What time are you going to leave?
- 3 Where are you going to stay?
- 4 How are you going to get there?
- 5 How long are you going to stay?
- 6 Why aren't you going to come?
- a I think we're going to get a taxi.
- b Nothing. I'm going to go to bed early. I'm very tired.
- c Three weeks, I'm going to come back on the 30th.
- d We're going to be at a friend's for a week, then in Rome.
- e I'm not going to be here. I'm going to go to Zurich that day.
- f The flight is at seven so the taxi's going to collect us at four.

Look at these	future tim	e words and ph	rases we use with
going to. in a minute	soon	tonight	next week
in an hour	later	tomorrow	next year

tences with the correct form

4 D

5 D

8

RE

EXE

Cor

1 V

2 1

3 1

4 1

6 1

7 1

8 1

Exe

Cho

1 1

4

Put tim

2

5

6

D

#### Exercise 2

C	omplete the	sentences with the park late.
1	We	(ap) for a full III life Dalk later
2	My grandp next month	arents (celebrate) 50 years together
3	I think I	(get) a taxi home.
	He	(not / like) your decision.
5	Where	(your cousins / stay)?
6	How long	(it / take)?
7	Where	(you / meet ) Abdul?
	1	_ (miss ) you. I (not / see) you for a
	long time.	

#### Exercise 3

Correct each sentence by adding one word.

- 1 I'm not to do anything special tonight.
- 2 How are you going get home?
- 3 Where they going to go on holiday this year?
- 4 What your sister going to study?
- 5 How much it going to cost?
- 6 I going to have dinner with my parents tonight.

## WOULD LIKE TO + INFINITIVE

We use would like (or love) to + infinitive to talk about things we want - or hope - to do in the future.

He'd like to I lave to spend less time working. I wouldn't like to be alia!

With would like to very ten use time phrases like one day, sometime in the least, sometime in the next few years. We'd like to mose to a bigger house sometime in the next few years.

Would you like to have dinner with me tomorrow night?

#### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with the pairs of words in the box.

16	earn + go	retire + relax	save + buy start + bec	
1	I'd like to weight.	fitter and	maybe	some
2	I'd like to then I'd just like	sometime	e in the next to	en years and
3	I'd like to	Arabic ar	nd t	to Favot
4 .	ralike to	my own businessperson.	ousiness and _	
5	I'd like to apartment.	— home an	dn	ny own
6		sor	me money and	

## DID YOU KNOW?

We can offer people things using would you like + a noun. It means the same as do you want ..., but it is more polite.

## newrite the questions using would like. byou want a cup of tea? wyou want a seat?\_ no you want a cigarette? \_\_ ? no you want a drink? to you want some more cake?\_ ? 00 you want milk in your coffee? ? Match the answers a-f to the questions in A. No. thanks. I don't smoke. prefer coffee if you have any. No. thanks. I can't. I have to drive later. No thanks. I can't, I'm full. No thanks. I like it black. on thank you. That's very kind of you. Now I can rest my legs! EVISION vercise 1 amplete the sentences with one word in each space. your brother going to study? Id really like \_\_\_ learn Spanish. is an OK city, but I wouldn't \_ \_ to live there. We \_\_\_\_\_ going to have a party on Friday. What \_\_\_\_\_ you like to eat tonight? \_\_\_\_ go home and sleep. Im just going \_\_\_ When \_\_\_\_\_ your parents going to arrive? going to tell you again!

#### rercise 2

## hoose the correct option.

Iwouldn't like to / I'm not going to come to the meeting tomorrow. I have to be somewhere else.

Id like to / I'm going to learn to drive, but I don't have enough money.

It like to / I'm going to go to the concert tomorrow. A friend bought me a ticket.

Iwouldn't like to / I'm not going to be her!

Would you like to / Are you going to see my holiday

Sorry, I can't come to the class tomorrow. I'd like to / I'm going to go to the dentist.

## rereise 3

the underlined words in the correct order to make

m going to see my grandparents weekend this.

mgoing to have a meeting about it afternoon later this.

dlike to study abroad the sometime in future.

Unfortunately, I'm not going to have a holiday summer this.

m going to do it next weeks in sometime few the.

m going to be busy this later evening.

ne government would like to change the education slem years the next in few.

hope we're going to move the three months in sometime ext or four

# 9 EXPERIENCES

## PRESENT PERFECT

We use the present perfect to talk about actions before now, when we feel they're connected to the present situation. We can use the present perfect to ask if someone has

Have you been to London before?

A friend of mine is going to move to Istanbul. Have you been

We'd like to maybe go to Turkey on holiday this year. Have

There's a new Turkish place near here. Have you tried

To make the present perfect, use a form of the verb have + a

Regular past participles are the same as regular past simple forms: we add -ed to the infinitive.

Remember these spellings.

arrive - arrived change – changed plan – planned stop - stopped try - tried study -studied

Some past participles are irregular, for example be - been.

You learn more about irregular past participles on page 180.

#### DID YOU KNOW?

In questions, we sometimes add ever to mean 'at any time in your life'.

Have	we / you / they		visited Paris?
		(ever)	tried sushi?
Has	she / he		been to India?

Answer with Yes, I have. / No, never. / No, I haven't. / No, but I'd like to.

#### Exercise 1

Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

1	A: your fr	iend been	Mexico Delote:
	B: No, never.	to Cairo	in Egypt?
3	B: No, never, but to A: Have you B: Yes, I	Have?	
	A: No. Is it good?		
	B: It's not bad.	Russian 1	food?
4	A: Have you ever B: No, I I	1 WOU?	
5	B: No, I B: No, never. This is	my first time.	
St	atements		been there.

Side	(not   never)	1000
You   We   They	have (not)	tried it.
1/ You / We	has (not I never)	
Ho I She	3.34.3	

We don't use the present perfect with past time expressions. To give – or ask about – details of the action, we use the past

Have you seen Did you see the film yesterday? Pve been I went to the supermarket a few days ago.

#### Exercise 2

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verb in brackets (present perfect or past simple).

1 A	A: I'n	n going	to go	to Tok	cvo for	work	next	week.
-----	--------	---------	-------	--------	---------	------	------	-------

- B: Wow! \_\_\_\_\_ (you / go) there before?
- A: Yes, I have, actually. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) there last year on holiday.
- 2 A: Is this your first time in Moscow?
  - B: No, I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) here before, actually. I \_\_\_ (come) here a few years ago.
  - A: Oh really? Where \_\_\_\_\_ (you / stay)?
  - B: With friends.
- 3 A: So when \_\_\_\_\_ (you / arrive) here?
  - B: Last Friday.

  - A: And \_\_\_\_\_ (you / go) to the cathedral?

    B: Yes, \_\_\_\_ (we / go) yesterday. We \_\_\_\_ (love) it!
- 4 A: It's a lovely city. I'm really enjoying it.
  - B: \_\_\_\_\_ (you / try) the local food?
  - A: No, I haven't.
- B: Oh, you should try it! A friend \_\_\_ \_ (take) me to his favourite restaurant last night and it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) great.
- 5 A: I'm planning to go to Krakow for a few days next month.
  - B: Nice! \_\_\_\_\_ (you / visit) the city before?
  - A: No, never. Have you?
  - B: Yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) there a few times, actually. The last time I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) was maybe three or four years ago.
  - A: OK. And \_\_\_\_\_ (you / like) it?
  - B: Yeah. Very much.

#### PAST PARTICIPLES

The present perfect is have / has + past participle. Past participles usually have the same form as the past simple, but some are different.

present past simple / prese past participle	nt past past
arrive arrived be change changed break check checked come happen happened cut miss missed do plan planned fall stop stopped feel study studied find try tried forget visit visited go have hurt leave lose make see take throw	simple was/were been broke broken came come cut did done fell fallen felt felt found forgotten forgot found went gone had hurt hurt left left lost lost made saw seen took taken threw broken

For a full list of verbs forms, see page 191.

### Exercise 1

Put the irregular verbs in the box above into groups that. you think follow the same pattern.

cut / hurt They don't change (cut-cut-cut and hurt-hurt-hurt).

## Exercise 2

Decide if the past participles in the sentences are correct or not. Change the ones that are wrong.

- 1 Have you saw my wallet?
- 2 I need to go home. I've forget to bring my travel card
- 3 Where have you been? We were worried.
- I'm sorry I can't drive you there. My wife's took the car
- 5 I'm sorry. We've done everything we can. We can't do any
- 6 I'm sorry. We've make a mistake. We've charged you too
- 7 The government's done a lot to help poor people.
- 8 Things here are quite difficult because the government's cutted a lot of services.

Remember that we use the present perfect to talk about an action before now – because it's connected to the present situation. We don't use the present perfect with past time expressions.

We use the past simple to give details.

A: Have you seen Karina?

B: Yes - I have seen saw her ten minutes ago. She was in her office.

#### Exercise 3

Choose the correct option.

- 1 A: Have you seen any good films recently?
  - B: Yeah. I saw I have seen 'Big Storm' last week. Have you seen / Did you see it?
  - A: No, but I'd like to.
  - B: You should, It's great.
- 2 A: Did you lose / Have you lost something?
  - B: Yeah. I think I left I have left my book in the classroom last night.
  - A: Oh no! Hey, may be someone else took / has taken it with them after the lesson.
- 3 A: You look tired.
  - B: Yes, I am and I'm hungry. I got up I have got up late this morning and I missed I have missed breakfast.
  - A: Oh no.
  - B: And I didn't stop / haven't stopped all day, I didn't eat/ haven't eaten anything.
  - A: Well, sit down. Dinner's almost ready.

#### REVISION

## Exercise 1

Complete the set of forms for each verb (present, past simple, past participle). 1 buy - bought - \_

```
2 _____ – chose – chosen
3 come - came - ___
4 cut - _____ - cut
5 do - did - ____
6 drive - _____ - driven
7 ______ - felt - felt
8 get - got - __
9 know - knew - ___
10 _____ - left - left
11 put - put - ___
12 _____ - sold - sold
13 steal - _____ - stolen
14 take - _____ - taken
```

Have you ever 2 Have you ever 3 Have you ever 4 Have you ever 5 Have you ever 6 Have you ever 7 Have you done 8 Have you playe a No, but I've pla b Yes, I have. I w c No, I've never d Yes. I had some e No, but I once f No, never, but g I studied Medic h Yes. I took my Exercise 3 Complete the qu simple. B: No, this is our A: When 2\_\_\_ B: Two days ago. A: Where 3\_\_\_\_ B. Well, on Sunda Park, and yest

Exercise 2 Match the question

B: Yeah, it was qu

B: No, but we're

A: Yes. 5\_\_\_

## TOO MUCH,

too much

Too much only g There is too muc You can't ride a l

## too many

Too many only g You can't sit on t There are too me

## not enough

Not enough can There isn't enou There aren't end

Remember to us there are with pla

## Exercise 1

Complete the se 1 There \_

? There —

3 There -

4 Sorry, there \_

bags in my car 5 There -

6 The governme to repair the re

aich the questions (1-8) with the answers (a-h). too + adjective / adverb You can also use too with an adjective when you're not happy Have you ever been to the King Hotel restaurant? Have you ever read War and Peace? I don't like going on the bus. It's too slow. usve you ever met anyone famous? I can't take everyone in my car. It's too small. Have you ever eaten oysters? Have you ever lived abroad? Have you ever seen a dead body? Complete the sentences with too, enough, too much or Have you done kung fu before? Have you played this game before? 1 There are \_ 2 I don't drive into town. It's \_\_ trucks on the motorways. No, but I've played something similar. 3 The local government is going to cut some bus services yes, I have, I worked in Dubai for two years. No. I've never read anything by Tolstoy. People are complaining because they say they're paying yes I had some once, but I didn't really like them. No. but I once saw Al Pacino in a pizza place in New York. 5 Taxl drivers find it difficult to make money. There are No never, but I did karate when I was little. taxis, so there's \_ Istudied Medicine, so we saw them as part of our degree. 6 The government says there aren't \_ competition. Yes. I took my wife there once. It was very romantic. coming here because the airport is \_\_\_ DID YOU KNOW? If we feel happy / OK about something, we don't use too. Use complete the questions using the present perfect or past imple. It's good. There are too many lots of trains. London before? (visit) 41\_ The train is too very fast. It only takes ten minutes. & No, this is our first time. A: When 2 \_\_\_\_\_ ? (arrive) **SUPERLATIVES** & Two days ago. We're really enjoying it. To compare more than two things, use the + a superlative A Where 3 \_\_\_\_\_ ? (be) adjective. a Wall, on Sunday we went to Buckingham Palace and Hyde -est Park, and yesterday we went on the London Eye. Add -est to short adjectives (one syllable). it? (enjoy) cheap - the cheapest fast - the fastest If Yeah, it was great. You get a great view his in the top. small - the smallest A Yes, 5 round any of the museums? (look) Notice these spellings. & No, but we're going to the British Museum tomorrow. nice - the nicest strange - the strangest Some adjectives double the final letter. big - the biggest hot - the hottest 10 TRAVEL For adjectives ending in -y, change to -iest. 100 MUCH, TOO MANY AND NOT ENOUGH lazy - the laziest earl**y** – the earl**iest** too much the most + adjective For longer adjectives (two or more syllables), use the most + to much only goes with uncountable nouns. here is too much crime. The government needs to do more. adjective. the most boring wean't ride a bike here. There's too much traffic. boring the most interesting bo many interesting Irregular superlative adjectives far - the furthest a many only goes with plural nouns. bad - the worst to can't sit on the bus. There are too many people. good - the best here are too many cars. I can't park. Exercise 1 Choose the correct option. ot enough 1 Yesterday was hottest / the hottest day of the year. 2 That was the more / most difficult exam I've ever taken. or enough can go with uncountable nouns or plurals. 3 They were the loudest / most loud band I've ever heard! ere Isn't enough help for old people on public transport. 4 I live in one of the busylest / busiest streets in town. 'ere aren't enough places to park. 5 It was the worse / worst day of my life! member to use there is with uncountable nouns - and 6 The easiest / most easy way to get around is on foot. ere are with plural nouns. They were the most nice / nicest people I've ever met. 8 I'm the tallest I most tallest person in my class. cercise 1 implete the sentences with is or are. We often use superlatives with the present perfect. There \_\_\_\_\_too much traffic on my street. too many accidents on our roads. That was the funniest film I've (ever) seen. n't enough cheap seats on the trains. It's the best holiday I've (ever) had. We also often use this pattern with superlatives: not enough space for all those It was one of the worst meals I've (ever) had. Mgs in my can He's one of the most creative people I know. Grammar reference too many people in our city. too many people in our city.

not enough money
not enough money u repair the roads.

#### Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with either a comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.

1		teachers I've had.	She's
	than my last teach	ner, that's for sure. (good)	
2	October is the	time of year in Z	ambia, so it was
	mucht	than it is here. (hot)	
3	Moussa is	He's six years	than my
	daughter, Mariam. He's only four. (old	She's seven – and Salif d, old, young)	is
4	He's changed! Fo	r a long time, he was one	of
		nd now he'st	
5	Berlin is actually _	than my city. I'r	n from Jakarta,
	one of the	cities in the world! (s	mall, big)
6		things I've ever	
	film was much	! (boring, good)	

#### REVISION

#### Exercise 1

Correct the underlined mistake in each sentence.

- 1 There are too cars parked on my road.
- 2 There were too much people on the train.
- 3 Getting the bus is easyest way to get here.
- 4 There is too many rubbish on public transport.
- 5 It's bad because there are too many buses at night and taxis are expensive.
- 6 The most fast train you can get only takes three hours.

#### **Exercise 2**

1 It's the

Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjective in brackets.

restaurant in the area. (cheap)

2	The	way to get here is on the motorway. (quick)
3	What's the	film you've ever seen? (funny)
4	Thewar. (interesting	_ chapter in the book was the one about the ng)
5	Where's the _	metro station? (near)
6	That was the	day of my life! (exciting)

- \_\_\_ time of the year is July. (hot)
- 8 The \_ way to travel is by bicycle. (nice)

#### Exercise 3

Complete the text with one word in each space.

Hove New York. I think it's '_	greatest city in the
world. It has every kind of sh	op and museum and restaurant.
There's almost too <sup>2</sup> what to do!	choice because I can't decide
The transport system is really	y good. I don't drive because

The transport system is really g	ood. I don't drive because
there aren't 3 cheap	places to park, but I really
don't need a car anyway. The s	
reliable and there are 4	
best way get aroun	d is on foot. That way, you can
see all the fantastic buildings ar	nd feel the great atmosphere.
It's <sup>6</sup> nice.	

There aren't many things I don't like here, but the thing for me is the weather in the summer. It's terrible. It's often over 35°C in August. It's 8\_ hot for me and I find it difficult to work.

# 11 F00D

## ME TOO, ME NEITHER AND AUXILIARIES

## me neither

We use me neither to agree with a statement with not or never.

A: I can't decide.

B: Me neither. It all looks so delicious.

A: I don't like lamb.

B: Me neither.

A: I've never had Mexican food before.

B: Me neither, but this is really good, isn't it?

A: Yeah, great.

#### me too

We use me too to agree with a positive statement.

A: I hate tomatoes.

B: Me too.

A: I'm going to go to the cinema later.

B: Oh, me too! What are you going to see?

A: I've been there several times.

B: Yeah, me too. It's great.

#### I do / don't

To disagree with a statement in the present simple, we often use I do or I don't.

Statement	Reply – disagree
A: I don't eat much meat. A: I don't like reading.	B. Oh, I do. I have it every day. B. Really? I do.
A: I love seafood A: I work near my home	B: Really? I don't. B. Oh, I don't. You're lucky!

We use did / didn't to disagree with a statement in the past simple.

#### Other auxiliary verbs

We sometimes use other auxiliary verbs like have, would, can, be, etc. to disagree. We use the same auxiliary verb as the one in the statement we disagree with.

Statement	Reply – disagree		
have			
A: I haven't had Mexican food. A: I've been there before.	B: I have. It 's nice. B: I haven't. What's it like?		
would			
A: I wouldn't like to try it. A: I'd like to go there.	B: Oh, I would! B: Really? I wouldn't.		
can			
A: I can't see him. A: I can cook quite well.	B: I can. He's over there. B: That's good, because I can't!		
be			
A: <i>I'm</i> not going to go. A: <i>I'm</i> hungry.	B: Why not? I am. B: I'm not. Can you wait?		

For other uses of auxiliaries see Unit 7.

Exercise Replace or disag verb.

1 A:110 B: (1 10

2 A: I do B: (1 d

A: I di B: Re

4 A: 1 de B: (1 d

5 A: I'd

B: Rei ex A: (1 P

on 6 A: I'VE

B: (I'V

A: (I'n Exercis

Comple Contrac

1 Ann:

Ann: Ben:

Ben:

2 Ann: Ben:

> Ann: Ben:

3 Ann: Ben:

> Ann: Cal: Ann:

Ben: Cal:

Ann:

EXPL

(Quite (singi

Weu We u

We o and c

Do you

I don't

geise 1 words in brackets with a phrase for agreeing sagreeing, using me too, me neither or an auxiliary 1 llove cheese. What's your favourite? A Idon't like seafood. all don't like seafood.) It makes me feel ill. I drink too much coffee. Really? (I don't drink too much coffee). I hate coffee! A Idon't drink enough water. a lidrink enough water.) I always have a bottle with me. a lid like to learn to drive. Really? (I wouldn't like to learn to drive.) It's too expensive and I prefer to cycle. If prefer not to cycle.) It's too dangerous with all the cars on the roads! Alive never been abroad. a (I've never been abroad.) I'm scared of flying. A pim not scared of flying.) I just haven't had the chance. mplete the dialogues with one word in each space. ntractions (don't, can't, etc.) are one word. ann Are you going to go to Jean's birthday dinner next week? Ben No, I can't. \_, but I want to get him something. Ann: No, me \_\_\_ Let's put our money together. Ann: The writing's too small. I can't read the instructions. Ben: I\_\_\_\_\_. Let me have a look. Ann'l need to get my eyes tested. actually! I was wrong. I can't read Ben: Me them either! Ann: What are you going to have? Ben: I haven't decided. Ann: . There's too much choice Call Well, I think I'm going to have the cheese bake Ann: Really? I hate cheese. Ben: Oh, \_ \_. I love it. Cal .. How can anyone not like

## Ann: I don't know. I just don't.

theese?

PLAINING QUANTITY Oute) a lot of, some and any go with both uncountable singular) nouns and countable (plural) nouns.

the use many with countable (plural) nouns.

re use much with uncountable (singular) nouns. often use much, many and any in negative sentences and questions.

	Uncountable nouns	Plural nouns
vou eat	much meat? any fruit?	many chips? any vegetables?
	a lot of ice cream. quite a lot of sugar. some fish.	a lot of biscuits. quite a lot of sweets. some beans.
eat	much rice, any cheese,	many cakes. any eggs.

## Exercise 1

- Decide if both options are possible, or only one.
- 1 | usually use much | a lot of onions when I cook. 2 I try not to eat many / any meat. It's better for the
- I drink a lot of / quite a lot of coffee!
- 4 | leat quite a lot of / some meat, but | don't eat many / any
- 5 We don't really drink much / some wine just a glass once
- 6 I don't drink any / many soft drinks like Cola. They have a
- 7 A: Do you eat many / any dairy products? B: No, not many / Yes, quite a lot.
- 8 A: Did you use much / many cream in the sauce? B: Yeah, some / quite a lot.

## DID YOU KNOW?

We often say not a lot of instead of not much / not many. I don't eat much I a lot of rice.

I don't eat many I a lot of cakes.

Instead of some, we can use a bit of with uncountable nouns and a few with countable nouns.

I eat some I a bit of fish. I have it maybe two or three times a

I usually add some I a few beans to the soup, but today I forgot.

#### Exercise 2

Replace the words in italics with much, many, a bit of or a few.

- 1 I don't eat a lot of sweet things.
- 2 | eat some foreign food, but | mainly eat things from my country.
- 3 I like some of their songs.
- 4 He doesn't eat a lot of meat.
- 5 Do you eat a lot of fruit?
- 6 We had some drinks.
- 7 I'm about 90% vegetarian, but I eat some fish sometimes.
- 8 Do you use a lot of spices when you're cooking?

## Exercise 3

Both options in each sentence (1-6) are correct. Decide if the words in italics show the same quantity or a different quantity. If the quantities are different, which quantity is less?

- 1 I use a lot of / a bit of salt in my cooking.
- 2 I don't put much / any sugar in my coffee.
- 3 Do you eat any / many sweets?
- 4 I have some / a bit of fat in my diet, but not much.
- 5 I don't drink a lot of I many cups of coffee a day.
- 6 I eat quite a lot of I some eggs.

#### REVISION

#### Exercise 1

Choose the correct option.

- 1 Late a lot of / a few chocolate and I feel a bit sick now.
- 2 I only have tea in the house, I'm afraid. I don't have any I much coffee.
- 3 I used quite a lot of I quite much chilli, so it's spicy.
- 4 Have you seen much I any good films recently?
- 5 I watch a lot of / any comedies, but not many / some
- 6 A: What vegetables would you like? B: Just some / any potatoes and a bit of / a few carrots, please.

#### Exercise 2

Decide if the words in italics are correct or not. Correct the wrong ones.

- A: I'd like 'any coffee, please.
- B: 2/ too.
- C: Do you take sugar?
- A: No, thanks.
- B: I 3take. One for me, please.
- A: I think we eat too 4much sugar.
- B: It's fine. I only have it in coffee and a <sup>5</sup>few sugar every day is fine. Or do you think it's bad to have sany sugar?
- A: No, but I'd like to be thinner.
- B: I 7don't. I'm happy as I am. And you look fine too.
- A: I don't think so.
- B: Well, I stoo!

## Exercise 3

Complete the text with one word in each space.

I love cooking. I started when I	was eight or nine.	I made
tchocolate biscuits	with my mum. I rea	ily enjoyed
it. After that, we made a 2	of cakes toge	ether. My
poor dad had to eat them all ar	nd he put on 3	lot of
weight!	Large the dinner	. 4

Now I cook other kinds of food. I make the dinner a 4\_ times a week. Tonight I'm going to do steak with 5\_ bit of sauce and some chips. I actually don't cook 6 meat. I prefer doing fish, but my dad bought the steak.

# 12 FEELINGS

# SHOULD / SHOULDN'T

We use should(n't) + infinitive to suggest actions. Should shows we think it's a good idea to do the action. Shouldn't shows we think it's a bad idea to do the action

l You He   She	should	stop smoking. go to the doctor. have a holiday.	
We They	shouldn't	sit in the sun so long. work so hard.	

## DID YOU KNOW?

We often add maybe. It makes the advice sound less strong Maybe you should lose some weight.

## Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with a pronoun + should / chouldn't

sh	ould	ln't.	
1		feel a bit sick. Maybe	lie down.
2	A: N	My stomach hurts and I Maybe	think I'm going to be sick.
3	A: I	today. He says he's really stres	ssed and has no energy.
4	A: 1	Maybe Hurry up! We're late.	take some time off work
-	B: I	Perhaps The kids are always tire	take a taxi.
	B: I	Perhaps	stay up so late.
6	B:	She often says her back Maybeabout it.	go and see someone
1.0	lo of	flon uso a comparative	with should

We often use a comparative with should.

You should go to bed earlier.

She's so thin! She should eat more.

I think the government should spend more money on health. I think they should spend less money on the army.

#### Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the word in brackets and a comparative, or a comparative form of the word in brackets. The first one is done for you.

	The mot one is done for you.
1	I shouldn't spend so much money eating out. I should (cook)
	I shouldn't spend so much money eating out. I should cook more.
	I think people should work before they retire. (long)
3	I think the government should to improve the health service. (do)
4	I should do I'm getting fat. (exercise)
3	Maybe you should not
4	My son is getting bad grades at school. He should story
	He shouldn't try to do everything so quickly. He should take his time and
6	Maybe he should spend complaining and working. (time, time)
	- working, (time, time)

DID YO Most p should Idon't I don't

> BECA We us after Afters with a After every

After My de After that h After After He SI He W

> Becc phra She IWa Ista

becc

follo The IWC Ipa Exe

So s

Co

6 7

Jo Y fo

DYOU KNOW? o you ke say I don't think we should - not I think we of think the government should spend so much money. at think we should go there. ECAUSE, SO AND AFTER BCAUSE, so and after to join two parts of a sentence. her shows when a situation or action happens. The phrase mafter can have a verb. Her the meeting finished, I sat and thought about eything I had to do. Her I did some shopping, I went home. and sold his business after he retired. ref is often used as a preposition. It can go with a phrase at has a noun and no verb. ner dinner, I watched the news on TV. ner work, I often meet friends for a drink. le started his business after the war. was off work for six weeks after the accident. ecouse shows why a situation or action happens. The mase following because always has a verb. he was upset because her boss shouted at her. was upset because he didn't call. stayed at home last night because I was tired. shows the result of a situation or action. The phrase lowing so always has a verb. he bus was full, so I couldn't sit and read. was tired, so I stayed at home last night. passed my driving test, so I went out and celebrated. complete the sentences with because, so or after. I had a headache, \_\_ \_\_\_\_ I went home early. \_I had lunch, I felt a bit sick. She can't come with us \_\_\_\_\_ she's broken her leg. the war, my parents decided to stay here. Our flight was delayed for hours \_\_\_\_\_ the weather was so bad. They told him he's going to lose his job, \_\_\_\_ quite upset. My back was quite stiff \_\_\_\_\_ \_ the match yesterday. was quite annoyed \_\_\_\_\_ my brother took my house keys. the pairs of sentences using the words in brackets. may need to change the order. The first one is done really happy. I passed all my exams. (so) possed all my exams, so I'm really happy.

ig.

lth.

ook

wery stressed. I have my final exams soon. (because) he's quite upset. He really wanted the job, but he didn't

hey lost the final. He sat on the sofa and cried for an

really love opera. I'm really looking forward to going to ee La Traviata. (so)

moved to London. Then I met my wife. (after) going to go on holiday next week. I'm happy. (because)

# DID YOU KNOW?

We also use so to talk about the result we want to get from I'm going to go with him so he doesn't get lost. I think the government should build more houses so rents

## REVISION

## Exercise 1

Complete each sentence with should or shouldn't and one

L	oe e	carry	drive	-		- 011
1	Λ. Τ			eat	see	take
	d A: I	hat's a bad know, I've I octor abou feel really s Vell, you	had it for a t it,			a
3	A: 1	Vell, you axi instead? cut my fing hat was str	er playing	sadela - s		
4		hat was stu ve got a re leally? May				
5		he doctor : Vell, maybe	said i lieed	TO lose v	Veight	
6	A. IV	ny back hui	rts.			ets!
F		Really? Well	, you	the	se boxes.	

Rewrite the sentences using the words in bold. The first one is done for you.

- 1 I finished work and then I went to the cinema, after I went to the cinema after work.
- 2 Why don't we take the bus? should
- 3 I didn't sleep well last night, so I've been tired all day. because
- 4 I think he drives too fast. shouldn't
- 5 He had an accident, but he didn't need to go to the hospital. after
- 6 He's gone to bed because he's not feeling very well. so

## Exercise 3

Complete the text with one word in each space. Contractions (shouldn't, doesn't, etc.) are one word.

The economist Richard Leyard to help. He thinks the government to help. He thinks the government people don't work peopl	be a good parent, but he be a good parent, but he becal	especially if there are a lefts make children want ain thing children need for its.  Its that the government thinks the government people don't work expons at school on how to specific thinks the government people don't work expons at school on how to specific thinks the government people don't work expons at school on how to specific thinks the government people don't work expons at school on how to specific thinks the government people don't work expons at school on how to specific thinks the government the government thinks the government the government thinks the government the government the government t
--	---	--

## 13 NATURE

## MIGHT AND BE GOING TO

We use *might* + infinitive and be going to + infinitive to talk about the future.

We use be (not) going to to show certainty – especially about plans we have.

We use might (not) to show possibility.

A: I need to give this book back to Dan.

B: I can give it to him, if you like. I'm going to see him later.

I might not go to the party. I might stay at home instead.

#### DID YOU KNOW?

We can use may instead of might.

I may be a bit late. It depends what time my meeting ends.

We often use these expressions with might.

possibly I'm not sure

I haven't decided

it depends I don't know

#### Exercise 1

## Choose the correct option.

- 1 We might / We're going to have a barbecue on Sunday. Would you like to come?
- 2 We might / We're going to be free at the weekend, but I need to speak to my wife first and check.
- 3 Oh no! It's raining! We might / We're going to get really wet!
- 4 Look at those black clouds up there! It might / It's going to rain soon.
- 5 I might possibly / definitely get a new car soon. It depends
- 6 She may / She's going to come with us. It depends if she can get time off work.

#### Exercise 2

#### Match the two parts of the sentences.

- 1 I might come tomorrow. It depends if
- 2 I might buy one. It depends how much
- 3 I might phone you later. It depends what time
- 4 I might do it this weekend. It depends how
- 5 I may get the job. It depends how many
- 6 They may have something you like. It depends what
- a I get home.
- b busy lam.
- c people apply for it, I guess.
- d they cost.
- e style you want.
- f my girlfriend wants to.

## PRESENT PERFECT TO SAY HOW LONG

We can use the present perfect to talk about the duration of something (how long) from the past to now. When we say the duration, we sometimes use *for* at the start of the time phrase, but it's also OK not to use it.

A: How long have they been there?

B: For about six years now.

A: How long have you had him?

B: Ten years.

We've been here a year now.

#### Exercise

## Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 How long you been here?
- 2 How long you have lived here?
- 3 How long have you did that?
- 4 She has that dog for five years.5 I live here for three months now.
- 6 I don't have had it very long.

#### Exercise 2

# Complete the responses by putting the words in brackets in the correct order.

- 1 A: How long have you had your cat?
  - B: (about / ten / for / years)
- 2 A: How long have you been together?
  - B: (time / now / a / long / quite / / ten / nine / or / years / maybe)
- 3 A: How long have you been married?
  - B: We met in 2004 (now / is / twelve / so / it / years).
- 4 A: How long have they known each other?
  - B: (long / not / very / / a / months / only / few)
- 5 A: How long has she worked there?
  - B: Ages. She started in 1997 (twenty / now / so / years / is / almost / it).

## REVISION

## Exercise †

## Rewrite the sentences using might to show possibility.

- 1 They said it's going to rain later.
- 2 I'm de haltely not going to be in the office tomorrow.
- 3 Sin's going to call you this afternoon.

## Rewrite he sentences using be going to to show certainty.

- 4. It said there would be a storm tonight.
- 5 We might go to Bulgaria for our holiday this year.
- 6 My dad might drive us to the station.

#### Exercise :

Complete the present perfect sentences using the past participles of these verbs.

	be	feel	know	have	live	see	want
3	How	long	have you t has he have you _		inemploy	yed?	0012
4	How	long	have you _ this c		to be a	doctor	?
ь	Ihat	s the	best film I'	ve	for	a long t	ime.
7	I hav	en't_	t	his good	for a lor	ng time.	

#### Exercise 3

## Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 I don't might see you tomorrow.
- 2 We is going to finish the work by Tuesday.
- 3 She is been there for twelve years now.
- 4 I don't going to do it. I'm too busy.
- 5 They might probably move to the country next year.
- 6 How long they are lived there?

# 14 OPINIONS

WILL / WON'T FOR PREDICTIONS g can use will / won't (= will not) + infinitive to make le can use to make to make about the future in the same way as we use be redictions about the future in the same way as we use be at going to + infinitive. They both show certainty.

won't be a problem. I'm sure of it.

ckets

ars /

ears /

tin ty.

3).

e often use will (but not won't) with I think I don't think ... hink he'll get the job.

Hon't think I'll go. (NOT I think I won't go.)

We usually ask questions using do you think + will + infinitive. no you think you'll see her tonight?

yno do you think will win?

To you think you'll ever (= at any time in your life) have kids?

We can add probably to show we're not 100% sure. Note the ferent position with will / won't.

probably go somewhere in Greece. probably won't make any difference.

Choose the correct option.

I think they'll / they'll to finish it next year.

They said there'll be I there be will snow tonight.

3 When will the meeting start / will start the meeting?

4 She won't / won't not be happy about it.

5 I'm sure they don't will / won't be late.

6 I don't think you'll I you won't pass the exam

I I probably won't / won't probably see you before then.

3 What will / will be your parents do about it?

#### DID YOU KNOW?

We often use (don't) expect and doubt with will Expect means you think something will happen. Doubt means you think something is unlikely to happen. don't expect I'll pass my exam. I haven't done enough work. We can complain if you want, but I doubt it'll make any Ifference. (= I don't think it will)

A Put the words in the correct order to make predictions.

1 take / you / a / need / I / expect / will / to / test

2 be / don't / will / necessary / it / expect / I

quite / year / I / will / expect / difficult / next / be

4 offer / doubt / will / they / the / me / I / job

expensive / it / be / I / will / very / doubt

him/can/doubt/but/listen/ask/1/he/1/will

Rewrite sentences 4-6 above using think instead of doubt.

# ADJECTIVE + TO + INFINITIVE

We can describe or give our opinion about an action /

It can be means 'it sometimes is'.

			100	
	To.		Adjective	Action / situation
It	is was	really very		to find work in computing to find the time.
	can be	quite	dangerous	to walk at night
not	to do			to live there.

We sometimes talk about negative situations / actions. It was difficult not to tell people, but I didn't say anything until

It was stupid not to ask for help.

park

## Exercise 1

read

Complete the sentences with the correct verb. Use to + infinitive or not to + infinitive.

L	find	walk	offer	Worry
2	It's perfe	uite difficult ectly safe st impossible _	round	
4	I think it I think it	is very rude	a d	e car in town. Irink to a visitor. Children's books when
6		esting		ences between the two
		s important s stupid		out making mistakes. elections.

## More patterns with adjective + to + infinitive

Look at these other examples of adjective + to + infinitive. It was crazy to spend so much money on a car. It's too late to phone them now.

It's too cloudy to go to the beach. Let's do something else.

## DID YOU KNOW?

We can show we're talking from personal experience by starting sentences I find it I I found it instead of it is I it was. I find it difficult to make friends.

I found it easy to find work when I lived there.

## Exercise 2

Match the two parts of the sentences. Translate the es into your language.

	ntences into j		to make friends when I was there.
4	It's too far away	а	to go skiing when we were there.
-	It was too warm	b	to go skiing when the
2	II was too wrong		to travel there every day.
3	I think it's wrong	d	to spend the day shopping.

d to spend the day e to ever use violence. 4 It's too early

f to know what will happen. 5 It can be fun 6 I found it difficult

## REVISION

#### Exercise 1

Change the sentences into negatives (-) or questions (?).

- 1 They'll win. (-)
- 2 He'll get the job. (?)
- 3 It was difficult to laugh in that situation. (-)
- 4 I'll probably see you before Christmas. (-)
- 5 I think the economy will improve this year. (-)
- 6 It's easy to find work. (?)

#### **Exercise 2**

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets (to / not to + infinitive or will / won't + infinitive).

ĺ	lt's important	the contract carefully. (re	ead)
			2.5

- 2 Do you think the Social Democrats \_\_\_\_\_ the election next year? (lose)
- 3 It can be very expensive \_\_\_\_ \_\_ here. (eat out)
- 4 I think it's good \_\_\_\_\_ and meet new people. (travel)
- 5 Do you think it's easy \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ abroad? (move)
- 6 It definitely \_\_\_\_\_ soon. You'll have to wait. (not happen)
- \_\_\_ someone when they need it. (help)
- 8 I don't think it \_\_\_\_\_ any difference to the result. (make)

#### Exercise 3

Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 It was lovely see you again.
- 2 It don't will cost too much.
- 3 What you will do with the money you won?
- 4 Was difficult to learn Russian?
- 5 It's difficult don't think about it.
- 6 It's no rude to talk about money in my country.

## 15 TECHNOLOGY

## BE THINKING OF + -ING

We use be thinking of + -ing to talk about plans we are not 100% sure of, but have already thought about.

I'm thinking of doing a Web design course next year.

We're not thinking of buying a new one yet.

Where are you thinking of going?

#### Exercise 1

Write full sentences using be thinking of and the ideas below.

- 1 1/think/join a gym.
- 2 What brand / you / think / buy?
- 3 They / think / move sometime next year.
- 4 I hope he / not / think / leave the company.
- 5 Who / you / think / ask?
- 6 They said on TV that they / not / think / change the price.
- 7 Which university she / think / apply to?
- 8 1/think / try to make my own computer.
- 9 Why / he / think / retire? He's only 48.
- 10 Please tell me you / not / think / marry him!

## DID YOU KNOW?

When we use be thinking of + -ing, we often then ask for recommendations.

- A: I'm thinking of buying my dad some new clothes, but I don't know any good shops. Can you recommend anywhere?
- B: Well, there's a good place for older men in the centre of town. It's called Carter's.

### Exercise 2

Match the questions 1-6 with the recommendations a-f

- My brother is thinking of doing an English course next year. Can you recommend anywhere?
- We're thinking of going to the cinema later. Can you recommend anything?
- 3 I'm thinking of changing the mobile phone company I use Can you recommend anything?
- 4 My sister's thinking of buying a new car. Can you recommend anything?
- 5 We're thinking of going somewhere warm over Christmas. Can you recommend anywhere?
- 6 I'm thinking of getting a pet for my younger brother. Can you recommend anything?
- a Well, you could try Dubai. It's always hot at that time of year - and not too expensive.
- b I'm not really sure, to be honest. I haven't seen any films for ages!
- c Well, I use Blue and they've always been great very reliable and good value for money.
- d That's a nice idea. Cats are always good and they need less attention than dogs!
- e Well, I spent two years at Cambridge House and really enjoyed it. I had great teachers.
- f You're asking the wrong person, I'm afraid. I can't drive, so I don't know much about it.

### ADVERBS

We form descriptive adverbs by adding -ly to an adjective.

Adjective	Adverb
a <b>bad</b> man	do badly
a quick run	solve it quickly
an <b>easy</b> exercise	check it easily
a successful sportsman	develop it successfully
an efficient service	work efficiently
a slow computer	drive slowly
a quiet room	leave quietly
a happy child	work happily
a nice day	play <b>nicely</b>
a safe place	keep it safely

## Irregular adverbs

The most common irregular adverb to describe a verb is well. A few adverbs have the same form as the adjective, such as fast and long.

Adjective	Adverb
a good time a fast train a long time a hard job a late night early morning a loud noise	do it <b>well</b> change <b>fast</b> not last <b>long</b> work <b>hard</b> go out <b>late</b> get up <b>early</b> talk <b>loud</b> / <b>loudly</b>

Modifie We car and too The ec I had a Things For mo

> Exerc Comp adject bad

1 A: 2 A:

early

B: 3 A: B:

4 A: B: A:

5 A: B.

> B: Com

> We c

6 A:

adjed I'm s LED Can They

Exe Com corr mea

Forr

1 a b 2 a

b 3 a Ь

6 a

## regilive can modify descriptive adverbs with quite, very, regiliv me economy's doing quite badly. and a problem, but the company solved it very quickly. mings are changing really fast. For more information on modifiers, see Unit 6. complete the sentences using adverbs formed from the djectives in the box. good easy late nice bad hard happy lona early slow A: Can you speak more ? I can't follow. B: Oh yes, sorry. So ... what ... I ... said ... was ... A: The bank has an app I use. It allows you to manage your money really \_ B: Yeah - my bank has something similar. A: You look tired. B: Lam. I went to bed \_\_\_ and had to get up 4 A: How did his exam go? B: Oh! It went really \_\_. He's a bit upset about it because he worked quite \_ A: What a shame. Still, I'm sure he'll do better next time. All don't like their website. The search doesn't work very \_, so It's difficult to find what you want. B: Yeah, I know, but the main page is designed 6 A: My son can spend all day quite \_\_\_\_\_ playing video games. B: That's like my son. We sometimes have to give him a time limit so he doesn't play too \_ Comparatives We can make comparatives in the same way as with adjectives. Im sure he'll do better next time. LED lights last longer than other lights. Can you speak more slowly? I can't follow. They hope the cells will work more efficiently in the future. For more information on comparatives, see Unit 6. Exercise 2 Complete the second sentence in each pair with the correct adverb, so the two sentences have the same meaning. In 6-8 you need a comparative. 1 a It's not a very efficient system. b They don't organise things very \_\_ a I didn't sleep very well. b I slept quite \_\_\_\_\_ \_last night. a The app is a safe place to keep all your passwords. b It allows you to keep all your passwords \_\_\_\_\_in one place. The app provides a quick and easy solution. b The app solves the problem \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_ We didn't leave early enough. b We left too \_ a Don't speak so quietly. t Can you speak a bit \_\_\_\_\_

I'm not improving – I got a better mark in my last test.

b I think I'm doing \_\_\_\_\_ than I was before. a I need to do more work for my next test. b I need to study \_\_\_\_\_ for my next test.

## REVISION

## Exercise 1

Rewrite each sentence as a positive statement (+), a negative statement (-) or a question (?), using the

- I'm thinking of changing jobs. (? / she)
- 2 Is he thinking of making his own website? (-/we) 3 They're not thinking of having children yet. (+/1)
- 4 Are you thinking of buying a new one? (+ / he)
- 5 She's thinking of applying for a Master's. (-/1) 6 We're not thinking of selling the company. (? / they)

# Choose the correct option.

- 1 He's a very confident / confidently speaker.
- 2 It's a really old car. It's really slow / slowly.
- 3 I got home really late / lately last night.
- 4 My gran drives really slow I slowly.
- 5 I'm not very well / good at maths.
- 6 You speak Italian very good / well.
- 7 He's quite bad / badly at tennis, but he tries really hardly /
- 8 | understand Chinese quite good / well, but my pronunciation is awful / awfully.

## Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 He really quickly speaks!
- 2 Where you thinking of moving to?
- 3 I'm thinking to complain to the company about it.
- 4 You look really nicely in that suit.
- 5 He's studying hardly for his exams at the moment.
- 6 The camera works perfect now.
- 7 We're thinking get married next year.
- 8 You drive too fastly.

## PAST CONTINUOUS

To make the past continuous, we use was / were + (not) + the -ing form of the verb.

I was working in a Second Life nightclub when one night I met my future husband.

We were driving home from another appointment when we suddenly saw it - the house of our dreams!

We often use the past continuous and the past simple in the same sentence. We use the past continuous to show one action started and was already in progress at the time that a past simple action happened.

We were both doing a Spanish course when we met.

To link the two actions together, we often use the word when. I was shopping in town when I saw one on sale. We were both working in the same office when we met

We can also start with the past simple. I saw one on sale when I was shopping in town.

#### DID YOU KNOW?

We often use a negative past continuous clause + a clause with so and the past simple.

We weren't getting on very well, so I started spending a lot of time online.

I wasn't feeling very well, so I just went home and went to bed.

She wasn't enjoying it, so she decided to stop and do something else.

#### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with the past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

8		(talk) to
	someone c	on another line when you called.
2	What	(you / do) when you heard the news?
3	It	_ (not / work) very well, so I took it back to
	the shop.	
4	We	(have) dinner when my sister suddenly
	us she was	pregnant!

- 5 They \_\_\_\_ (not / get on) very well, so they decided to break up.
- 6 We \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in the cinema when he suddenly tried to kiss me. It was horrible!

#### Exercise 2

Match the two parts of the sentences.

1 Sorry I didn't answer your call I

- 1 We were studying at the same university when
- 2 I first met him when
- 3 They were living in Syria when
- 4 She broke her leg when
- 5 It was a lovely surprise. They were all waiting for me when
- 6 Sorry I didn't answer, but you phoned when
- a he was working in a café near my office.
- b she was skiing in Scotland.
- c the war started, so they decided to leave.
- d larrived at the airport.
- e I was sleeping.
- f we first met.

## WILL / WON'T FOR PROMISES

To make promises, we usually use will / won't.

We sometimes add I promise.

A: Dad, can we go to the cinema today?

B: Sorry, I'm too busy. I'll take you next week, I promise.

We can also use will / won't in short answers.

A: You need to be careful.

B: I will.

A: Don't forget.

B: I won't.

#### Exercise 1

Choose the correct option.

- 1 I promise I'll / I won't tell anyone.
- 2. I'll come with you. You'll / You won't have to go on your own.
- 3 Don't worry. I'll / I won't be there on time.
- 4 I'll / I won't bring you back a nice present, I promise.
- 5 A: Have you spoken to the bank yet? B: /'ll / I won't do it as soon as possible.
- 6 A: I hope you're not going to do that again.
  - B: Don't worry. I will I I won't.
- 7 A: Take care.
  - B: I will / I won't.

#### Exercise 2

Write a promise to follow each request. Use the words in brackets. The first one is done for you.

- 1 Can she go on her own? (be careful)

  Can she go on her own? She'll be careful.
- 2 Could I borrow some money? (pay back)
- 3 Can I borrow your umbrella? (lose)
- 4 Is it OK if some friends come over tonight? (make noise)
- 5 Can I borrow your jacket? (look after)
- 6 Could we have a break? (be back)
- 7 Could I stay with you? (stay)

#### REVISION

#### Exercise 1

Rewrite the sentences as statements (+), negatives (-) or questions (?), using the pronouns in brackets.

- 1 I was working yesterday, so I couldn't answer your email. (-/he)
- 2 I was living there when they met. (? / you)
- 3 | will tell him. (-/l)
- 4 I was paying attention during the meeting. (- / they)
- 5 Will you do it for me? (+ / I)
- 6 We were cycling when the big storm started. (? / you)
- 7 She wasn't listening when you made that promise. (+ / we)
- 8 Was he driving too fast when the accident happened? (+/I)

#### Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs. Use the past simple for one verb and the past continuous for the other.

4	1	in the park when I	my leg. (play,
	hurt)		
2	1	23 euros when I	home. (find, walk)
a.	August	to one of her concerts	when shein
	a band (	ge, play)	
5	We	a few times when I	(move, grow
	up)		
0	He	down a quiet road	when a car
	him and	his horse. (ride, hit)	
7	She	the course, so she	to stop. (not
	enjoy, de	ecide)	
8	They	friends in Peru w	hen the earthquake
		(vicit bit)	

#### Exercise 3

Correct the mistake in each sentence or dialogue.

- 1 I call you tonight, I promise.
- 2 What you were doing when this happened?
- 3 I will always to love you.
- 4 I was runing down the street when I fell and hurt my arm.
- 5 The children was all studying quietly when I went into the classroom.
- 6 Someone was stealing my bike when I was buying some things in the shop.
- 7 A: Don't be late.
  - B: I don't.
- 8 A: What did he say?
  - B: I don't know. I wasn't listen. Sorry.

IR

presen be becom

become begin break bring build

burn buy catch choose

cost cut do

come

drink drive

eat fall feel

fight find fly

forget get

give go

have

hear hurt

keep know

learn

# RREGULAR VERBS

present	past simple	past participle
be .	was/were	been
<sub>pecome</sub>	became	become
pegin	began	begun
preak	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
puild	built	built
Surn	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	#316.h
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	(24)
light	fought	forgat
ind	found	found
ly	flew	flown
orget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
live	gave	given
jo	went	gone
nave	had	had
1ear	heard	heard
ourt	hurt	hurt
eep	kept	kept
lnow	known	known
earn	learnt	learnt / learned
eave	left	left

present		
lend	past simple	past partic
light	lent	lent
lose	lit	lit
make	lost	lost
mean	made	made
pay	meant	meant
put	paid	paid
read	put	put
ride	read	read
run	rode	ridden
say	ran	run
see	said	said
	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelt	spelt
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
hrow	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
	won	won
win write	wrote	written

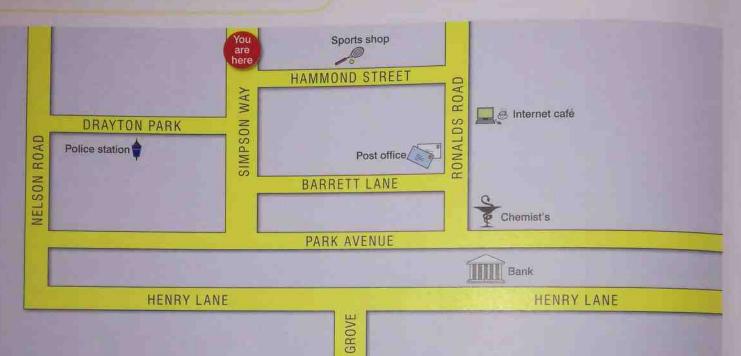
# INFORMATION FILES

FILE 1

## Unit 3 page 27 CONVERSATION PRACTICE

#### Student A

You want to go to a supermarket, a restaurant, a church, a language school and a bookshop.



EDEN (

FILE 2

## Unit 4 page 36 VOCABULARY

## Student A

A	Ask Student B when these days are. Write the								
	dates.								
	Immaculate Conception, Italy								

Teacher's Day, China \_\_\_

Human Rights Day, South Africa \_\_\_\_\_\_Independence Day, India

Student B's birthday

The next public holiday

B Complete the dates below. Then answer Student B's questions.

Labour Day, Bolivia

1st May

Unity Day, Germany

3rd October

Youth Day, Morocco

12th August

Father's Day

The first Sunday

in June

My birthday

The next public holiday

C Check with B that you wrote the correct dates.

ILE 3

Unit 3 page 27

Student B

You want to

FILE 4

Unit 4 Juge 30

## Student E

A Comple

A's ques

Teacher

Human

Indepen

My birth

The nex

B Ask A w Labour I

Unity Da

Youth D

Father's

Student

The nex

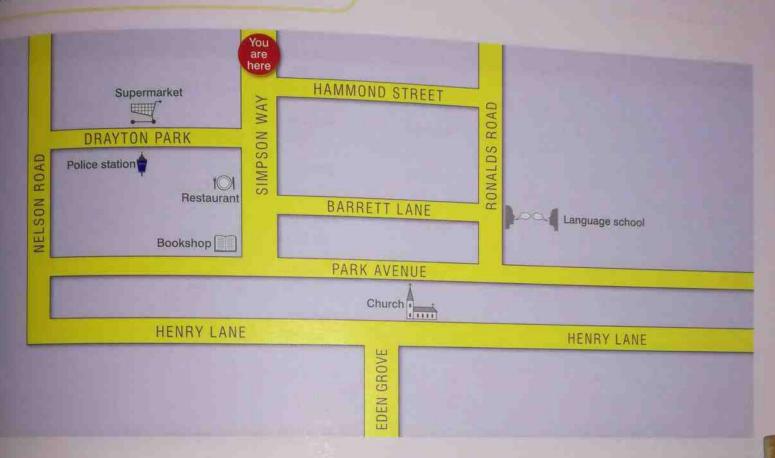
C Check w

192

## 13 nage 27 CONVERSATION PRACTICE

Student B

You want to go to a sports shop, a bank, a post office, an internet café and a chemist's.



## FILE 4

## Unit 4 page 36 VOCABULARY

### Student B

Α	Complete	the d	ates	below.	Then	answer	Student
	A's questio	ns.					

Immaculate Conception, Italy 8th December

Teacher's Day, China 10th September

Human Rights Day, South Africa 21st March Independence Day, India 15th August

My birthday \_\_\_\_\_

The next public holiday

B Ask A when these days are. Write the dates.

Labour Day, Bolivia

Unity Day, Germany

Youth Day, Morocco

Father's Day
Student A's birthday

The next public holiday \_\_\_\_\_

C Check with A that you wrote the correct dates.

## Unit 10 page 89 CONVERSATION PRACTICE

### Student B

Use the table below to help you give information about trains to Hope.

TRAINS TO HOPE	LEAVE	ARRIVE	CHANGES	COST		PLATFORM
slow	4:15	7:28	direct	Single 1st: £180	2nd: £135	13
				Return 1st; £210	2nd: £165	
fast	4:45	7:15	direct	Single 1st: £288	2nd: £250	9
				Return 1st: £314	2nd: £265	
slow	5:45	8:45	change at Sheffield	Single 1st: £35	2nd: £42	11 .
				Return 1st: £35	2nd: £55	

## FILE 6

Unit 14 page 129 READING

Student B

## Adnan

T came here two years ago because of the war in my country. It was dangerous to live there. Of course, there is crime here – someone stole my bike once – but it's not dangerous.

People here complain about the health service, but for me it has been great. I was injured in the war and when I came here, I had treatment. The doctors were kind and efficient, and it was free. People here are polite, but it's difficult to really know them. In my country, our home was always open. There were always lots of friends and family sharing food, talking, laughing. I really miss that. My friends here are other foreigners. We play football in the park every Sunday.

I've found cleaning and building work here. It's not what I want to do, but wages are OK, so I can support my family. One day, I hope I'll go back home and do a more important job. When I go, I would also like to take the climate with me! I know it rains a lot here, but back home, it's too hot and there's not enough water.

## FILE?

## Unit 11 page 100 VOCABULARY

#### Student A

 Ask your partner what these foods are. Listen to your partner's explanation. Write the word in your own language. Then, look at your partner's photos and check. Did you have the right word?

almonds coriander mussels cabbage mackerel strawberry

 Answer your partner's questions. Use the photos to help you explain what the foods are. Use actions or draw if you need to. Don't let your partner see your photos.

B: What's a carrot?

A: It's a vegetable. It's orange and long.



## Unit 10 page 89 CONVERSATION PRACTICE

## Student A

Use the table below to help you give information about trains to Hull.

TRAINS TO HULL	LEAVE	ARRIVE	CHANGES	COST	
slow	9:15	12:35	change at Leeds	Single	PLATFORM
				1st: £175 2nd: £125	3
				Return 1st: £245 2nd: £185	
slow	9:45	12:45	direct	Single 1st: £160 2nd: £110	7.
				Return 1st: £200 2nd: £150	
fast	10:05	12:30	direct	<b>Single</b> 1st: £325 2nd: £155	7
				<b>Return</b> 1st: £380 2nd: £225	

Unit 11 page 99 CONVERSATION PRACTICE

# MENU

## STARTERS

Soup · Salad



## MAIN COURSES

Pizza • Steak • Fish • Chicken

## DESSERTS

Ice cream • Chocolate cake • Cheese

# DRINKS

Red wine . White wine . Beer Water . Orange juice

## Unit 10 page 90 READING

Paragraph 3 is not true.

A photo of the 'Ferrari taxi' was shown on the internet, but the taxi wasn't real. Someone used image-editing software to create the photo and then they invented the story about how much the taxi cost.

## FILE 11



· It's over there.

COMPUTERS

 It's on the bottom / top shelf / by the till / on this floor / on the fourth floor.

BOOKS

- · Try the sports section / the third floor.
- · Take the lift / escalator.
- When you come out of the lift, ... / When you get off the escalator, ...
- · ... turn right / turn left.
- ... it's in front of you / behind you / at the back / in the corner.
- · It's next to the jeans / the beauty department.

## FILE 12

## Unit 11 page 100 VOCABULARY

## Student B

 Answer your partner's questions. Use the photos to help you explain what the foods are. Use actions or draw if you need to. Don't let your partner see your photos.

A: What's a carrot?

B: It's a vegetable. It's orange and long.



 Ask your partner what these foods are. Listen to your partner's explanation. Write the word in your own language. Then, look at your partner's photos and check. Did you have the right word?

chickpeas goat plum chilli noodles prawns AU

UNI

TR/

1 beac 2 facto

3 river

4 nurs

6 chur 7 cour

8 wait

10 mus

12 gove 13 airpe

14 univ

15 police 16 traff 17 sho

**■** TR

I = Ivy

M: Fine

M: Mig

I: Rigit

M: Sor

I: You

M: Oh,

M: Yes

I And

M: No, I: Oh,

M: Chi

M: It's

l: Is it

I: OK

M: Aga

I: Wh M: Oh

I: Rea M: Yes

l: Inte

M: It's

TF

1 Hou

3 My

4 I'm 5 It's

6 Tok

# AUDIO SCRIPTS

## UNIT 1

## TRACK 1

- 1 beach
- 2 factory
- 3 river
- 4 nurse
- s businesswoman
- 6 church
- 7. countryside
- 8 waiter
- 9 mosque
- 10 museum
- t1 office
- 12 government
- 13 airport
- 14 university
- 15 police officer
- 16 traffic
- 17 shop assistant

#### TRACK 2

## I = Ivy; M = Miguel

It HI. Come in. Sit down. How are you?

- It I'm Ivy. I'm a teacher here. What's your name?
- t Right. Hi. Nice to meet you. And what's your surname, Miguel?
- M: Sorry?
- ! Your surname. Your family name.
- M: Oh, sorry. Hernandez.
- I: OK. Her-nan-dez. Is that right?
- And where are you from, Miguel? Spain?
- M: No, I'm not, I'm from Mexico.
- l: Oh, OK. Which part?
- M. Chihuahua. It's a city in the north.
- M: it's OK. It's a city. Factories. Business. Some things are nice.
- M: Now? No, it's not hot now. In June, it's very hot. 30, 35.
- LOK, And what do you do?
- M: Again?
- What do you do? What's your job?
- M: Oh, I'm police.
- Really? You're a police officer?
- M: Yes sorry. I'm a police officer.
- I. Interesting. Is it a good job?
- Milt's OK, It's a job.

## TRACK 3

- 1 How are you?
- 2 Where's your granddad from?
- 3 My parents are from Spain.
- 4 I'm a receptionist in a hotel.
- it's not a good job.
- § Tokyo's a very big city.

- 7 How old is Miguel?
- 8 Are we late?
- 9 Are you cold?
- 10 It's a boring place.

## TRACK 4

- A: Hello.
- B: Hi. It's Jan, isn't it?
- A: Yes.
- B: What do you do, Jan?
- A: I'm a doctor.
- B: Really? Where do you work?
- A: In a hospital in Warsaw.
- 2
- C: So, Lara, what do you do?
- D: I'm a teacher.
- C: Oh, really? Where do you work?
- D: In a secondary school in Bristol.
- C: Do you enjoy it?
- D: Yes, it's great.
- C: What do you teach?
- D: French.
- C: That's good. Sorry, I don't speak French!
- E: Where are you from, Marta?
- F: Brazil.
- E: Oh, OK, Which part?
- F: I live in Rio Branco in the north.
- E: I don't know it.
- F: Ah. It's a small city.
- E: What do you do there?
- F: I'm a civil servant.
- E: OK. Where do you work?
- F: In a local government office.
- E: Do you enjoy it?
- F: Yes, it's OK.
- G: What do you do, Filippo?
- H: I'm a waiter.
- G: Where do you work?
- H: In a café in the centre of town near the cathedral.
- G: OK. Do you enjoy it?
- H: Not really. I want a different job.
- G: Oh? What do you want to do?
- H: I don't know maybe become a police officer.

- /djə/
- /da ja/
- 1 Where do you live?
- 2 Who do you live with?
- 3 How do you go there?
- 4 What time do you get up?
- 5 When do you go to bed?

- 1 There are a lot of nice shops near my house.
- 2 Is there a university in your town?
- 3 There's a beautiful old mosque in the town centre.
- 4 There aren't any hospitals in the area.
- 5 There's an expensive restaurant near here. It's famous!
- 6 There are some beautiful houses in the old part of the city.
- There are some nice little places to eat on the beach.
- 8 There's an airport outside town.
- 9 Are there any cinemas in your town?
- 10 There aren't any schools in the village. We go to the next town.

### TRACK 7

witf, længwidz, ju:, laik, waif, ri, tel, wei, loukol, res, wont, west, li:s

### TRACK 8

- 1 Which languages do you speak?
- 2 I don't like English food.
- 3 His wife's a receptionist in a hotel.
- 4 He's a waiter in a local restaurant.
- 5 Do you want to go swimming in the river?
- 6 She's at university in west London.
- 7 He wants to be a police officer.
- 8 Where does your brother work?

## UNIT 2

### TRACK 9

- 1 doing sport
- 2 dancing
- 3 singing
- 4 meeting new people
- 5 playing computer games
- 6 walking
- 7 cooking
- 8 reading
- 9 going to a concert
- 10 watching TV
- 11 listening to music
- 12 swimming
- 13 playing the guitar
- 14 going out for dinner
- 15 going to the cinema
- 16 drawing

#### TRACK 10

- A: Do you like doing sport?
- B: No, I'm really bad at it. What about you?
- A: Yeah, I think it's great. I love playing tennis and basketball. Do you like walking?
- B: No it's boring. What about you?
- A: Yeah, it's OK. I like going to the park. I sometimes walk
- B: Do you like playing computer games?
- A: No, not really. What about you?
- B: Oh, I love it. It's really good fun. I play every day a lot! Do you like going to the cinema?
- A: Yes, I do. It's great.
- B: I love it too. Do you want to see Love Train?
- A: No. I don't like love films. I like horror films.
- B: Oh.

## TRACK 11

- 1 I need to go.
- 2 I want to learn to drive.
- 3 Try to use the words you learn.
- 4 My daughter wants to get a new phone.
- 5 I try to study English every day.
- 6 We need to buy some things later.

## TRACK 12

- A: Do you like watching football?
- B: Yeah. It's OK. Why?
- A: Well, do you want to watch the match on Saturday?
- B: Where?
- A: In a café in town. It's on TV.
- B: OK. What time does it start?
- A: Five.
- B: So what time do you want to meet?
- A: Is four OK? We want to get a place to sit.
- B: OK. Where do you want to meet?
- A: Outside Green Street train station?
- B: That sounds good. So four o'clock outside Green Street station.
- A: Yes. See you there.
- B: Do you like Italian food?
- C: Yeah, I do. I love it.
- B: Do you want to meet for lunch on Sunday? There's a really nice Italian restaurant near here.
- C: Yeah. That sounds good. What time do you want to meet?
- B: Is one OK?
- C: Yes, sure. Whore?
- B: Outside the cati -draft
- C: OK, Great

## TRACK 13

## M = Matty, S = Simon, C = Camilla

- M: OK. Let's take a break! There's a café next door if you want a coffee.
- S: Eh? What?
- C: It's a break. He says there's a café next door.
- S: Oh. OK, thanks.
- C: Do you want to have a coffee?
- S: Oh ... yeah, but I don't have any money.
- C: That's OK. I have some money.
- S: Are you sure?
- C: Sure. You buy another day.
- S: OK, thanks. How long is the break?
- C: Oh, I don't know. Teacher! Teacher!
- M: Yes, Camilla.
- C: How much time do we have?
- M: Twenty minutes.
- C: Twenty. OK. Thanks.
- M: Oh, and Camilla call me Matty, not 'teacher'!
- C: Oh. OK! Sorry ... Matty.
- C: Er ... um teacher, er Matty?
- M: Yes. Camilla.
- C: Do we have any homework?
- M: Oh yes. Everyone! Look on page 157. The Grammar reference. OK? So do Exercise 2 on 'going to and then in Position and then in Revision do all three exercises.

- 5: All?
- M: Yeah. class.
- S: This is
- M: Do yo
- C: No, it'
- S: Mayb
- M: No. 1
- five o
- 5: OK. N
- A: OK, e
- M: OK ex Before
- M: OK. S
- S: Hi ... 6
- M: That's S: Er. OK
- M: OK. S What'
- C: Close
- M: Yes. T S: Teach
- M: Oh, rig and S
- S: OK. O M: Um ...
- S: No. ...

TRA

## /klau/, /k leiz/

- DITRA
- 1 Do yo 2 That's
- 3 We so
- 4 My so 5 Igeth
- 6 We do
- 7 I want
- 8 He see

## TRA

- Do you 2 Idon't
- 3 What t
- 4 There 5 I don't 6 He usu

## TRAC

- the batt set the
- 9 sit in the

- yeah And then try to learn some vocabulary from today's
- This is a lot of homework.
- M Do you think so?
- c. No. it's not much homework. I think Simon is lazy!
- s Maybe
- M. No. I don't think sol Simon, try to do it. Do some every day five or ten minutes.
- s OK. Maybe.
- A OK, everyone. Thanks. See you next week.
- W. OK everyone, nice to see you again. My name's Matty. Before we start, everyone tell each other your names.
- M OK. Stop there! Oh, hello Simon.
- s. Hi ... er, sorry, ... I'm late.
- M That's OK. Sit down. There's a place next to Camilla.
- S. Er. OK.
- w OK. So everyone. Look at page 57 now. See Exercise 1. What's the answer to number 1? Anyone? Camilla?
- C Close the window.
- M Yes, That's right. OK, everyone you find the other answers.
- s. Teacher! I don't have a pen.
- M. Oh, right. Does anyone have a pen? Thanks, Camilla! Oh, and Simon, call me Matty, not 'teacher'.
- s. OK. OK. Er., Teacher what does 'turn off' mean?
- M. Um ... er ... Do you have a dictionary?
- S. No. ... Oh, Camilla, thanks. Camilla, do you have any paper?

klau/, /kn/, /ge/, /gou/, /ger/, /erk/, /ark/, /æks/, /srr/, sar/, frz/,

## TRACK 15

- 1 Do you want to take a break?
- 2 That shop never closes.
- 3 We sometimes go to the countryside.
- 4 My son plays a lot of computer games.
- 5 I get home from work at six.
- 6 We don't get much homework.
- 7 I want to relax on Saturday.
- 8 He seems very nice.

## TRACK 16

- 1 Do you have any money?
- 2 I don't need any help, thanks.
- 3 What time do you want to meet?
- 4 There are a lot of places to visit here.
- 5 I don't need to do much homework tonight.
- 6 He usually gets up at six and starts work at seven.

## TRACK 17

- share food
- 2 wash some clothes
- a post office
- a put on make-up
- 5 a supermarket
- hang up the washing
- the bathroom
- set the table
- sit in the kitchen.
- dry my hair

- 11 clean the house
- 12 get dressed
- 13 a department store
- 14 go to a chemist
- 15 the living room
- 16 a sports centre

## TRACK 18

- A: I need to buy some shoes for my son. Are there any shoe
- B: How old is he?
- A: Six.
- B: Try Kid's Stuff it's a clothes shop for kids. They sell nice
- A: OK. Where's that?
- B: It's on New Street. There's a big bookshop on the right, and it's next to that.
- A: OK. Thank you.
- 2
- C: Are there any restaurants near here? We want to get something to eat.
- D: There aren't really any places in this area. Try the supermarket on Dixon Road. They have sandwiches and salads.
- C: Dixon Road?
- D: Yeah. Do you know it?
- C: Yes, I think so.
- D: Well, the supermarket's on the left there opposite the small park.
- C: Great. Thanks for that.
- 3
- E: Is there a bookshop near here? I want to buy a phrasebook.
- F: No. sorry. Maybe try Jeffer's. It's a department store on Chester Street. I think they sell books and things for tourists.
- E: Sorry. Where?
- F: It's on the corner of Chester Street and Hale Road.
- E: OK. Sorry. Can you show me on the map?
- F: Yes, sure. Look. We're here on Simpson Lane and there's Hale Road and that's Chester Street there. The department store's on the left - next to a big clothes shop. It's called Jeffer's.
- E: OK. Great. Thank you.

- A: Simon!
- B: What?
- A: Look at this room!
- B: What?
- A: It's a mess!
- B: What?
- A: I can't walk across it without breaking something!
- B: It's not bad.
- A: Can you tidy it, please?
- B: Later.
- A: Now, please!
- B: But, mum!
- A: Now!
- B: OK, OK.

C: Wh ... what te ... temperature is the air-conditioning on?

C: Ca ... can you turn it up? I'm co ... cold.

D: It's not cold.

C: P ... please.

D: OK.

C: Thanks.

3

E: What did he say?

F: 'It's not you, it's me.'

E: Oh ... and what was that?

F: 'I don't love you anymore.'

E: OK ... What? Can you turn it up? I can't hear it.

F: It's old age, Dad. Is that OK for you?

E: Yes, thanks.

G: Can you turn the TV down? I need to study and I can't concentrate.

## TRACK 20

1 I can't sleep.

2 Can you help me?

3 Can I use your bathroom?

4 Can you turn up the music?

5 I can't find my book.

6 Can I wash some clothes?

7 We can't come next week.

8 He can't drive at the moment.

## TRACK 21

/fai/, /bæ/, /bai/, /po/, /ap/, /lav/, /liv/, /pæ/, /pəu/, /plei/, /plii/, /flæ/,/fi/,/fɔ:/,/ve/,/fri/

## TRACK 22

1 I need to find a bank.

2 She's in the bathroom, putting on make-up.

3 They have a lovely living room.

4 I want to send this package to Poland.

5 Put the plates in the sink, please.

6 My flat's on the left - opposite the post office.

7 A friend has four sofas in her flat!

8 There's a plate of vegetables in the fridge.

## UNIT 4

### TRACK 23

1 enjoy the nightlife

2 watch a football match

3 be annoyed

4 rent a boat

5 get some flowers

6 have a picnic

7 get back home

8 have a cold

9 see a film

10 walk in the mountains

11 do some shopping

13 snow

14 celebrate your birthday

15 stay in a hotel

16 go sightseeing

## TRACK 24

A: Hi, Helga. How are you?

B: OK, but very tired!

A: Oh. What did you do at the weekend?

B: We went to a rock festival.

A: Yeah?

B: Yeah. It was fantastic.

A: Really? Who did you see?

B: Oh, lots of bands! The Hives, The Strypes. Who else now? Oh. yes. I saw The Loons on Saturday night. They were good

A: Sounds great.

B: Yeah, it was great, but I didn't sleep much.

C: Hello.

D: Hi, how are you? Did you have a nice weekend?

C: Yes, it was OK.

D: What did you do?

C: Nothing much, really. I did some shopping on Saturday morning. I played tennis, watched TV - the usual things.

D: It sounds OK.

C: Yeah, I needed to relax.

E: Did you have a good weekend?

F: Not really.

E: Oh! That sounds bad. What did you do?

F: Nothing! I was ill. I had a bad cold. I stayed in bed all weekend.

E: Oh, no! Are you OK now?

F: Yes, but I need to work now!

G: Detlev! Hil How are you?

H: Good.

G: Did you have a nice weekend?

H: Yes, it was great

G: What did you do?

H: Well, some friends came to visit, so I showed them round

G: That sounds nice. Where did you go?

H: Well, on Saturday, we went to the cathedral and then had a picnic in the park, and in the evening we went into the old town. Then on Sunday, we went to the market in the morning, and then I cooked lunch for everyone.

G: That sounds great.

H: It was lovely.

## TRACK 25

1 My friends visit me a lot.

2 We visited the cathedral.

3 I played a game of tennis with a friend.

4 I tried to phone you yesterday to arrange to play tennis.

5 I wanted to go out last night, but it rained.

6 I met a friend and we chatted all night.

7 We often walk together and chat.

8 We walked along the river and had a picnic.

## TRACK 26

1 January the first

2 October the nineteenth

3 March the eighth

4 November the second

5 June the twenty-fourth

6 the third Monday in January

TR

The nic some f ate and of my f warm. in the a

wasn missed It was They o for din nice th wasn't

For the Virgini 16th a It was got the very cl great v Monda Washin IZ TR

/did ju 1 Did 2 Wh 3 Wh

/dja/

/dt dja

5 Wh TE

4 Did

/u:n/\_/ /trk/, /

> TR We

> > We

3 We

4 We 5 We

6 We 7 We

8 The

TR

1 The 2 Ithi

3 Car 4 Hov

5 The 6 I'm

the night before the holiday, we made a fire on the beach with ome friends. We sat round the fire all night and we drank and te and sang songs and laughed. We had a great time. Some my friends swam in the sea, but I didn't. The sea wasn't very warm. It usually isn't in June. Then on the 24th, I slept until four n the afternoon.

wasn't in Russia in March, I was in London for work, so I missed the holiday. They don't have this holiday in the UK. was sad. On Women's Day, men usually treat us very well. they do nice things and give us presents. But I didn't go out for dinner. I didn't get any flowers. I didn't have anyone to say nice things to me. I just sat in my hotel room and watched TV! It wasn't very nice.

For the holiday, we went to Snowshoe Mountain in West Virginia. The snow's good in January. We left on Saturday the 16th at three in the morning and we drove to the mountains. was good because there weren't many cars on the road. We not there at eight and spent the whole weekend skiing. It was very clear and sunny. There wasn't a cloud in the sky. We had great views. We came home on the afternoon of the holiday Monday, but the traffic was bad. We didn't get back home to Washington until two in the morning.

## TRACK 28

dia

di dia/

- 1 Did you go on holiday anywhere?
- 2 Where did you go?
- 3 Who did you go with?
- 4 Did you have a good time?
- 5 Where did you stay?

## TRACK 29

/u:n/, /aund/, /ent/, /mən/, /maunt/, /æm/, /dei/, /drəu/, /tid/, /tik/,/tin/,/tel/,/ist/,/ait/

## TRACK 30

- 1 We drove round the country.
- 2 We went to Germany in June.
- 3 We missed our flight when we came home.
- 4 We went walking in the mountains.
- 5 We rented a boat and swam in the river.
- 6 We spent a day in the capital city.
- 7 We had a fantastic time.
- 8 The weather was warm and sunny.

## TRACK 31

- 1 The bank's on this road on the right.
- 2 1 think she lives on her own.
- 3 Can you turn it up? I can't hear it.
- 4 How long were you there for?
- 5 There wasn't anyone I knew there.
- 6. I'm sorry, I didn't hear what you said.

## UNIT 5

## TRACK 32

- 1 a bar on the top floor
- 2 the menswear department
- 3 a man with a brown jumper.
- 4 take the lift
- 5 a young woman with a blue top
- 6 have a sale
- 7 work in a bakery
- 8 go up the escalator
- 9 choose a cake
- 10 look round the market
- 11 fruit and vegetables
- 12 queue to pay
- 13 business is growing
- 14 a woman with a green dress
- 15 the cheese section
- 16 steal some jeans
- 17 a woman with a leather jacket

- 1
- A: Who's next?
- B: Me.
- A: What would you like?
- B: Can I have some apples?
- A: These ones?
- B: No, those red ones.
- A: How many would you like?
- B: Six.
- A: OK. Anything else, my love?
- B: Yes. Those things there. What do you call them in English?
- A: These?
- B: Yes.
- A: Peaches. Do you want the yellow or the orange ones?
- B: Three yellow ones.
- A: There you go. That's three pounds ten altogether. Thank you. Next?
- C: Those look nice.
- D: Mmm. That yellow one especially.
- C: Hello. Do you speak English?
- E: A little.
- C: You see the yellow cake? Is it lemon?
- E: Yeah.
- C: Mmm. Can we have some of that?
- E: How much? Like this?
- D: A bit more. That's fine.
- C: And the brown one above it with the orange stuff on top? What's that?
- E: That's coffee cake with orange.
- C: OK. I'll have a piece of that.
- E: Like this?
- C: That's great.
- E: Five euros forty-six.

- F: English?
- F: Depends, seven dollars fifty, ten, fifteen dollars. Which do
- you like? G: How much is that red one?
- F: This one?

- G: No, the other one, there at the top. With 'Egypt' on it.
- F: This one?
- G: Yes.
- F: Fifteen.
- G: Really?
- F: For you, two for twenty five.
- G: You have another one like that?
- F: Of course.
- G: What size?
- F: Any size.
- G: OK. What about two for twenty dollars?
- F: OK. What size do you want?
- G: Can I have one in medium and a small one? Thanks.
- F: Here you are.

thirteen fourteen sixteen thirty sixty

## TRACK 35

- 1 That's eighteen euros exactly.
- 2 That's seventy dollars and sixteen cents altogether.
- 3 Everything is reduced by fifteen percent.
- 4 Those are thirteen ninety-nine at the moment reduced from seventeen.
- 5 It costs fourteen thousand pounds new.
- Our apartment cost two hundred and forty thousand when we bought it.

## TRACK 36

- 1 The shops in town are having sales at the moment.
- 2 I'm working very hard at the moment.
- 3 My mother's not here. She's doing the shopping.
- 4 The economy's growing fast at the moment.
- 5 My football team's doing really well now.
- 6 You're really improving.
- 7 Some friends are staying with me at the moment.
- 8 My brother's studying at university.

#### TRACK 37

- A: Excuse me. Do you sell batteries?
- B: Yes, madam. They're over there, by the till.
- A: Really?
- B: No? Let's see. Yes, look. They're there. On the bottom shelf.
- A: Oh, yes. Thanks. Oh, wait! They don't have this kind. It's for a camera.
- B: Oh, right. Try the basement. Take the lift over there and the camera section is in front of you when you get out. Ask an
- A: OK. Thanks.
- B: You're welcome.
- C: Did you see that?
- D: What? That woman with the blue coat?
- C: Yeah. She put that perfume in her bag!
- D: I know. Tell the security guard.
- C: No, you tell him.
- D: Why me? You saw her first!
- C: No I didn't.
- D: Oh, wait! Someone's talking to her.
- C: Oh dear ...

- E: Hi there.
- F: Where are you?
- E: I'm still on the bus, but we're coming down Oxford Street
- F: Oh, OK, Well, I'm just queuing to pay for these things.
- E: Did you get what you wanted?
- F: Yeah, I got a pair of jeans and a really nice skirt and two tops.
- E: That sounds a lot!
- F: They were all in the sale.
- E: Right. Anyway. Where do you want to meet?
- F: There's a café on the fourth floor.
- E: Is there?
- F: Yeah. Go in the main entrance and up the escalator and when you get off on the fourth floor, it's behind you. It's at the back of the store in the left corner.
- E: OK I'm sure I can find it. See you in a moment,

#### 4

- G: Excuse me. Are these all the sizes you have?
- G: OK. Can I see if these fit?
- H: Of course. The changing rooms are over there in the corner. Next to the jeans.
- G: Oh, OK. Thanks. How many items can I take to try on?
- G: Great. Thanks.

## TRACK 38

/m/, /vm/, /θm/, /ʃa: /, /[ən/, /ɪʃ/, /ɪtʃ/, /ɪdʒ/, /tʃu:/, /tʃi:/, /dʒi:/,

## TRACK 39

- 1 Which one is cheaper?
- 2 Choose what you want
- 3 They're selling everything they can.
- 4 My English is really improving.
- 5 She's wearing jeans and an orange jumper.
- 6 Can you manage with all those bags?
- 7 There's a big fish section in the market.
- 8 He's just changing his shirt.

## UNIT 6

## TRACK 40

- 1 solve the problem
- 2 a boring class
- 3 police training
- 4 cause a problem
- 5 study Engineering
- 6 help each other
- a Law student
- 8 pass the exam
- 9 a lazy student
- 10 learn to ride a bike
- 11 teach PE
- 12 an angry boss
- 13 a creative person
- 14 a modern university
- 15 a strange teacher
- 16 make clothes
- 17 borrow some money
- 18 learn Arabic

A: 5 B: 1

A: C

B: 1

A: R B: N

A: H B: R ir to 2 C: S

D: N C: C D: 0 C: F D: N C: A D: N

3

E: V

E: (

F: E

E N

5 A 6 A

8 4

I'm 900 love

char goo 2 Wel

ever angr

I'm le and Up in ride SOL

teac

- A: So what do you do, Imke?
- B. I'm a student.
- A: Oh, OK. What're you studying?
- B: I'm doing a degree in Marketing.
- A Right. And what year are you in?
- B: My first. I only started this year.
- A How's the course going?
- B. Really well. It's great. I'm really enjoying it. It's very interesting and the other students are very nice and friendly too, so that's good.
- c. So what do you do, Tom? Are you working?
- D: No, I'm a student at university.
- C; Oh, right. What're you studying?
- p: Geography.
- C. Really? What year are you in?
- D: My second.
- C: And how's it going?
- D: Not very well, actually. I just find it boring.
- E. What do you do? Are you working?
- F. No. I'm not, actually. I'm at the local technical college.
- E: Oh, right. What're you studying?
- F: Engineering.
- E: Wow! OK. What year are you in?
- F: My third. I finish next year.
- E: And how's it going?
- F: OK, but it's quite difficult. It's a lot of work!
- E: I'm sure. Well, good luck with it.

#### TRACK 42

- 1 How are you?
- 2 Where are you from?
- 3 What are you studying?
- 4 What year are you in?
- 5 Are you enjoying it?
- 6 Are you good at English?
- 7 Are you doing anything now?
- 8 Are you hungry?

## TRACK 43

#### Astrid

I'm doing a great course at the moment. I'm learning to make clothes. It's every Monday and Wednesday evening from 6.30 to 9 and it lasts for ten weeks. It's quite expensive, but it's really good. The teachers are very helpful and I'm learning a lot. I love seeing what the other students make as well. I want to change my job and work in fashion, so doing this course is a good start.

#### Peter

We had a training session at work last week. It wasn't very long it only lasted about an hour – but it was awful. My boss told everyone to go, so we didn't have any choice. It was about how to make good decisions. I didn't learn anything new. I was quite angry by the end of it.

Im learning to ride. I started taking classes about six months ago and I ride once or twice a week. It depends how busy I am. I grew p in the countryside and when I was young I always wanted to ide and have a horse, but my parents didn't have much money oldidn't have the chance, I'm really enjoying the lessons. My eacher is very patient and I'm getting quite good now.

## Neil

I'm doing an online Creative Writing course at the moment. My wife started it with me, but she stopped. She didn't like it because it's an open course and she said it was strange doing it with thousands of other students. On the course, we watch lots of videos and people comment. Then we do our own writing. I'm trying to write a novel. I'm spending about ten hours a week on it. Another thing I like about the course is there's no exam at the end. I hate taking exams, I always fail.

## TRACK 44

/e/, /ə/, /ɜː/, /ɔː/, /lə/, /lɔː/, /lɜː/, /en/, /ɜːn/, /ʃən/, /mənt/, /ɜːs/,

## TRACK 45

- 1 It causes a lot of problems.
- 2 The last course was more interesting.
- 3 The government's made education worse.
- 4 My classmates are quite friendly.
- 5 We learned a lot about the law.
- 6 The sports teacher's very popular.
- 7 I spent four hours preparing the talk.
- 8 The training at work was very boring.

## TRACK 46

- 1 My son's studying Law at university.
- 2 I'm learning to ride a horse at the moment.
- 3 Excuse me. I'm looking for the changing rooms.
- 4 Some of my classmates aren't very friendly.
- 5 Your English is better than mine.
- 6 It was much warmer last summer.

## UNIT 7

#### TRACK 47

- 1 dead
- 2 clever
- 3 old friends
- 4 funny
- 5 look after children
- 6 repair a car
- 7 a wedding
- 8 strict
- 9 feed the dog
- 10 do some housework
- 11 do the washing
- 12 nursery school
- 13 very fit
- 14 husband
- 15 male and female
- 16 surprised

- A: Do you have any brothers or sisters, Zoe?
- B: Yes, I do. I have two brothers.
- B: Well, I'm the middle child. My older brother's 28 and my younger one is nineteen.
- B: Neil my older brother is a teacher, and my younger brother, Tim, is in his second year at university. A: Oh, OK. What's he studying?
- B: Chemistry.

- C: Did you go out yesterday?
- D: Yeah, I did. I met my cousin and his girlfriend for a drink.
- C: Oh, OK. Is he visiting?
- D: No, he lives here. He's English.
- C: Really?
- D: Yes. My uncle Giorgio met my aunt Ruth in London and they stayed in England.
- C: So, how old is your cousin?
- D: Nineteen. He's a year younger than me.
- C: Do you have any other cousins here?
- D: No, I don't, but I have twelve back in Italy.
- C: Really? How many aunts and uncles do you have?
- D: Nine. My dad has eight brothers and sisters!
- E: So, are you married, Ted?
- F: Yes, I am 30 years next year.
- E: Wow! Really?
- F: Yep.
- E: So, what does your wife do?
- F: She's a nurse.
- E: And do you have any children?
- F: Yeah, just one son Ted junior. He's finishing college this year.
- E: Really? OK. What's he studying?
- F: Medicine. He wants to be a doctor.

Really? Really? Really?

### TRACK 50

- 1 My dad has ten brothers and sisters.
- 2 My brother's fifteen years older than me.
- 3 My wife is a nurse.
- 4 It's my birthday today.
- 5 My grandma's 98.
- 6 My sister's in her last year at school.

#### TRACK 51

- 1 Johan and I grew up together. We first met at school and later we shared a house together in Malmö. He's very creative. He's a photographer and he lives in New York now, but we're still very close. We talk all the time. We're friends for life, I'm sure.
- I only know Miguel because my husband works with him. I don't really get on with him very well, but what can I do? They were already friends when we met and I respect that. He likes going out a lot. He goes to parties all night. I think he's a bit stupid. He's 38, but he thinks he's still 21! He also sometimes says stupid things about women.
- In some ways, Claire and I don't know each other at all. She lives in Wisconsin and I live in Leeds. We never meet faceto-face. We only meet in chat rooms and we talk through Messenger. She's very sensitive and she really understands me. My friends think I'm crazy, but when I leave college, I want to go to the US and meet her in person!
- Liu Bing or Auntie Liu as I call her isn't really my aunt. She's an old friend of my mum's. They went to school together and she came to our house a lot when I was a kid. She's a strong and confident woman, and she made me feel good about myself. When I moved to Shanghai, she helped me find a place to live and a job, so now she's not only my mother's friend, she's mine as well!

## TRACK 52

/gri:/, /gli/, /mi:/, /ki/, /fi/, /fi:/, /fi:/, /swi/, /si/, /stri/

## TRACK 53

- 1 We agreed to meet tonight.
- 2 I'm not very confident about my English.
- 3 I need to feed my kids.
- 4 She's my best female friend.
- She swims a lot, so she's very fit.
- I need to leave at six.
- We're sisters, but we're not very similar.
- 8 Why is your dad so strict with your sister?

## UNIT 8

## TRACK 54

- 1 the main square
- 2 grow fruit
- 3 move house
- 4 destroy a building
- 5 win the lottery
- 6 provide help
- 7 go fishing
- 8 have a check-up
- 9 go to the library
- 10 a romantic dinner
- 11 a big clock
- 12 do some exercise
- 13 build a house
- 14 save money
- 15 get a taxi
- 16 get married

### TRACK 55

- 1
- A: Hey ... um ... Katie ... listen, do you want ... um ... do you have time for a coffee?
- B: No, sorry, I don't. I'm going to study in the library and do some reading for my Literature course.
- A: Oh, OK. Well, maybe later?
- B: I can't really. I'm not going to have time. I'm just going to go home because I really need to study. I have my exams next week, you know, so ...
- A: Oh, right. Well, good luck with them. What about after your exams? Do you want to go out somewhere then? Maybe dinner one night?
- B: I'm really sorry, but I can't. I ... I have to work that night. Bye
- A: But I didn't say which night!
- C: So what're your plans for today?
- D: Oh, I need to write a few emails, so I'm going to find a cafe with Wi-Fi and do that – and I have to check the details of my flight for next week as well, so, you know. What about you? What're your plans?
- C: I'm going to go running by the river later. I need to do some exercise!
- D: Good idea! What about tonight? Are you going to be busy
- C: No. Why? Do you want to meet somewhere?
- D: Yes, OK. Where?
- C: How about in the main square at eight?
- D: OK. Great.
- C: Then I can show you some nice places where there aren't too many tourists.

E: Are you

F: No. I'm with th

E: Oh, rig

F: A new

E: Oh, tha

F: Yeah, \

E: I have I'm goi

F: Maybe

E: OK.

F: Great.

## TRA

going to

1 Where I'm goi

3 What t

4 Some 5 How lo

He's n

## TRA

A: What'r B: I don't

A: Yes. G

B: How a

A: Yes, fir B: Is six C

A: it's qui

B: Oh, so A: Ferfec

TRA

I'm from t Manchest I'm saving to China t

and I'd lik

I work for leave and or three y myself. I'c that has to

I'm going going to b spend mo like to gro more time

I'd like to and I'd like to drive m restaurant name!

## TRAC

1 I'd reall

2 I'd reall 3 My brot Are you going to go to the meeting?

No. I'm not. I'm going to meet some clients and have lunch

Oh, right. Where are you going to eat?

A new French place in Harajuku.

e Oh, that sounds good.

F. Yeah. What about you? What're your plans?

E I have to give a presentation at the meeting, but after that I'm going to go out somewhere. Do you want to come?

Maybe, yeah. Call me later, OK?

F: Great. See you.

## TRACK 56

going to

Where are you going to go?

2 I'm going to leave tomorrow.

3 What time are you going to get up?

4 Some friends are going to visit.

5 How long are they going to stay?

6 He's not going to come.

## TRACK 57

A. What're your plans for later?

B: I don't have any. Why? Do you want to meet somewhere?

A: Yes. Great. Where?

B: How about in the main square, under the big clock?

A: Yes, fine, What time?

B: Is six OK?

A: It's quite early.

B: Oh, sorry. Well, how about seven thirty?

A: Perfect! See you later. Bye.

#### TRACK 58

I'm from the Czech Republic, but at the moment, I'm living in Manchester. I'm doing a degree here. I also work part-time and I'm saving money because, after university, I'd really like to go to China to study kung fu. I practise three times a week here, and I'd like to take it to the next level.

I work for a big design company in São Paulo, but I'd like to leave and start my own business sometime in the next two or three years. I don't like having a boss. I'd like to work for myself. I'd also like to start a family, have children, but maybe that has to wait!

I'm going to retire next year, after working for 38 years. It's going to be strange, but I'm looking forward to it. I'd like to spend more time gardening. I have a small piece of land and I'd like to grow my own fruit and vegetables. I'd also like to spend more time with my wife and children.

I'd like to be really famous. I'd like to have my own TV show and I'd like to have lots and lots of money. I'd like someone to drive me round in a big car and I'd like to eat in expensive restaurants – and I'd like everyone in the world to know my

## TRACK 59

I I'd really like to spend a year in South America.

2 I'd really like to meet him sometime. I love his music!

3 My brother would like to learn how to cook.

She'd like to change jobs sometime soon.

5 I wouldn't like to be famous!

6 It's a nice apartment, but I wouldn't like to live in that area. Would you like to get something to eat after class?

8 Would you like to come shopping with me tomorrow?

## TRACK 60

/eɪ/, /aɪ/, /uː/, /eɪv/, /aɪv/, /uːv/, /eɪt/, /feɪ /, /deɪ/, /baɪ/, /laɪ/, /duː/,

## TRACK 61

1 They're going to create 800 new jobs.

2 I'm going to drive there, so I can take you.

3 I do exercise every day to keep fit.

4 The university has a famous library.

5 I'd like to move to a nicer place.

6 The school provides all the books.

7 I'm saving money to buy a motorbike.

8 It's going to improve the situation.

## TRACK 62

1 She's not going to like the idea.

2 I don't have to work tomorrow, but my wife does.

3 What time are you going to arrive tomorrow?

4 I'd really like to stop working and travel more.

5 Would you like something to eat?

6 My daughter still lives at home, but my sons don't.

## UNIT 9

## TRACK 63

1 get a great view

2 go up a tower

3 visit a palace 4 make a mess

5 call an ambulance

6 hurt myself

7 break a glass

8 fall down

9 win the match

10 an exciting ride

11 forget to bring

12 lie on the beach

13 start crying

14 buy fresh fish

15 lose the game

## TRACK 64

A: Have you been to Istanbul before?

B: Well, it's my first time, but Harry's been here before.

C: Yeah, once - but it was for work. I didn't see much then.

A: When did you arrive?

B: Friday. We're really enjoying it.

A: So where have you been?

B: Well, this morning we went round the Bazaar. That was great. Then we went over to Galata and walked round there. A: Did you go up the Galata Tower?

C: No. There was a long queue and we didn't want to wait.

A: Really? You get a great view from the top.

C: Yeah, I heard. Another time, maybe.

A: Have you been to Topkapi Palace?

B: Yes, we went there at the weekend, It's amazing, and it's so big!

- A: I know. How long did you spend there?
- B: All day! We were tired at the end.
- C: Yeah, really tired!
- A: I'm sure.
- B: We also went to the Hagia Sophia.
- A: Did you? I've never been in there.
- B: But you live here!
- A: I know, but sometimes you don't think about visiting places when they're near.
- B: That's true. We live in London and I've never been to Buckingham Palace.
- A: So, what are your plans for this evening?
- C: We'd like to go out for dinner somewhere, but we're not sure where.
- A: Well, have you tried the fish here?
- B: No, we haven't.
- A: Oh, you should! It's very good very fresh. There's a great place quite near here. I can take you there, if you want.
- C: Oh, that sounds great. Thank you.

1

- A: Have you seen my glasses?
- B: No. Have you checked in your jacket pocket?
- A: Yeah. They're not there. They were on the table before.
- B: Maybe they've fallen on the floor.
- A: I can't see them. Can you?
- B: No. You went to the toilet. Did you look there?
- A: No. ... I've found them!! They were by the sink!

- D: Sammy! No!
- C: Can I help?
- D: Yes, sorry. My son's thrown the plate on the floor.
- C: Don't worry. These things happen. Let me clean everything.
- D: Do you have a cloth or some tissues? There's sauce on my trousers.
- C: Oh, yes, of course. And do you want more spaghetti for your son?
- D: Er ... no, that's OK.

- E: Do you have any water?
- F: Yeah there's some in the bag.
- E: I can't see any.
- F: Really? I filled a bottle this morning.
- E: No. There's no bottle.
- F: It's not in the pocket?
- F: I guess I left it at home, then.
- E: Don't worry. I can buy some.

- G: Ow!
- H: What have you done?
- G: I've cut my hand.
- G: Do you have a plaster or something?
- H; Yeah, but go to the sink and wash it under the cold water first.

- It I think we've come the wrong way
- J: It's just two or three more streets.
- I: Please. Can we ask someone?
- J: Oh ... OK. Excuse me. Do you speak English?

- I: We're looking for Stockmann's.
- K; Oh! You've come the wrong way. Do you have a man?
- J: Yes, but it's not very good.
- K: Let me look. OK. You're here ... and Stockman's is here. So you need to go back and then turn right here.

B:

A:

B:

A-

B:

A

B

A:

B

A:

B:

A:

B:

A

A

B

A

C

0

E

- J: OK. Thanks.
- I: I told you it was that way.

## ■ TRACKS 66 & 67

- 1 Have you seen my keys?
- 2 I've forgotten your name.
- 3 Someone's taken my bag.
- 4 What have you done?
- 5 I've broken a glass.
- 6 Our bags haven't arrived.
- 7 We've missed our flight.
- 8 Where's Martin gone?
- 9 Has anyone called the police?

## TRACK 68

/æ/, /p/, /au/, /əu/, /æn/, /aun/, /rau/, /rəu/, /læ/, /lp/, /aul/, /gp/ /auk/

## TRACK 69

- 1 Sorry. I've broken your window.
- 2 I forgot to tell you.
- 3 I found it on the floor.
- 4 We lost the match.
- 5 Have you planned your holiday?
- 6 I can show you round the town.
- 7 He sounded sad when we spoke.
- 8 He stopped me and stole my phone.

## UNIT 18

### ■ TRACK 70

- 1 a lovely pool
- 2 a lot of crime
- 3 get off the train
- 4 go to the gym
- 5 get in the car
- 6 an animal on the line
- vote for it
- 8 charge for the motorway
- 9 wait on the platform
- 10 pay in cash
- 11 get a haircut
- 12 cycle in a bike lane
- 13 watch a live band
- 14 travel first class
- 15 taste delicious
- 16 park the car
- 17 change money

- A Hello. I'm sorry. Do you speak English?
- B: Of course. How can I help?
- A: Hi. We'd like two tickets to Groningen, please.
- B: Groningen. Certainly. Travelling today?
- A: If possible, please, yes.
- B: No problem. The next train is at 12.25, so you have lots of time.

- 3. A single or return?
- Return, I think, but we're not sure when we're going to come
- B: Ah, so it's probably best to buy two singles. Return tickets only last one day.
- A. Oh, OK. How much are the single tickets?
- 8: First class is fifty-two euros fifty and second class is twentyseven euros ten.
- A: Two second class is fine, thank you.
- B. That's fifty-four euros and twenty cents, please. How would you like to pay?
- A: Is Visa OK?
- B: Yes, of course. Please enter your PIN. Great. Thank you.
- A: Thank you. What platform does the train leave from?
- 8: You need platform six, and you have to change at Hilversum.
- A: Oh, really? It's not direct?
- B. No, there are no direct trains to Groningen from here.
- A: I see. How long does the journey take?
- 8: It's about two and a half hours in total. You have to wait thirty minutes in Hilversum. You arrive around three o'clock.
- A: OK. And it's platform six, yes?
- B: Yes, platform six at 12.25.
- A: OK. Thanks for your help.
- C: Did you get the tickets OK?
- A. Yes, it's at twenty-five past twelve. What time is it now? Do we have time for a coffee?
- C. Yeah plenty of time. It's quarter to twelve.

- 1 Quarter to seven.
- 2 Five to twelve.
- 3 Twenty-five to three.
- 4 Ten to ten.
- 5 Talk to me.
- 6 I'd love to go to Thailand.
- 7 We have to change here.
- 8 I don't have to go to work today.

#### TRACK 73

- A: Good evening, sir, madam. How can I help you?
- B: Hi. We'd like to go out for dinner. Where's the best place to
- A: Try Captain Nemo's. It's a lovely little restaurant by the sea. It's not the cheapest place in town, but the fish there is really excellent.
- C: Oh, that sounds great. Do we need to book?
- A: I can do that for you, if you like. What time would you like your table?
- B: About half past eight?
- C. Yes, that sounds fine. What's the easiest way to get there? Can we walk?
- A: Not really. It takes about half an hour to walk there. It's probably best to take a taxi. Would you like me to book one for you?
- C: Yes, please. That's great.
- B: Oh, there's one other thing, before I forget. We'd like to buy some presents. Where's the best place to go shopping?
- A: There's a nice market in the main square tomorrow. They have some nice things. Try there. It starts at around eight and goes on until about two.
- B: It sounds perfect. Thanks for your help.
- A: No problem. It's my pleasure.

## TRACK 74

/wu/, /ws:/, /ha:/, /ok/, /a:k/, /go/, /d33:/, /f3:/, /du:/, /pa:/, /ru:/

## TRACK 75

- 1 I booked a return ticket.
- 2 You can't park the car near here.
- 3 Their flight's at half past two.
- 4 The train journey took too long.
- 5 Which route do you prefer?
- 6 First-class seats aren't good value.
- 7 It's the worst place in the world.
- 8 Would you like me to ask?

## TRACK 76

- 1 She's one of the funniest people I know.
- 2 I've never been there, but I'd love to go.
- 3 There's too much pollution and there are too many cars on the road.
- 4 I visited them in Madrid a few weeks ago.
- 5 There aren't enough chairs here for everyone.
- 6 I need your help. Something terrible has happened.

## UNIT 11

#### TRACK 77

- 1 a lot of spices
- 2 order food online
- 3 a cookery book
- 4 ask for the bill
- 5 fried chicken
- 6 buy some sweets
- steak and chips
- 8 look at the menu
- 9 a lot of garlic
- 10 want to lose weight
- 11 a pregnant mum
- 12 cut some onion
- 13 tomato soup
- 14 sell soft drinks 15 a vegetable dish
- 16 a fruit dessert

- A: Hello. I'm sorry. Do you speak English?
- B: A little, yes.
- A: Great. Can we have a table for two, please?
- B: Have you booked?
- A: No, I'm afraid we haven't.
- B: Ah. We are very busy tonight. Can you wait ten minutes?
- A: Yes.
- C: Can we see the menu, please?
- B: Of course.
- C: Ah. You don't have English menus?
- B: We don't. I'm sorry, but I can help you. This is chicken, this is fish - but I don't know the name of the fish in English - this is steak, this is soup and this is a bird - I don't know the name - it's similar to a chicken, but smaller. It's very, very good. I recommend this.
- C: Oh. I'd like to try that, please.
- B: Certainly, madam. And for you, sir?
- B: I'm sorry, sir, but the fish is finished. We don't have any more.

- A. Oh, right. Well, can I get a steak, please? Well-cooked. No blood.
- B: As you prefer.
- B: Can I take your plates?
- C: Thank you. That was delicious.
- B: Would you like any dessert?
- A: No, I'm fine. I'm really full. Can we have the bill, please?
- B: Of course. One moment.
- B: Here you are.
- A: Thanks. Does this include service?
- B: Yes, we add 15 per cent.
- C: OK. Thank you.

- 1 For starters, I'll have the soup, please.
- 2 I'd like the chicken, please.
- 3 Can I get a steak, please?
- 4 Can I have the ice cream?

## TRACK 80

- A: Are you ready to order?
- B: Yes. Thanks. I'll have the salad for starters, please.
- A: Certainly. And for your main course?
- B: Can I get the chicken, please?
- A: I'm afraid the chicken's finished.
- B: Really? Oh. OK. Well, can I have the fish then, please?
- 2
- C: Would you like any dessert?
- D: Yes, please. Can I get the ice cream?
- C: Of course. And for you, madam?
- E: I'm really full. I'll just have a coffee, please.
- C: With milk or without?
- E: Without, please, so just black.

### TRACK 81

- A: So where do you want to eat?
- B: I don't mind. I eat anything.
- A: Yes, me too.
- C: Actually. I don't eat meat.
- A: Oh, really?
- C: Yeah, but if the restaurant has some fish or vegetable dishes,
- A: Have you been to the place on the corner?
- B: Me neither. What's it like?
- A: It's nice. It's Italian more or less.
- B: OK. That's fine with me.
- C: Me too.
- A: Did you go away anywhere in the summer?
- B: Yeah, we went to Australia.
- A: Really? I'd really like to go there.
- C: Oh, I wouldn't.
- A: No? Why not?
- C: It's too far and I don't like planes.
- B: It IS a long way, but it's amazing. You should go.
- C: Hmm. I'm not sure. What's the food like? Is it all meat and
- B: No, not at all! There's lots of great Asian food and all kinds of different things.
- A: Yeah. I saw a programme about it on TV.

- C: Really?
- B: Yeah. In fact, I had some of the best food I've ever had there

A:

B:

2

C:

D:

C:

D:

C:

D:

C:

3

F

E:

F:

E:

4

G:

H:

G:

H:

G:

H:

5

10

Já

E

j:

2 3

4

5

6

F

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

- A: It sounds great. I'd LOVE to go there. When I have more money - or time.
- 3
- A: What are you going to have?
- B: I can't decide.
- A: Me neither.
- C: Hmm. it all looks delicious. What about the mussels?
- A: Oh, I don't like seafood.
- C: Really? I do! I love it.
- B: Me too. Don't you like any seafood?
- A: Not really. I've eaten prawns before, but I prefer meat.
- C: OK. I've decided. Talking of prawns, I'm going to have the prawn curry.
- B: Hmm. Good choice. I saw Jamie Oliver on TV last night and he made a prawn curry.
- C: Oh yeah. I saw that too. Maybe that's why I thought of it!
- A: OK, I think I'll have the steak.
- B: Oh, right decisions, decisions. OK. I'm going to have the lamb.

## TRACK 82

/weə/, /iə/, /niə/, /hiə/, /biə/, /bla/, /eəri/, /nats/, /an/

## TRACK 83

- 1 Do you know anywhere good to eat near here?
- 2 I hate the taste of beer.
- 3 I'd like my steak well-cooked no blood.
- 4 She can't eat any dairy products.
- 5 Here are your drinks,
- 6 I can't eat nuts because they make me ill.
- 7 It has a very unusual taste.
- 8 There's a great vegetarian restaurant near here.

## **UNIT 12**

## TRACK 84

- 1 it's badly damaged
- 2 she's a bit upset
- 3 I burnt my hand
- 4 she's fallen asleep
- 5 my stomach hurts
- 6 protest against it
- 7 have a big smile
- 8 complain to the staff
- 9 put on sun cream
- 10 read the news
- 11 fans celebrating
- 12 get some fresh air
- 13 stop infection 14 a big storm
- 15 put ice on it
- 16 stop shouting!

- 1
- A: Are you OK?
- B: Yeah, I'm OK. My stomach hurts a bit.
- A: Maybe you should lie down.
- B: No, it's OK. I think I'm just hungry.

- A Are you sure?
- 8. Honestly, I'll be fine after I have something to eat.

- C. Hi, it's Johnny.
- D: Johnny! How are you?
- C: Basically, I'm OK, but I fell off my bike and I've broken my arm!
- p. On dear. Maybe we should cancel the meeting for tomorrow.
- C. No. it's OK. It's my left arm, so I can write.
- D: Are you sure?
- C. Yeah, honestly, it's fine. It doesn't really hurt.

- E: Are you OK?
- F. No, I feel a bit sick.
- E: Maybe you should go out and get some fresh air.
- F. Yes, I think I will. I'll be back in a moment.
- E. OK. Take your time. There's no rush.

4

- G: Are you OK?
- H: Yeah, yeah.
- G: Have you been to the doctor?
- H: No. It's just a cold.
- G: Are you sure? You have a very bad cough. I really think you should see someone. Maybe it's an infection.
- H: Honestly, it'll be fine in a couple of days.

- I: Are you OK?
- J: Yeah, I'm fine. My back hurts a bit, that's all.
- L Maybe you shouldn't play tennis, then.
- J: It's OK. I told Kevin I'm going to.
- I: Yeah, but are you sure you can play?
- J: Yeah, I'll be fine after I warm up.

#### TRACK 86

- 1 You should try it.
- 2 We should go.
- 3 I should stop.
- 4 You should call him.
- 5 They shouldn't be here.
- 6 He shouldn't do that.

## TRACK 87

- 1 I got the bus to work. I was lucky because there was a seat. I sat and read my book. It was quite a nice journey.
- 2 When I got to work, we had a meeting. The boss was quite angry. He shouted a bit and told us we need to work harder. It was really horrible, but I tried not to cry.
- 3 After the meeting finished, I sat and thought about everything I had to do. I got a headache. I sent a few emails and tried to concentrate.
- 4 I had lunch with my aunt. She lives near work. She always makes me smile. I felt better after seeing her.
- 5 In the afternoon, I went to see some clients. It was a successful afternoon. I sold a few things, and it's always nice meeting people.
- 6 Back in the office, I had to answer about 30 emails. It was slow and not very interesting.
- 7 After work, I had to wait for the bus for half an hour and then it was full, so I couldn't sit and read.
- 8 When I got home, I went for a run with my friend, Viv. We're going to go on holiday together, so we talked about that. It was a lovely warm evening.
- After dinner, I watched the news on TV. I wanted to watch a film as well, but I fell asleep on the sofa.

## TRACK 88

/hao/, /sir0/, /hsir/, /hæ/, /hed/, /həo/, /hel0/, /hæf/, /hos/, /haŋ/. /ðə/,/weðər/,/wið/,/wiðaut

## TRACK 89

- 1 How are you going to celebrate your birthday?
- How did you hurt your hand?
- I had a headache, so I stayed at home.
- 4 It's really bad for your health.
- 5 I have to go to hospital.
- 6 I'm really hungry because I haven't eaten all day.
- 7 I'm happy the weather is warm.
- 8 Do you want your coffee with milk or without?

## TRACK 90

- 1 We eat quite a lot of rice and fish.
- 2 I was sick after I ate some seafood.
- 3 There aren't many places to eat near here.
- 4 Maybe you should tell him you're feeling stressed.
- 5 They didn't have any tables, so we didn't eat there.
- 6 I don't think we should pay more than thirty pounds for it.

## **UNIT 13**

## TRACK 91

- 1 an icy road
- 2 a bit windy
- 3 a cloudy day
- 4 a farmer using chemicals
- 5 an empty road
- 6 climb a hill
- 7 pick up rubbish
- 8 the top of a wall
- 9 scared of spiders
- 10 check the forecast 11 a warm summer's day
- 12 a crowded street
- 13 surrounded by fields
- 14 chase each other
- 15 want attention
- 16 jump off a mountain
- 17 don't let it bite
- 18 it smells bad

## TRACK 92

- A: What do you want to do tomorrow?
- B: I don't know. What's the forecast?
- A: It's going to be quite hot. They said it might reach 35 degrees.
- B: Really? Why don't we go to the swimming pool?
- A: Oh, we could do. Which one?
- B: The open-air one and we can have lunch at the café.
- A: OK. Let's do that.

2

- C: What do you want to do today?
- D: I don't know. What's the forecast? It looks a bit cloudy. C: It said it might rain this morning, but it's going to be dry this
- D: OK. Well, why don't we relax this morning and then go for a
- walk this afternoon?
- D: How about taking the car and going to the hills? C: OK. Let's do that. We haven't been to the hills recently.

- E: Do you want to go away at the weekend?
- F: I'm not sure. What's the forecast?
- E: I think it's going to be cold. They said it might snow.
- F: Really? Why don't we just stay here? I don't want to drive if there's snow or ice on the roads.
- E: That's true. Maybe we should do some shopping for Christmas.
- F: We could do. When exactly?
- E: Early on Saturday morning. We can take the train.
- F: Can we be back before the football starts?
- E: Maybe. What time?
- F: It starts at three.
- E: I guess if we go early.
- F: OK. Let's do that. We have to do it sometime.

- 1 There might be a storm later.
- 2 They said it might snow tonight.
- 3 I might go for a run after class.
- 4 We might go to Spain in the summer.
- 5 I might not come to class tomorrow.
- 6 I might have to work this weekend.

## TRACK 94

- 1
- A: Hey, did I tell you? I have foxes in my garden.
- B: Really? Living there?
- A: I think so, yes. I see them quite a lot, anyway.
- B: Wow! So how long have they been there?
- A: For a few months, I guess.
- B: And are they OK? I mean, do they cause problems?
- A: Not really, no. Well, sometimes they use the garden as a toilet ... but I love having them there and watching them play.
- B: Have they ever tried to come inside?
- A: Once, yes. They stole one of my shoes, actually! I found it outside the next day - half-eaten.
- A: I haven't had any problems recently, though, because I have a cat now and I think they're a bit scared of her!
- C: Look. This one's a picture of my dog. Here.
- D: He's huge!
- C: I know. He weighs fifty-one kilos.
- D: Really? That's amazing. What's his name?
- C: He's called Sheriff.
- D: And how long have you had him?
- C: Five years. I got him when we moved out of the city. We have more space now, so ...
- D: Mmm.
- C: He's very friendly. He always jumps on you when you come
- D: Woah! Scary!
- C: No, it's fine. And he's very funny too. I mean, he plays very well with our cat, Kira. He chases her around - and they've never had any fights or anything.
- E: What's that noise?
- F: That? Oh, we have rats in the house. Didn't I tell you?
- E: No. How annoying! How long have you had them?
- F: Well, we've been here a year now and they've been here the whole time.
- E: Ugh!

- F: I know. They eat our food and I worry they'll bite the kids one day.
- E: So what're you going to do?
- E: So what is year.

  E: Well, we've tried all kinds of things already, but nothing has worked, so I think we need to pay someone to come in and kill them.

p

B: It

A: N

C: H

D: Y

D: Y

D: E

C: 1

D: F

2

3

4

5

6

əns

ma Jən

2

## TRACK 95

- 1 A: How long have you had your cat?
  - B: Two years.
- 2 A: How long have you been together?
  - B: A few months now.
- 3 A: How long have you been married?
  - B: For 15 years now.
- 4 A: How long have they known each other?
  - B: Not very long.
- 5 A: How long have you lived in this house?
  - B: All my life!
- 6 A: How long has she worked there?
  - B: Ages.

## TRACK 96

/kr/, /kraɪ/, /krau/, /dr/, /draɪ/, /tr/, /tri/, /træn/, /str/, /stri:/, /strej/

## TRACK 97

- 1 I love living in the countryside.
- 2 I don't take public transport because of the crime.
- 3 The streets in the centre are always crowded.
- 4 I need to drive a friend to the station.
- 5 It's always dry in April.
- I agree it was a very strange article.
- He lives three streets from me.
- 8 There are lots of problems with transport.

## UNIT 14

## TRACK 98

- 1 a strong economy
- 2 extra wages
- 3 arrive at the border
- 4 there's been a murder
- 5 get treatment
- 6 use violence
- 7 don't get on well
- 8 leader of a team
- 9 advert for a musical
- 10 injure herself
- 11 lost the election
- 12 start peace talks
- 13 more efficient
- 14 a scary film
- 15 have insurance
- 16 support each other
- 17 go and see a play

- A: Have you ever seen a film called 28 Days Later?
- B: No, I haven't. I've heard of it, but I've never seen it. What's it like?
- A: It's brilliant. It's really, really scary. It's about a terrible disease that makes people hungry for blood, and they want to kill.
- B: Really? It sounds very violent!

- A: Yeah, it is, but it's great! It's a very clever film. It's not a normal horror movie. It's also about the environment and politics and everything.
- B: It sounds terrible definitely not my kind of film!
- A: No, it's great! Honestly!

- C: Have you seen that new musical Dogs yet?
- D: Yes, I have. I saw it last week, actually.
- C: Oh really? We went to see it last night. What did you think of
- p: It was OK. Nothing special. It was quite entertaining in places, I suppose, but the story was stupid.
- C: Really? Do you think so? I thought it was brilliant one of the best things I've seen in a long time.
- D: Yeah? OK.
- C: The dancing and the music were great and it was very funny. I couldn't stop laughing!
- p: But what about the ending? It was so predictable!
- C: Not for me! I found it really sad. I started crying!
- D: Really? Oh well. I suppose we just don't share the same tastes.

- Tomorrow's general election will probably be the closest in many years. Both the People's Party and the Popular Front say they expect to win, but most people think that they will probably have to share power. Voting starts at seven in the morning and closes at ten, and they're expecting the final result early on Monday morning.
- 2 The country's largest chemical company, NBE, has said that it is going to cut five thousand jobs. The company lost 385 million dollars last year and now plans to close to L. biggest factories in the north of the country.
- 3 Abroad, peace talks between Adjikistan and Kamistan have failed and there are worries that war will now follow. The two countries disagree about where the border between them should be.
- 4 Next, pop music. Last year's TV Idol winner, Shaneez, has got engaged. The singer is planning to marry her boyfriend of two months, actor and model Kevin Smith.
- 5 And finally, France go into their important World Cup match against Brazil tonight without their captain and star player, Florian Mendy, Mendy injured himself in training yesterday and there's now a chance he won't play in the rest of the competition.

## TRACK 101

- 1 It'll be fine.
- 2 I probably won't vote this year.
- 3 It won't be easy.
- 4 It won't cost much.
- 5 I think he'll have a few problems.
- 6 We'll probably be a bit late.
- 7 We won't win.
- 8 It won't kill you. You'll live.

## TRACK 102

ons: violence, difference, insurance

mant: treatment, environment, government

Jan: election, situation, solution

## TRACK 103

- I've noticed a few differences.
- There were celebrations when she won the election.
- The government should do more for the environment.
- They stole my phone, but I had insurance.
- 5 The president didn't comment on the situation.
- 6 There's no easy solution to unemployment.
- 7 My insurance paid for my treatment.
- 8 I really hate all violence.

## TRACK 104

- 1 She's lived there all her life.
- 2 How long have you known about this?
- 3 It's difficult not to worry about what will happen,
- 4 You can try, but I don't expect it'll change things.
- 5 I doubt the economy will be stronger next year.
- 6 They said it's going to be hot and there might be a storm.

## UNIT 15

## TRACK 105

- 1 produce electricity
- 2 very heavy
- 3 plug it in
- 4 shelves of food
- 5 various apps
- 6 read the instructions
- 7 do a search
- 8 install solar power
- 9 save energy
- 10 press the button
- 11 I dropped it
- 12 design a website
- 13 try to repair it
- 14 keep files
- 15 change the battery

- A: Do you know much about computers?
- B: A bit. Why?
- A: I'm thinking of buying a laptop. Can you recommend anything?
- B: Well, it depends. How much do you want to spend?
- A: I'm not sure about five or six hundred pounds.
- B: OK. Well, for that price, try a Bell. They have quite a lot of memory, they're not too heavy and the battery lasts quite a long time.
- A: That sounds perfect. Thanks.
- C: What happened to your phone?
- D: Oh, I dropped it last night and broke the screen.
- C: Oh, how annoying!
- D: I know. I'll need to replace it, but I'm actually thinking of getting one of those new model 8s everyone's talking about.
- C: The Kotika ones?
- C: Ooh! I see, Someone's feeling rich, then!
- D: Why? What? Are they really expensive?

- C: Well, they're not cheap ... but they are amazing phones. I mean, they look great, they're nice and light and they've got a huge screen, so they're great for playing games and watching videos on.
- D: Wow. OK. Well, I guess I should have a look at one this weekend, then.
- 3
- E: Hi. How're you?
- F: Oh hi. What're you doing here?
- E: I'm trying to find a birthday present for my brother. It's taking me ages.
- F: What kind of thing are you looking for?
- E: Well, I'm thinking of buying him a digital camera, but I don't know much about them!
- F: Well, Bonny does a really good one. It's quite strong, so it won't break if you drop it ..., it takes really good pictures even in the dark and it's not very expensive either.
- E: OK. Well, that sounds good.

- 1 bcdegptv
- 2 flmnsxz
- 3 ahjk
- 4 quw
- 5 ly
- 6 0
- 7 -

### **TRACK** 108

- 1 A: www.peiterzx.co.gu. That's p-e-i-t-e-r-z-x dot co dot g-u.
  - B: OK, p-e-i-t-e-r-z-x dot co dot g-u.
  - A: Yes.
- 2 A: My email's nomashy@jmal.com. That's n-o-m-a-s-h-y at j-m-a-l dot com.
  - B: OK, n-o-m-a-s-h-y, that's all one word, right?
  - A: Yes. At jmal dot com.
- A: Flat four, 65 Farquhar Drive. That's f-a-r-q-u-h-a-r and d-r-i-v-e.
  - B: OK. Flat four, 65 Farquhar Drive f-a-r-q-u-h-a-r.
  - A: That's right.

## TRACK 109

- 1 How many computers do you have in your home?
- 2 How long is your computer on every day?
- 3 How often do you check your email?
- 4 How many emails do you get every day?
- 5 What kind of mobile phone do you have?
- 6 What do you use your phone for?
- 7 Have you ever done anything stupid on your computer?
- 8 If you buy a piece of technology, how do you learn to use it?
- 9 What do you do if you have a problem with a piece of technology?
- 10 How often do you buy a new piece of technology?

#### TRACK 110

- 1 How many computers do you have in your home?
  - a None.
  - b One.
  - c Two or more,
- 2 How long is your computer on every day?
  - a Maybe an hour or two if I turn it on.
  - b Four or five hours. Most of the evening.
  - c I never turn it off.

- 3 How often do you check your email?
  - a Maybe once a day, maybe less.
  - b Two or three times a day.
  - c I check it all the time on my phone.
- 4 How many emails do you get every day?
  - a Nought to ten.
  - b Ten to thirty.
  - c Thirty to a hundred.
- 5 What kind of mobile phone do you have?
  - a The most basic pay-as-you-go phone.
  - b An OK phone with quite a good camera. It does everything I need it to do.
  - c The very best, latest model.
- 6 What do you use your phone for?
  - a What do you mean? Phoning people, of course!
  - b I use the camera, I listen to music, and I sometimes play games.
  - c Apart from the camera, I use the diary, Facebook, maps all kinds of things. I can't list them all.
- 7 Have you ever done anything stupid on your computer?
  - a Yes. I've deleted files on my computer by accident.
  - b Yes. I sent an email to the wrong person once.
  - c No, of course not.
- 8 If you buy a piece of technology, how do you learn to use it?
  - a I ask someone to show me the very basic things.
  - b I read the instructions and learn to do a few things. I'm not interested in the complicated things.
  - c I just start playing about with it and teach myself. To find out more detailed things, I watch videos or look at the instructions or the website.
- 9 What do you do if you have a problem with a piece of technology?
  - a Get angry, shout and jump up and down until someone tells me I need to plug it in.
  - b Check is altigged in and, if it is, call someone to repair it
  - Check everything is plugged in. Turn it off and on againand if it still Goesn't work, I repair it myself.
- 10 How often do you buy a new piece of technology?
  - a Hardly ever. Why do I need it when my old things work?
  - b Sometimes. Some new things are better, and I change them when my old things break.
  - c All the time. I like to have all the latest things.

#### TRACK 111

/a:/,/æ/,/ɪ/,/ei/,/eə/,/ɒ/,/ə/,/əː/

## TRACK 112

- 1 The software allows you to manage your money.
- 2 It's a really amazing app.
- 3 I need to change the battery on my camera.
- 4 It's not hard to create a nice website.
- 5 They damaged the wall when they installed the machine.
- 6 It allows you to translate any language.
- 7 I save all my files in various places.
- 8 I have to repair my washing machine.

UI

a T

2 D 3 m 4 l' 5 p

6 k 7 e 8 c 9 n

1

A: 1

B: A: B: A: B:

A:

2

C: D: C: D: 3 E:

F:

E

E

E

G:

H:

# UNIT 16

## TRACK 113

- I hold the baby
- 2 Don't slip!
- 3 make an appointment
- 4 I'm jealous!
- 5 protect your head
- 6 knock at the door
- 7 encourage each other
- 8 celebrate their anniversary
- 9 musical instruments
- 10 negotiate the price
- 11 be in love
- 12 go to a nightclub
- 13 remove the paint
- 14 plant some flowers

## TRACK 114

- A: Did I tell you Owen's going to move in with his girlfriend?
- B: I didn't know he had a girlfriend! How long have they been together?
- A: Two or three months, I think.
- B: That's not long! What's she like?
- A: She's nice, and she's very good-looking!
- B: That's great. I'm pleased for him. So, where are they going to live?
- A: Pickwick somewhere.

- C: Did I tell you my brother Gerrard is going to get married?
- D: No. When's the wedding?
- C: Next May sometime.
- D: That'll be nice. So what's his partner like?
- C: She's quite annoying, actually. We don't really get on.
- D: Oh dear.

3

- E: Did I tell you Fiona and Kieran are going to get divorced?
- F: No! Why's that?
- E: I think she wanted kids, but he didn't.
- F: Oh, that's sad! How long have they been married?
- E: Not very long. Four years, I think.
- F: What a shame. They're both such nice people.
- E: I know. I hope we can stay friends with both of them.

- G. Did I tell you I have a date on Friday?
- H: No. Who with?
- G A guy in my French class.
- H: So what's he like?
- G He seems very nice. He's quite quiet, but he's funny.
- H: Is he good-looking?
- G: Yeah, not bad. He's quite tall and he has lovely eyes.
- H: OK. So what are you going to do?
- 6. We're going to have a drink together and then we're going to meet some of his friends for karaoke.

## TRACK 115

- 1 My husband and I spent two years looking for the right place to live. We didn't look seriously to begin with, but then I got pregnant and we had to find somewhere fast. We saw five houses every weekend for four months, but didn't like any of them. One day, we were driving home from another appointment when we suddenly saw it - the house of our dreams! And, incredibly, it was for sale. We knocked at the door and offered the price they were asking for it immediately.
- 2 When I was a kid, I always loved music and musical instruments. For my twelfth birthday, my uncle gave me a guitar - and it was love at first sight. My uncle was a really important person for me at that time. He was playing in a band at the time, and I went to see them one night. That had a big influence on me. After that, the guitar became the centre of my world. I played it 24 hours a day, seven days a week. Later, I studied music at university and now I make guitars for a living. All because of that special day!
- 3 I love Second Life, an online world where you create virtual characters - you design them, choose their names and then create lives for them. Last year, I was in a relationship, but we weren't getting on very well, so I started spending a lot of time online. I was working in a Second Life nightclub when one night I met my future husband. He came in and it was love at first sight. His 'character' soon asked my 'character' to marry him and I said yes. We were married online in July. He then asked me in the real world and I accepted. We haven't actually met yet, but he's the one for me.

## TRACK 116

- 1 I was doing some shopping when I met an old friend.
- 2 She was running for the bus when she fell.
- 3 They were working in Greece when it happened.
- 4 I wasn't enjoying it, so I left.
- 5 She wasn't feeling very well, so she went home.
- 6 We weren't getting on, so we broke up.

## **TRACK 117**

/au/,/\lambda/,/\si/,/\p/,/\u/,/\u/,/\eq/,/\eq/

## **TRACK 118**

- 1 Her baby was born on Monday.
- 2 I control how long my son spends on the computer.
- 3 Those flowers look lovely.
- 4 It's polite to hold the door open for people.
- 5 Knock on the door before you go in.
- 6 Her boyfriend's not very good-looking.
- 7 I'd love a house of my own.
- 8 You don't have to remove your shoes.

- 1 We met when we were both studying in Germany.
- 2 I'm thinking of asking her to marry me.
- 3 I won't do anything without talking to you first.
- 4 I saw it when I was staying in New York.
- 5 He crashed because he was driving too fast.
- 6 I'll tell you when I hear more news.